03.05-09/22/93-01522

FINAL

PROJECT PLANS

PHASE III HAZARDOUS/TOXIC WASTE REAL ESTATE ACQUISITION SURVEY

BOSTIC, REINHOLD, AND CARLYLE PARCELS

MARINE CORPS BASE, CAMP LEJEUNE, NORTH CAROLINA

CONTRACT TASK ORDER 0205

Prepared For:

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
ATLANTIC DIVISION
NAVAL FACILITIES
ENGINEERING COMMAND
Norfolk, Virginia

Under the:

LANTDIV CLEAN Program
Contract N62470-89-D-4814

Prepared By:

BAKER ENVIRONMENTAL, INC.
Coraopolis, Pennsylvania

SEPTEMBER 22, 1993

TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page
1.0	INTRODUCTION	1-1
1.1	Objectives	1-1
1.2	Project Plan Format	1-1
2.0	BACKGROUND	2-1
2.1	Location	2-3
2.2	Bostic Property	2-3
2.3	Reinhold Property	2-5
2.4	Carlyle Property	2-7
2.5	Physical Setting	2-9
2.5.1	Geology	2-10
2.5.2	Groundwater and Hydrogeology	2-10
2.5.3	Surface Water	2-11
2.5.4	Soils	2-11
3.0	PHASE III TASKS	3-1
3.1	Task 1 - Project Management	3-1
3.2	Task 2 - Background Review and Preparation Project Plans	3-1
3.3	Task 3 - Subcontractor Procurement	3-1
3.4	Task 4 - Field Investigations	3-2
3.4.1	Bostic Property	3-2
3.4.2	Reinhold Property	3-4
3.4.3	Carlyle Property	3-6
3.4.4	Investigative Derived Waste (IDW) Characterization and Disposal	3-8
3.5	Task 5 - Sample Analysis and Data Validation	3-8
3.6	Task 6 - Data Evaluation	3-9
3.7	Task 7 - Qualitative Risk Analysis and Nature/ Extent of Contamination	3-9
3.8	Task 8 - Remedial Alternatives and Cost Estimates	3-10
3.9	Task 9 - Phase III Survey Report	3-10
3.10	Task 10 - Meetings	3-10
4.0	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND STAFFING	4-1
5.0	SCHEDULE	5-1
6.0	FIELD SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS PLAN	6-1
7.0	REFERENCES	7-1

LIST OF FIGURES

Number		Page
3-1	Site Plan, Bostic Property	3-3
3-2	Site Plan, Reinhold Property	3-5
3-3	Site Plan, Carlyle Property	3-7
5-1	Project Schedule	5-2

LIST OF APPENDICES

A Standard Operating Procedures

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This document presents the Work Plan and Sampling and Analysis Plan for performing a Phase III Hazardous/Toxic Waste Real Estate Acquisition Survey (Phase III Survey) for three properties under consideration for acquisition by the Department of the Navy in association with the Marine Corps Base (MCB), Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. The three properties are the Bostic, Reinhold, and Carlyle parcels, located in the southeast portion of Onslow County, North Carolina.

1.1 Objectives

This study is being conducted as a follow-up to Phase I and II surveys, conducted in 1991 and 1992 by Roy F. Weston, Inc (WESTON®). The objectives of the previous surveys were to locate areas of potential environmental concern and to ascertain the presence or absence of groundwater, subsurface soil, and surface water contamination.

The objectives of the Phase III Survey are to acquire necessary data to define the nature and extent of contamination in order to afford a qualitative assessment of potential risks to human health, welfare, and the environment, and to evaluate and estimate the costs of potential remedial actions that may be required if the properties are acquired by MCB Camp Lejeune.

1.2 Project Plan Format

The contents of this Project Plan are summarized below. A Health and Safety Plan has been prepared under separate cover.

- Section 1.0 - Introduction
- Section 2.0 - Background
- Section 3.0 - Phase III Tasks
- Section 4.0 - Project Management and Staffing
- Section 5.0 - Schedule
- Section 6.0 - Field Sampling and Analysis Plan
- Section 7.0 - References

Baker Environmental, Inc. (Baker) standard operating procedures to be followed during the Phase III field investigations are provided in Appendix A.

2.0 BACKGROUND

The U.S. Department of the Navy has proposed to acquire approximately 41,000 acres in Onslow County, North Carolina, for the purpose of expanding the Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune. As part of the acquisition evaluation process, the Atlantic Division, Naval Facilities Engineering Command (LANTDIV) conducted an environmental investigation to identify any contaminated land (parcels) which may require large scale environmental remediation activities. Any such parcels could then either not be acquired or acquired with appropriate legal protection and cost allocations (Weston, 1992).

The approach used to evaluate the potential for environmental contamination is systematic, using a standard Phase I/Phase II method currently in use by environmental professionals. The intent of the approach is to lower the risk of acquiring property which may require large scale or expensive remediation. The results of this investigation do not imply that no additional contamination exist within the parcels and/or the acquisition area. To reach this level of certainty would require that each acre of land be thoroughly sampled, and the costs of such a sampling program would far exceed the nominal value of the land to be acquired (Weston, 1992).

Phase I of the investigation included a review of pertinent historical information, site reconnaissance, and interviews with owners of the 164 individual land parcels. The large majority of the acquisition area was determined to have a low potential for environmental contamination due to its historical use for tree silviculture, farming, undeveloped swamp, and small single family dwellings. A portion of the southern end of the tract was used during World War II as part of the Camp Davis Military Base, and several parcels along the bordering state highways have been or are now being used for commercial or light industrial activities. In total, 14 individual parcels were identified as having a higher potential for environmental contamination, and these special interest parcels were targeted for Phase II sampling. These 14 parcels comprised approximately 1,250 acres of the proposed 41,000-acre acquisition area (Weston, 1992).

The Phase II investigations of the 14 special interest parcels involved the sampling of select areas to determine the presence or absence of contamination. The results were compared with applicable or relevant and appropriate environmental regulations to evaluate the likelihood that large scale remediation would be required (Weston, 1992).

The Phase II investigation was conducted by Roy F. Weston, Inc. in the Fall of 1991. Results and recommendations were presented in a Phase II Final Report in January 1992. As noted in the final report, WESTON concluded that two properties (Bostic and Reinhold properties) totaling 43 acres needed further evaluation in order to determine the extent to which environmental contamination, if any, existed (Weston, 1992).

Parcels 122, 123, and 124 (totaling 30 acres and collectively known as the Bostic property) were only partially sampled when permission to sample was withdrawn by the property owner. Observations at the time of the initial Phase II investigation as well as results of the limited number of samples collected, have identified numerous areas of potential contamination. After site access was granted by the owner of the Bostic property, additional investigations were conducted by Weston to adequately assess the need for any form of remedial action.

Parcel 058 (totaling 13.3 acres and known as the Reinhold property) has been altered by landfilling. The fill material-originated from concrete debris resulting from the demolition of gasoline service stations. Initial Phase II sampling results identified concentrations of heavy metals and other chemical constituents which exceeded North Carolina water quality standards. However, based upon the limited number of samples, Weston was unable to conclude that surface waters had been directly impacted as a result of the landfilling operations. Therefore, additional investigation of the Reinhold property was required to identify the potential source of heavy metal and chemical contamination. The second increment of the Phase II investigation was conducted in November 1992.

In order to better define the extent of contamination, and to verify the results of the Phase II investigations, a Phase III Real Estate Acquisition Survey will be conducted at the Bostic, Reinhold, and Carlyle properties. The Phase III Survey will be conducted by Baker Environmental, Inc. (Baker). The Phase III investigation includes a third area of concern (the Carlyle property) that warrants additional study. The Carlyle property, which was investigated as part of the initial Phase II survey, was not included in the second increment of the Phase II investigation.

The remainder of this section provides site-specific information regarding the location, history, and existing status of the Bostic, Reinhold, and Carlyle parcels.

2.1 Location

The Bostic, Reinhold, and Carlyle parcels all border the west side of U. S. Route 17, which is a north-south highway that, for the most part, demarcates the current western boundary of MCB, Camp Lejeune. The Reinhold property is the northern-most of the three parcels. It is situated roughly 3/4 miles south of the intersection of U. S. Route 17 and North Carolina Route 210 at the community of Dixon, North Carolina. The Carlyle parcel is located about 3 miles south of the Reinhold parcel. The Bostic parcel is the southern-most of the three properties. It is situated roughly 1-3/4 miles north of the community of Holly Ridge, North Carolina, and the junction of North Carolina Route 50 and U. S. Route 17.

2.2 Bostic Property

Parcels 122, 123, and 124, totaling approximately 30 acres, are collectively referred to as the Bostic property. The property is currently used for maintenance, storage, and repair of various types of construction equipment and material. Historically, these parcels were part of the former Camp Davis Motor Pool that was located on Parcel 124. Previous uses of these parcels also include a sawmill that operated until the early 1980s. In 1989, Parcel 124 was subject to an investigation by the USEPA when 100 drums of dinitrophenol, a crystalline wood preservative, were discovered within the garage located on the parcel. The drums were subsequently removed and the site was classified as requiring no further action.

The Phase I survey indicated that the site is traversed by a drainage ditch that flows past the Dixon Parcel (Parcel 127) and intersects several ditches that drain the Bostic Property. Stained soils and a sheen on the water of several ditches were observed. Other observations included two bulging 55-gallon drums containing unknown liquids, stained soils beneath many of the vehicles stored on site, three steel aboveground fuel tanks and adjacent stained soils, and two overturned 9,500-gallon railroad tank cars.

Initially, Phase II sampling activities conducted in the Summer of 1991 were to have included collection of soil, sediment, surface water and groundwater samples at suspect areas. Indeed, a limited number of samples were collected; however, shortly after the initiation of sampling activities, Weston personnel were asked to leave by Mr. Bostic. At the request of LANTDIV, Weston relocated groundwater sampling points outside the perimeter of the Bostic property to assess the potential presence for off-site migration emanating from the Bostic parcels.

In general, the peripheral investigation failed to indicate the presence of off-site migration of contaminants via groundwater. However, samples collected prior to Weston's departure from the site indicated the presence of total petroleum hydrocarbon (TPH) contamination (700 mg/kg) in soil near the aboveground storage tanks, and the presence of several polynuclear aromatics, which are typical of fuel mixtures and/or residuals, in sediments collected from the drainage swale behind the garage.

Phase II field activities were reinitiated within the Bostic property boundaries in November 1992. Specific field activities included a soil gas survey, subsurface drilling and shallow monitoring well installation, surface water sampling, and groundwater sampling.

The soil gas survey was conducted in an attempt to identify "hotspots." Nine sampling locations were selected in areas where contamination may be present, based on visual evaluation of the site. The results were inconclusive due to the presence of methane, which may have been present due to high organic content in the soil (Weston, 1993).

To evaluate the presence of TPH contamination in soil, and to determine whether the soil at the potential disposal areas are characteristically hazardous, 12 soil borings were augered at various areas of concern. Split spoon samples were collected continuously at 2-foot intervals to the top of the water table per ASTM Method D1586. A portion of each split spoon was collected and composited. The composite sample was analyzed for total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH), polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), and RCRA hazardous waste characteristics (i.e., TCLP, corrosivity, reactivity, and ignitability). The results indicated that none of the soil samples were characteristically hazardous. No PCBs were detected in any of the samples. However, TPH was detected above the method detection limit (40 mg/kg) in 10 of the 13 samples (one duplicate sample was obtained). The TPH contaminant levels ranged in concentration from 43 mg/kg to 5090 mg/kg. The highest level of TPH contamination was detected in the soil sample collected near the aboveground storage tanks. The second highest TPH level (693 mg/kg) was detected in the soil sample obtained from stained soil south of the garage near the concrete pad (Weston, 1993).

To evaluate on-site groundwater quality, three temporary monitoring wells were installed at the following areas: near the aboveground storage tanks; near the abandoned railroad tankers; and just south of the garage. Groundwater samples were collected and analyzed for volatile organic compounds (VOCs), semivolatile organic compounds (SVOCs), total metals, PCBs, and pesticides. No volatile organic compounds were detected above method detection

levels in any of the three wells. SVOCs such as naphthalenes and polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) were detected in wells GW-02 and GW-03 (Weston, 1993). Well GW-03, which is located near the abandoned railroad tank cars, exhibited the highest level of SVOC contamination. Because there are no Federal or State standards for those SVOCs present in groundwater at the Bostic property, the significance of this contamination with respect to potential impacts to human health cannot be assessed unless a quantitative risk assessment is performed.

The inorganic contaminants arsenic (62 - 120 µg/L), chromium (190 - 730 µg/L), iron (107,000 - 208,000 µg/L), manganese (410 - 2600 µg/L), nickel (190 - 410 µg/L), lead (250 - 820 µg/L), and selenium (11 - 59 µg/L) were detected in all three temporary wells above the North Carolina groundwater standard. However, groundwater samples collected at nearby sites (previous Phase II results) also indicated similar results with the exception of arsenic, lead, and nickel (Weston, 1993). It is possible that the elevated levels of inorganics is due to suspended particulates in the wells which may bias the results high.

Two surface water and sediment samples were collected from on-site drainage areas to evaluate surface water and sediment quality due to potential runoff. The samples were collected downstream of the aboveground tank area and garage and analyzed for VOCs, SVOCs, and metals. None of surface water or sediment samples exhibited organic contamination. The results of the inorganic analysis for sample SW-02, which was obtained near the aboveground storage tanks, exhibited elevated levels of copper (20 µg/L), iron (1400 µg/L), and lead (120 µg/L) above the North Carolina Freshwater Quality Standards (NCFWQS) for the protection of aquatic life (Weston, 1993).

2.3 Reinhold Property

The Reinhold property is owned by L. Reinhold and has been altered by landfilling. The fill material originated from concrete debris resulting from the demolition of service stations. No testing of the fill excavated from the former service stations was completed prior to placement. Materials including pipes, concrete and scrap metal were observed in the fill during the Phase II survey. The fill material is located within probable jurisdictional wetland areas of Bull Branch. No evaluation for the need to obtain a permit to fill wetland areas was reportedly considered prior to placement of the fill material.

Following the Phase I Survey, the initial Phase II survey focused on assessing potential impacts to surface water. The second increment of the Phase II survey assessed soil conditions, groundwater quality, and potential impacts to surface water and sediment.

In order to evaluate soil conditions within the former fill area, three test pits were excavated and soil samples were collected at one-foot intervals for compositing. In addition, three shallow soil borings were augered at the boundary of the fill area. A composite soil sample was collected at each boring. All soil samples were analyzed for TPH, PCBs, and RCRA hazardous waste characteristics (full TCLP, corrosivity, reactivity, and ignitability). Results indicated that none of the soil is characteristically hazardous. In addition, TPH levels were below the method detection level of 40 mg/kg. Low levels of PCB Aroclor 1254 (less than 0.1 ppm) were detected in one of the soil samples collected from soil boring No. 1.

Temporary monitoring wells were subsequently installed at each of the three soil borings. The wells were installed to evaluate potential impacts of the fill material to groundwater. One round of groundwater samples were collected and analyzed for VOCs, SVOCs, and total metals. No VOCs were detected in any of the wells. The only SVOC detected above method detection levels was Aroclor 1254, which was detected in one groundwater sample at a concentration of 0.79 µg/L. This level is slightly above the Federal drinking water standard of 0.5 µg/L. In addition, the location of the well corresponds with the soil boring which exhibited low levels of PCB Aroclor 1254 in soil (i.e., sample location No. 1). Inorganic levels in groundwater exceeded the North Carolina Groundwater Quality Standards (NCGWQS) for chromium, iron, manganese, lead, and selenium.

During the initial Phase II, two surface water samples were collected from Bull Branch upstream and downstream of the fill area. One sediment sample was collected downstream of the fill area. Low levels of 1,1,2,2-tetrachloroethane (13 µg/kg) were detected in the sediment sample. The corresponding surface water sample revealed low levels of 1,1-dichloroethene (1 µg/L). Metals were detected above NCFWQS upstream and downstream of the fill area.

During the second increment of the Phase II survey, four surface water samples were collected from drainage areas around the fill area to evaluate potential surface runoff or infiltration/leaching. The samples were analyzed for VOCs, SVOCs, and inorganics. No organic contaminants were detected in any of the samples above method detection levels. Iron slightly exceeded the North Carolina Water Quality Standard of 1,000 µg/L for Freshwater Classes (Aquatic Life) in three of the four samples. Iron concentrations ranged from 1,100 to

4,600 µg/L. Zinc was detected in one sample at a concentration of 880 µg/L, which is above the NCWQS of 50 µg/L.

2.4 Carlyle Property

This one-acre parcel, owned by E. D. Carlyle, includes a former cabinet shop, an automotive garage, a retail store/gas station and a mobile home.

Three gasoline USTs (2,000, 1,000, and 1,000-gallon) owned by Page Oil Company of Jacksonville, North Carolina, are present at the east corner of the retail storage/gas station. The tanks were recently replaced as the previous tanks were reported to have been leaking. Three fill pipes were also previously observed between the mobile home and Route 17. This location was reportedly occupied by a gasoline station during the 1940s. However, no definitive information pertaining to these tanks was identified during the investigation. Two former gas stations are also present directly across Route 17 southeast of the site.

Large areas of the ground surface surrounding Carlyle's garage were visibly stained and a drainage ditch adjacent to the building appeared to contain oil-like residues. Waste management practices for the garage operation included the disposal of oils onto the ground and into the drainage swales surrounding the parcel. The garage yard contained leaking waste oil tanks, drums, and various engine parts. The site was occupied historically by a turpentine manufacturing plant.

The Phase II investigations focused on assessing groundwater, soil, and surface water/sediment quality. The number and types of samples collected are as follows:

- Two existing monitoring wells near the active underground storage tanks at parcel 132 were sampled (sample numbers F-GW01 and F-GW-02).

- One groundwater sample (F-GW-04) and one soil sample (F-SS-0408) were obtained near the inactive USTs near the mobile home (in the southern portion of parcel 132).

- One groundwater sample (F-GW-05) and one soil sample (F-SS-0102) were obtained in an area where stained soils were noted behind the wood shop.

- One groundwater sample (F-GW-6) and one soil sample (F-SS-0306) were collected in an area where stained soils were noted behind the garage.

- One groundwater sample (F-GW-03) was collected behind the store in the apparent downgradient direction of the active USTs.

- Two surface water samples (F-SW-01 and -02) and two sediment samples (F-SD-01 and -02) were collected from a drainage swale behind the wood shop and garage areas.

All samples were analyzed for VOCs, SVOCs, TPH, and total metals.

The results of the Phase II survey are presented by for each area of concern.

Active UST Area of Concern

Samples collected from the two existing monitoring wells near the active USTs did not reveal organic or inorganic contamination above State or Federal groundwater standards. Elevated levels of chromium (370 µg/L), iron (2,500 µg/L), and selenium (570 µg/L) were detected in well GW-3, which is located near the store downgradient of the active USTs.

Inactive USTs Area of Concern (Near the Mobile Home)

Groundwater sample F-GW-4, which was obtained from the monitoring well near the inactive USTs, exhibited elevated levels of benzene (80 µg/L), toluene (29 µg/L), ethylbenzene (140 µg/L), and xylene (730 µg/L). With the exception of xylene, the contaminant levels exceed the NCGWQS. Total petroleum hydrocarbons were detected at a concentration of 5,000 µg/L. The corresponding soil sample, obtained from the monitoring well borehole, also exhibited the presence of benzene (42 µg/kg), toluene (7 µg/kg), ethylbenzene (18 µg/kg), and xylene (200 µg/kg), and TPH (330 mg/kg)(Weston, 1992a).

Stained Soil Area of Concern (Behind the Wood Shop)

Groundwater sample F-GW-05 did not exhibit organic contamination above method detection levels. Iron (3,800 µg/L) and manganese (220 µg/L) were the only inorganic contaminants detected above NCSGWS. The composite soil sample (F-SS-01--2) from the monitoring well boring exhibited several VOCs and SVOCs including TCE (8 µg/kg), benzene (6 µg/kg), PCE

(38 µg/kg), toluene (8 µg/kg), naphthalene (510 µg/kg), phenanthrene (730 µg/kg), fluoranthene (660 µg/kg), pyrene (2,800 µg/kg), benzo(a)anthracene (910 µg/kg), chrysene (920 µg/kg), benzo(b)fluoranthene (970 µg/kg), benzo(k)fluoranthene (580 µg/kg), benzo(a)pyrene (960 µg/kg), indeno (1,2,3-cd)pyrene (1,100 µg/kg), and benzo(g,h,i)perylene (1,800 µg/kg). In addition, TPH was detected at a level of 120 mg/kg in soil.

Stained Soil Area of Concern (Behind the Garage)

Groundwater (sample F-GW-06) quality in this area of the property exhibited elevated levels of iron, manganese, lead, and selenium at concentrations in excess of NCGWQS. No organic contaminants or TPH were detected in groundwater above method detection levels. Soil analyses did not reveal organic or inorganic contamination (Weston, 1992a).

Drainage Swale

Surface water sample F-SW-01 (collected behind the wood shop) exhibited chromium, iron, mercury, lead, and zinc in excess of NCFWQS for the protection of aquatic life. No organic contaminants or TPH were detected in this sample. However, the corresponding sediment sample revealed TCE (14 µg/kg), PCE (24 µg/kg), 1,1,2,2-tetrachloroethane (69 µg/kg), benzo(b)fluoranthene (290 µg/kg), benzo(k)fluoranthene (150 µg/kg), and benzo(a)pyrene (120 µg/kg)(Weston, 1992a).

Surface water sample F-SW--2 (collected behind the garage) exhibited cadmium (39 µg/L), lead (690 µg/L), copper (120 µg/L), iron (7,200 µg/L), mercury (0.39 µg/L), and zinc (640 µg/L) above NCFWQS for the protection of aquatic life. No organic constituents were detected above the method detection level. The corresponding sediment sample revealed TCE (11 µg/kg), PCE (16 µg/kg), 1,1,2,2-tetrachloroethane (22 µg/kg), toluene (9 µg/kg), pyrene (5,400 µg/kg), and chrysene (590 µg/kg).

2.5 Physical Setting

The following summary of geology and hydrogeology was originally presented in the Second Increment Phase II Report (Weston, 1993).

2.5.1 Geology

The Greater Sandy Run Area (GSRA) is located in the coastal area of North Carolina. The Atlantic Plain Province consists of a Cambrian Granite basement (Pamilco Basin in the north and Cape Fear Arch or Great Carolina Ridge on the south), Tertiary and Upper Cretaceous sediments, and a layer of pleistocene and Recent sand, gravel, and clay.

The geologic history of the Coastal Plain is a record of periodic inundation by the sea, deposition of marine and coastal sediments, subsequent withdrawal of the sea, and erosion of newly formed sediments. At the beginning of the Cretaceous period, the granite basement had been worn down to a plain of crystalline rock, and was tilted to the southeast causing much of eastern North Carolina to be covered by a shallow sea. Weathered and decayed material washed down from the Piedmont, filling the Coastal Plain area and creating the various sedimentary formations. During the Tertiary and Quaternary periods, a similar set of circumstances occurred. The record is complicated by sporadic uplift of the Cape Fear Arch, and the probable subsidence of the Pamilco Basin.

2.5.2 Groundwater and Hydrogeology

Surficial sands over the entire GSRA to a depth ranging from 10 to 30 feet. Three formations, the Yorktown, the Castle Hayne, and the PeeDee are under the surficial sand layer. The Yorktown Formation is a fossiliferous marine sandstone and shell marl (limestone composed of calcareous mud) approximately 75 feet thick, occurring at depths of 0 to 75 feet below mean sea level (msl). The aquifer is unconfined and used by many residences for potable water supplies.

The Castle Hayne Formation is composed of white or gray shell material and white sand. Individual beds vary in degree of consolidation from a dense limestone to a loose shell and sand. The formation thickness rarely exceeds 100 feet, occurring approximately 75 to 100 feet below msl. Several properties in the GSRA obtain groundwater from this semiconfined aquifer for their potable water supply.

The PeeDee Formation is the oldest stratigraphic unit penetrated for well water in Onslow County. It is composed of layers of dark gray sandy clay alternating with layers of dark green to glauconitic sand. The formation is approximately 80 feet thick, occurring 175 to 200 feet below msl. Little water is pumped by the GSRA property owners from the PeeDee Formation

because the overlying Castle Hayne and Yorktown aquifers furnish adequate water supplies for the residents' needs.

2.5.3 Surface Water

With respect to the Bostic property, surface water flow principally due to stormwater runoff is intermittent through various drainage ditches originally constructed as a part of the former Camp Davis Military Base during the early 1940s. Similarly, a drainage ditch is present along the Reinhold property adjacent to Route 17.

2.5.4 Soils

Based upon information provided by the United States Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service, and the Onslow Soil and Water Conservation District, approximately 77 percent of the GSRA is comprised of hydric soils or soils containing hydric inclusions. Hydric soils have a water table that may be within one foot of the ground surface for extended periods during the growing season. In generally, the hydric soils include layers of organic material, clays, loams, and sands.

Approximately 23 percent of the GSRA is comprised of sandy upland soils which typically range from 1 to 4 feet below ground surface. As such, infiltration from the ground surface to the surficial water table readily occurs throughout the entire GSRA.

3.0 PHASE III TASKS

This section presents a brief discussion of the specific tasks included under the Phase III survey. These tasks include:

- Task 1 - Project Management
- Task 2 - Background Review and Preparation of Project Plans
- Task 3 - Subcontractor Procurement
- Task 4 - Field Investigations
- Task 5 - Sample Analysis and Data Validation
- Task 6 - Data Evaluation
- Task 7 - Qualitative Risk Analysis and Nature/Extent of Contamination
- Task 8 - Remedial Alternatives and Cost Estimates
- Task 9 - Phase III Survey Report
- Task 10 - Meetings

3.1 Task 1 - Project Management

The project management task involves the following activities: daily technical support and oversight; budget, schedule review, and tracking; preparation and review of invoices; personnel resource planning and allocation; and coordination with LANTDIV/MCB Camp Lejeune and the subcontractor's project team.

3.2 Task 2 - Background Review and Preparation of Project Plans

The Phase III Project Plans include a Work Plan, Field Sampling and Analysis Plan (FSAP), and a Health and Safety Plant (HASP). The Project Plans were prepared based on the observations made during a site visit by Baker personnel and information available in available environmental investigation reports (Phase I and Phase II surveys).

3.3 Task 3 - Subcontractor Procurement

This task includes the preparation and solicitation of bid specifications, evaluation of bids, and procurement of subcontractors. Where appropriate, the Basic Ordering Agreements, developed by Baker and approved by LANTDIV, will be utilized. Subcontractors for

drilling/well installation services, drive point sampling services, IDW disposal services, and analytical laboratory services will be procured.

3.4 Task 4 - Field Investigations

In general, Task 4 covers the following activities: mobilization; field investigative activities; and coordination with all subcontractors. In addition, this task includes efforts for characterizing and disposing of any field investigative-derived wastes (e.g., drill cuttings, decontamination liquids, etc.) after these wastes are placed in storage drums and staged at a designated location within each parcel. It is assumed at this time that all soil will be nonhazardous and will therefore be left at the site and "spread out." All development/purge water and decon fluids will be transported to a TSDF and treated/disposed of as "nonhazardous" for costing purposes.

The following discussion will address each property separately with respect to investigation activities. According to LANTDIV, it is likely that the Carlyle property will not be accessible concurrent with the field investigations of the Bostic and Reinhold properties. LANTDIV will notify Baker when an access agreement for the Carlyle property has been signed and the field investigation can be initiated. A separate mobilization of Baker field personnel is anticipated. Prior to on-site work, the EIC (Mr. Byron Brant) and the Activity representative (Mr. Neal Paul) will be notified. In addition, Baker will be responsible for clearing all utilities near the areas delineated for drilling.

3.4.1 Bostic Property

The field investigation at the Bostic property is designed to provide data regarding groundwater quality across the site. Five (5) 2-inch diameter, schedule 40 PVC shallow monitoring wells will be installed at the Bostic property. All five wells will be installed within areas suspected to be contaminated (see Figure 3-1). Monitoring well boreholes will be augered in accordance with ASTM Method D1568-84. Split-spoon samples will be collected continuously and field screened with an HNu. No soil samples will be collected for chemical analysis.

All monitoring wells will meet North Carolina well construction regulations and all other applicable regulations and specifications. Well locations were determined based on previous investigation results and observations made during the site visit. All wells will be installed to

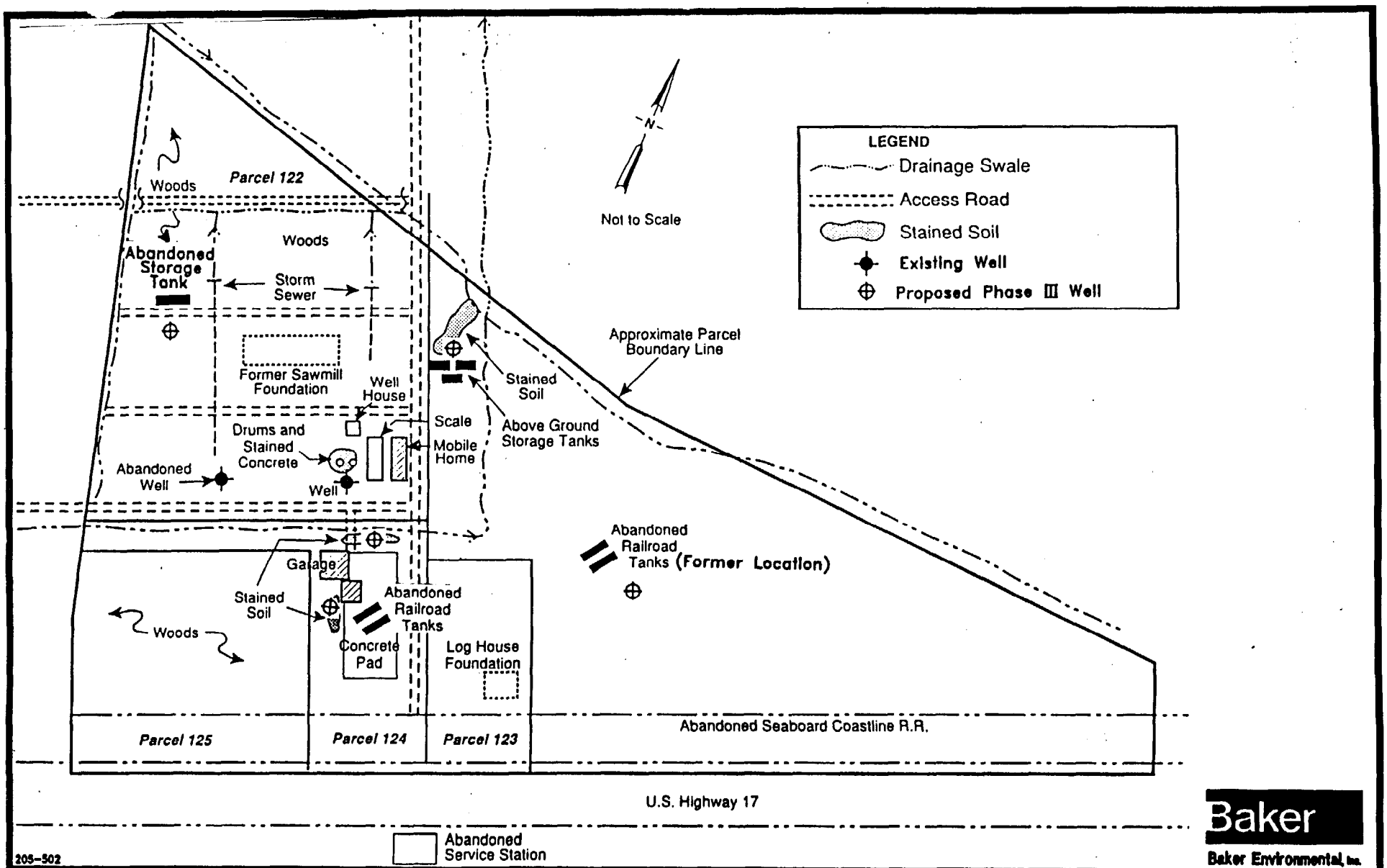


FIGURE 3-1
SITE PLAN
BOSTIC PROPERTY

MARINE CORPS BASE, CAMP LEJEUNE
NORTH CAROLINA

SOURCE: Roy F. Weston, Inc., 1993
Base Maps Boundary Line Survey
of Bostic Property by
Sur-Tech, Inc., 9 May 1990

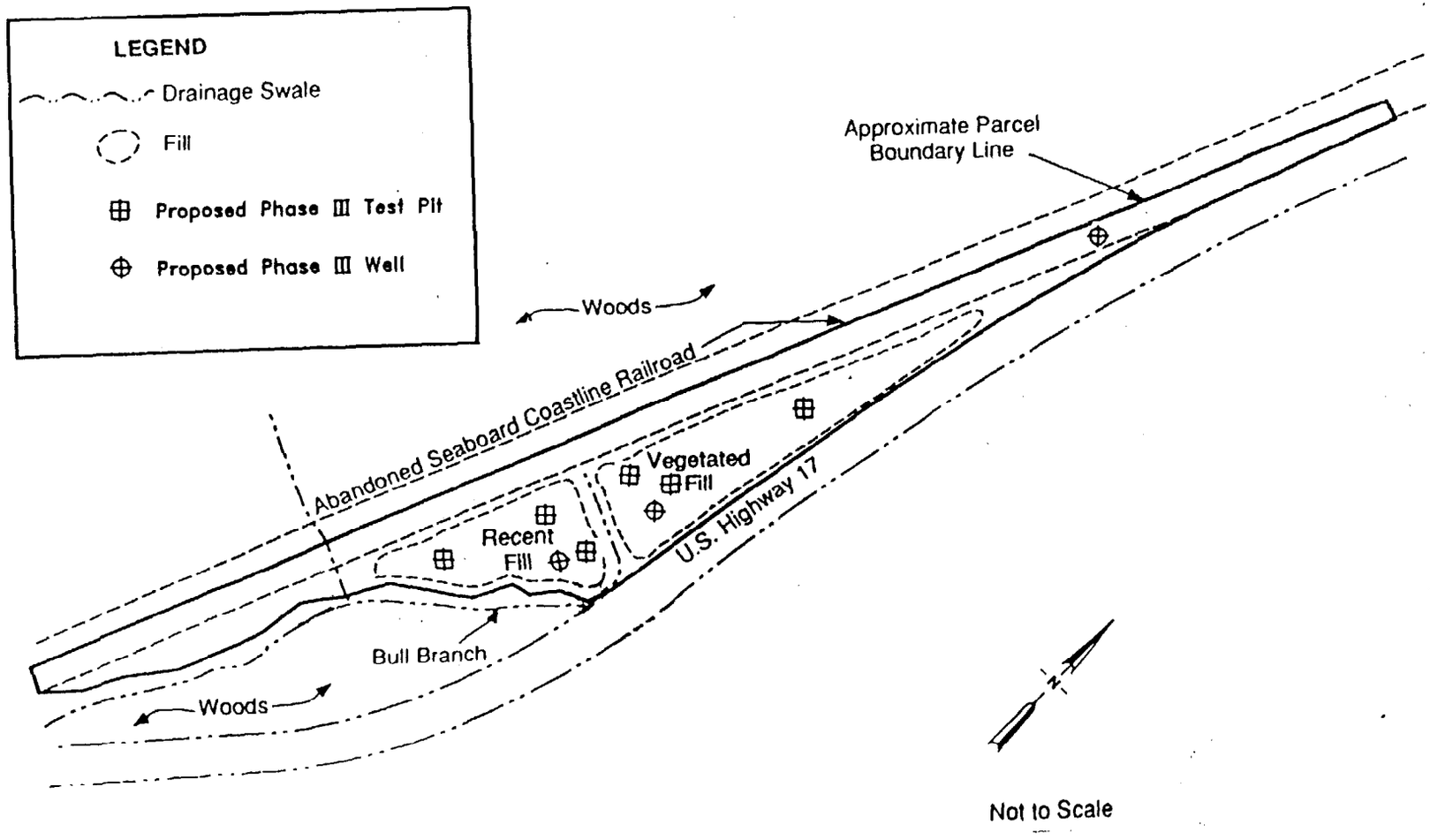
a depth of approximately 15 to 20 feet below ground surface (bgs), depending on the depth of the water table. The anticipated depth to groundwater is 5 to 10 feet bgs. Well screens will be a standard 10-foot length and will be installed to screen the surface of the water table. Following installation of the monitoring well, the well will be developed using bailers, pumping, or surging using a surge block or air. The well will be finished with locking caps and either be flush mounted with a concrete pad and manhole cover or stick-up with a concrete pad and bumper posts, depending on the surrounding conditions.

Groundwater samples will be collected from each of the five monitoring wells and analyzed for volatiles, semivolatiles, and Target Analyte List (TAL) metals (dissolved and total) in accordance with Contract Laboratory Procedures (CLP). In addition, groundwater elevations will be obtained prior to sample collection.

3.4.2 Reinhold Property

The purpose of the field investigation at the Reinhold property is to confirm or deny the presence of PCBs in site groundwater and to characterize the wastes in the two on-site landfills. Three (3) 2-inch diameter schedule 40 PVC shallow monitoring wells will be installed at the Reinhold property (see Figure 3-2). One well will be installed in each of the two fill areas. In addition, one well will be installed upgradient of suspected groundwater flow to provide background results. The monitoring well borehole will be augered in accordance with ASTM Method D1568-84. Split-spoon soil samples will be obtained continuously to the top of the water table and field screened with an HNu photoionization detector. No samples will be collected for chemical analysis. Due to nature of the fill material (construction debris), auger refusal may be encountered. If refusal is encountered, the borehole shall be backfilled with bentonite and a new boring installed within close proximity (approximately 10 feet away) of the initial boring.

All monitoring wells will meet North Carolina well construction regulations and all other applicable regulations and specifications. The shallow wells will be installed to a depth of approximately 15 to 20 feet bgs, depending on the depth of the water table. Well screens will be a standard 10 foot and shall be set to screen the surface of the water table. All wells will be finished with locking caps and either be flush mounted with a concrete pad and manhole cover or stickup with a concrete pad and manhole cover or stick-up with a concrete pad and bumper posts, depending on surrounding conditions.



Baker
Baker Environmental, Inc.

205-501

FIGURE 3-2
SITE PLAN
REINHOLD PROPERTY

MARINE CORPS BASE, CAMP LEJEUNE
NORTH CAROLINA

SOURCE: Roy F. Weston, Inc., 1983 Base Maps Boundary Line Survey of Reinhold Property by Sur-Tech, Inc., 29 September 1989

Groundwater samples will be collected from each of the three monitoring wells and analyzed for volatile, semivolatile, and PCB organic compounds in accordance with USEPA SW 846, and TAL metals (dissolved and total) in accordance with CLP. In addition, groundwater elevations will be obtained prior to sample collection.

Three test pit excavations will be performed along transects across each fill area (see Figure 3-2). Test pits will be excavated approximately 20 feet across and 10 feet deep to characterize the fill material. Subsurface soil samples (assume two samples) will be collected from each test pit to characterize the contents of the pit. In addition, one sample will be collected from the bottom of each test pit for a total of three soil samples. Samples will be collected to characterize visually contaminated soil at the discretion of the site geologist. If no contamination is evident, one composite soil sample will be collected from each test pit. Soil samples will be analyzed for volatiles, semivolatiles, pesticide/PCBs in accordance with USEPA SW 846 and TAL metals per CLP.

3.4.3 Carlyle Property

The field investigation at the Carlyle property (see Figure 3-3) will include the utilization of a drive point sampler and subsurface drilling. The purpose of the investigation is to provide groundwater quality data across the site and to identify the presence of soil contamination in the vicinity of the mobile home located along Route 17 where USTs may be located.

Drive point samples via the geoprobe or hydropunch will be collected along a pre-established grid system at 50-foot spacings covering the entire one-acre parcel (No. 132). Drive point sample locations will be determined based on previous investigations and/or from the site visit (not conducted prior to the preparation of this Draft Work Plan due to the lack of an access agreement). All drive points will be grouted up to the ground surface subsequent to sample collection. All samples will be field screened via a GC analyzer for benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and xylene (BTEX).

Two soil borings will be performed adjacent to the underground storage tanks (USTs) near the mobile home. Soil borings will be advanced to the water table (approximately 15 feet) in accordance with ASTM Method D1568-84. Soil samples will be collected continuously for logging purposes. However, samples for chemical analysis will be collected at approximately 6 feet below ground surface and just above the water table. All samples will be analyzed for BTEX and total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH). Additionally, two soil borings will be

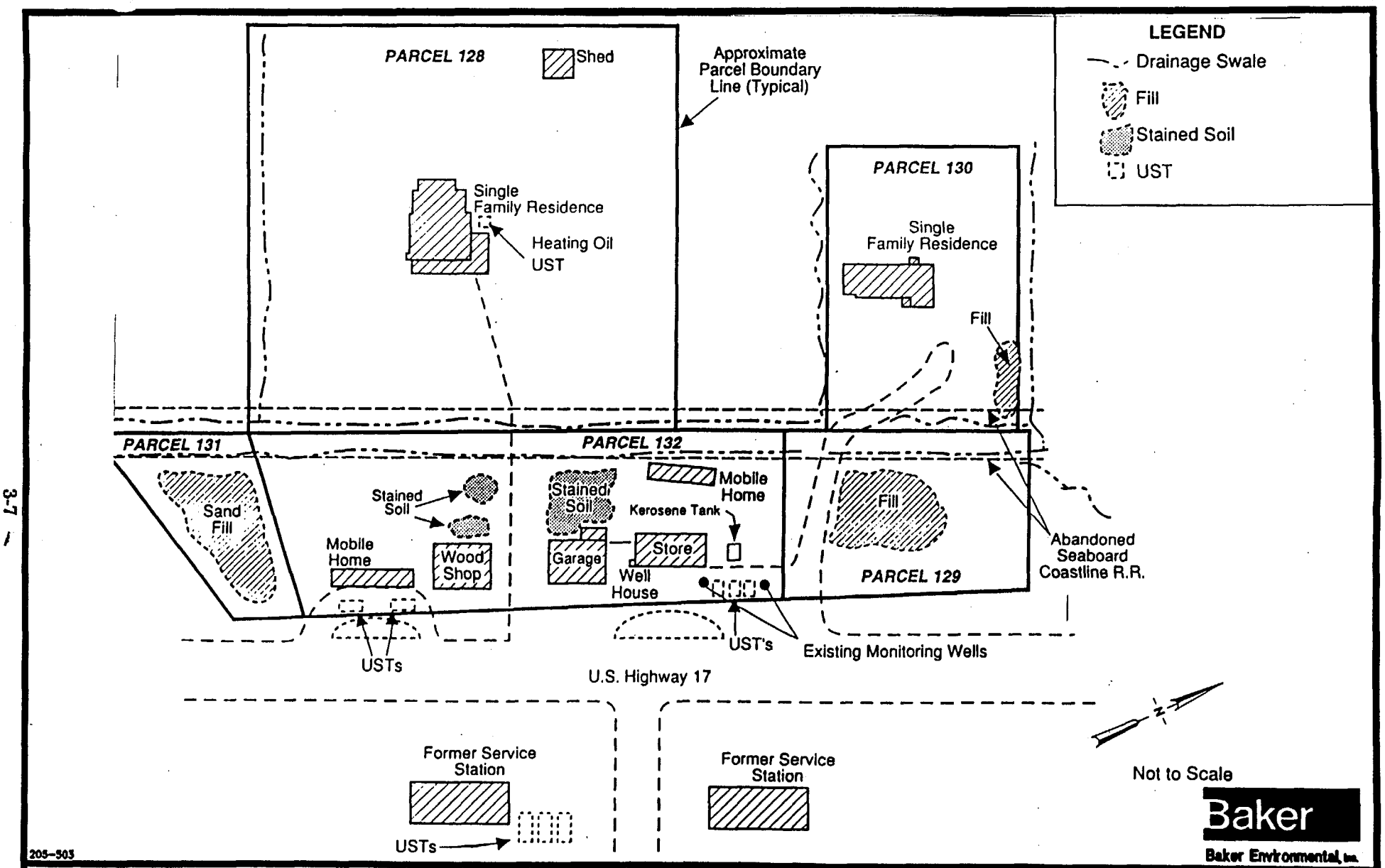


FIGURE 3-3
SITE PLAN
CARLYLE PROPERTY

MARINE CORPS BASE, CAMP LEJEUNE
NORTH CAROLINA

SOURCE: Roy F. Weston, Inc., Environmental Engineering Phase II Real Estate Survey Report, January 1992 Base Maps Boundary Line Survey by Sur-Tech, Inc., 9 May 1990

advanced to the water table in the stained soil areas identified in previous investigations. One composite sample will be collected from each boring and analyzed for oil and grease, full Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedures (TCLP), and Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) parameters per 40 CFR Part 260.

3.4.4 Investigative Derived Waste (IDW) Characterization and Disposal

Investigative Derived Wastes (IDW) such as drill cuttings, decontamination fluids, and development/purge water will be characterized and properly disposed of based on the analytical results. One composite sample of drill cuttings will be obtained from drums at each parcel (i.e., a total of 3 composite samples) and analyzed for full TCLP and RCRA characteristics (corrosivity, ignitability, and reactivity). One composite sample representing all drums of decon fluids will be obtained and analyzed for full TCLP and RCRA hazardous waste characteristics. Development/purge water will be sampled (at each site) and analyzed for only RCRA corrosivity (total of 3 samples). For costing purposes, assume three drums per well location: one drum for containing drill cuttings; one drum for containing development/purge water; and one drum for containing decon fluids.

TCLP RCRA chem

It is assumed (for costing purposes) that all IDW soil and water will be nonhazardous. IDW soil will be disposed of (spread out) at each parcel. IDW water will be transported to a TSDF (by a subcontractor) and properly treated/disposed of.

3.5 Task 5 - Sample Analysis and Data Validation

It is intended that a NEESA-certified laboratory be utilized for sample analysis of organics, inorganics, TCLP/RCRA, TPH, and oil/grease by the following methods:

Analysis	Analytical Method
Volatiles	EPA 601/602
Semivolatiles	EPA 8270
Pesticides/PCBs	EPA 8080
Metals	CLP SOW
BTEX	SW 5030/8020
TPH	EPA 3550-5030
Oil and Grease	EPA 9071
TCLP Volatiles	SW 1311/8240
TCLP Semivolatiles	SW 1311/8080
TCLP Herbicides	SW 1311/8150
TCLP Metals	SW 6010/7470

Ignitability	SW 1010
Corrosivity (pH)	SW 9045
Reactivity	
Cyanide	SW 1310
Sulfide	SW 1310

All analytical results will be received from the laboratory within fourteen days of receipt of samples. As analytical data arrive from the laboratory, samples will be tracked against the corresponding chain-of-custody form to ensure that all analyses have been performed.

All analytical data will be validated by Baker personnel. Note that sample analytical data will undergo 100 percent validation in accordance with Quality Assurance requirements as prescribed in the USEPA Solid Waste Methods, and the National Functional Guidelines for Inorganics Validation.

3.6 Task 6 - Data Evaluation

The evaluation of analytical data includes compiling and summarizing all of the validated chemical data collected during the previously conducted Phase II survey and this Phase III investigation. This work encompasses entering the data onto spreadsheets, and evaluating the data to determine the contaminants present (if any), their concentrations, toxicity, persistence, mobility, and health-based or environmental standards for each. Once the analytical data are received, the information will be compiled, organized and evaluated. This data will be used as the basis for conclusions regarding the nature and extent of site contamination and for the evaluation and cost estimation of remedial alternatives. Also included in this task is the organization of all field generated records and logs (i.e., test boring logs, well construction logs, etc.).

3.7 Task 7 - Qualitative Risk Analysis and Nature/Extent of Contamination

The results of the sampling and analysis program will be qualitatively reviewed to applicable and or appropriate ARARs. Baker will evaluate all data generated and discuss qualitatively whether contamination has the potential to or is presently impacting the environment or human health. Baker will present the findings in a Phase III Survey Report.

A number of criteria will be utilized, which include but are not limited to, Federal Maximum Contaminant Levels (MCLs), Ambient Water Quality Criteria, North Carolina Water Quality

Standards (for surface water and groundwater), and RCRA regulatory limits per 40 CFR Part 260.

3.8 Task 8 - Remedial Alternatives and Cost Estimates

The combined Phase I, II, and III data will be used to evaluate various options for the remediation of impacted soil, sediment, and groundwater at the Bostic, Reinhold, and Carlyle properties. Volumes of impacted media will be computed and regulatory clean-up standards will be identified. In the absence of regulatory clean-up standards, qualitative risk-based clean-up criteria will be developed. Remedial options ranging from no action (with monitoring), to off-site treatment/disposal to on-site treatment/disposal will be considered. A list of advantages/disadvantages will be prepared for each option along with an estimate of the duration and cost.

3.9 Task 9 - Phase III Survey Report

The Phase III Survey Report will include a description of all sampling and chemical analytical methods used; a presentation and evaluation of the analytical data; site maps with sampling locations; boring logs; table of potential Applicable Relevant, and Appropriate Requirements (ARARs) published by the USEPA and State of North Carolina; the qualitative risk assessment; and recommended remedial action alternatives and cost estimates. It is anticipated that due to site access restrictions, the Carlyle property field investigation will be performed subsequent to the investigations at the Bostic and Reinhold properties. As a result, the results of the Carlyle property investigation will be presented in an addendum to the Phase III Survey Report.

A draft and final Phase III report will be prepared.

3.10 Task 10 - Meetings

The Project Manager and Project Engineer will attend one meeting at MCB Camp Lejeune as part of this Phase III Survey. This meeting will be conducted after submittal of the Draft Phase III Report to review the results and recommendations.

4.0 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND STAFFING

The Baker project team will be managed by Mr. Raymond P. Wattras. His primary responsibility will be to monitor technical performance, cost, and schedule, and to maintain close communication with the LANTDIV Technical Manager, Mr. Byron C. Brant, P.E. As Mr. Wattras will report to Mr. William D. Trimbath, P.E. Mr. Thomas Artman will be responsible for overall Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC).

The Project Geologist (Mr. John Zimmerman) will be responsible for installation of monitoring wells and excavation of test pits. The Project Geologist will also assist in the preparation of the reports. The Site Manager/Field Team Leader (Mr. Pete Monday) will assist in all investigations and will coordinate the efforts with the Project Manager. Mr. Monday also will act as the Site Health and Safety Officer.

The qualitative risk analysis will be managed by Mr. Matthew Bartman. Engineering evaluations/cost estimating will be led by Mr. Dan Bonk, P.E.

5.0 SCHEDULE

This project will be performed in accordance with the schedule and milestones graphically shown in Figure 5-1. The schedule assumes a notice to proceed date of September 3, 1993.

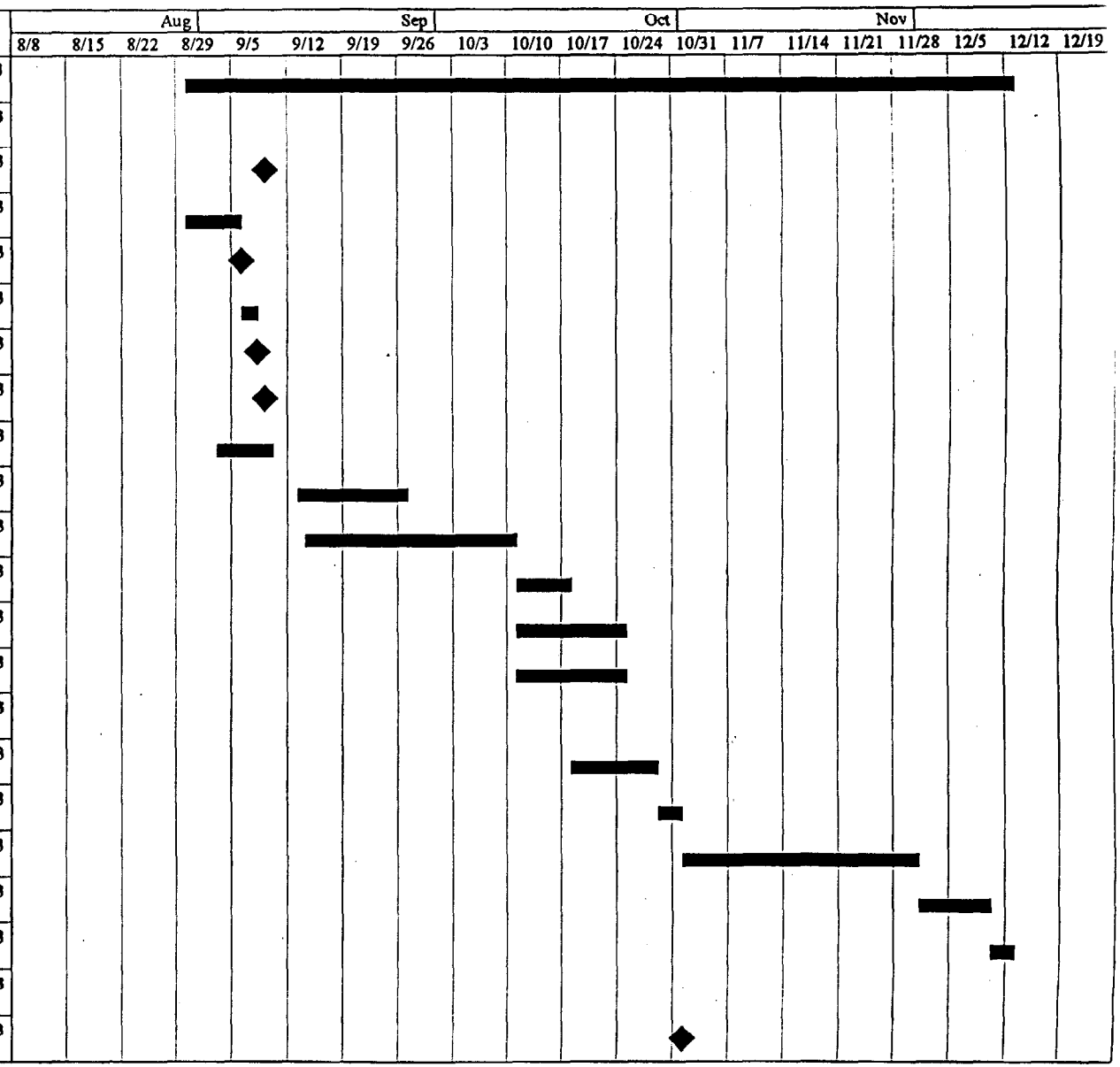
Draft and Final Project Plans will be submitted on or before September 6, 1993, and September 10, 1993, respectively. The submittal of the Final Project Plans is based on receiving Government Comments no later than September 8, 1993. The Draft Phase III report will be submitted on or before November 1, 1993, assuming that site access is granted and the field investigations can begin on September 13, 1993. The Final Phase III report will be submitted within 7 days from receipt of Government comments.

Figure 5 - 1 Project Schedule

Phase III Real Estate Survey

CTO - 0205 Project Manager: Raymond P. Wattras

No.	Task	Days	Start	Finish
1	Project Management	105ed	8/30/93	12/13/93
2	**Background Review & Project Plans**	0ed	8/1/93	8/1/93
2a	Site Visit	1ed	9/9/93	9/10/93
2b	Prepare Draft Project Plans	7ed	8/30/93	9/6/93
2c	Submit Draft Project Plans	1ed	9/6/93	9/7/93
2d	LANTDIV - MCB Review	2ed	9/6/93	9/8/93
2e	Prepare Final Plans	1ed	9/8/93	9/9/93
2f	Submit Final Plans	1ed	9/9/93	9/10/93
3	Subcontractor Procurement	7ed	9/3/93	9/10/93
4	Field Investigation	14ed	9/13/93	9/27/93
5	Data Analysis & Validation	27ed	9/14/93	10/11/93
6	Data Evaluation	7ed	10/11/93	10/18/93
7	Risk Analysis	14ed	10/11/93	10/25/93
8	R/A & Cost Analysis	14ed	10/11/93	10/25/93
9	**Phase III Survey Report**	0ed	10/25/93	10/25/93
9a	Prepare Draft Report	11ed	10/18/93	10/29/93
9b	Submit Draft Report	3ed	10/29/93	11/1/93
9c	LANTDIV - MCB Review	30ed	11/1/93	12/1/93
9d	Prepare Final Report	9ed	12/1/93	12/10/93
9e	Submit Final Report	3ed	12/10/93	12/13/93
10	**Meeting**	0ed	12/13/93	12/13/93
10a	Post-Investigation	1ed	11/1/93	11/2/93



6.0 FIELD SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS PLAN

This Field Sampling and Analysis Plan (FSAP) provides a compendium of Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) to be used during the field investigation portion of the Phase III Hazardous/Toxic Waste Real Estate Acquisition Survey (Phase III Survey) at the Bostic, Reinhold, and Carlyle properties.

The primary purpose of the FSAP is to provide guidance for all field activities by describing in detail the sampling and data collection methods to be used to implement the various field tasks identified in the Phase III Survey Work Plan. The guidance also helps to ensure that sampling and data collection activities are carried out in accordance with EPA Region IV and Navy Energy and Environmental Support Activity (NEESA) practices so that data obtained during the field investigation are of sufficient quantity and quality to evaluate the nature and magnitude of contamination in various media, estimate human health and environmental risks, and to evaluate potential technologies for remediation of contaminated media.

Standard operating procedures to be used during the Phase III Survey include the following:

- F101 Borehole and Sample Logging
- F102 Soil and Rock Sample Acquisition
- F103 Monitor Well Installation
- F104 Groundwater Sample Acquisition
- F106 Test Pit and Trench Excavation
- F202 Water Level, Water-Product Level, and Well Depth Measurements
- F203 Photoionization Detector (PID)
- F301 Sample Preservation and Handling
- F302 Chain-of-Custody
- F303 Field Logbook
- F501 Decontamination of Drilling Rigs and Monitoring Well Materials
- F502 Decontamination of Chemical Sampling and Field Analytical
- F504 Handling of Site Investigation Wastes

These SOPs are provided in Appendix A.

7.0 REFERENCES

Roy F. Weston, Inc., 1991. Environmental Engineering Phase I Real Estate Survey in Support of FY92 MCON Project P-869, Land Acquisition, Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. Contract No. N62470-91-C-6637. March 1991.

Roy F. Weston, Inc., 1992a. Environmental Engineering Phase II Real Estate Survey in Support of FY92 MCON Project P-869, Land Acquisition, Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. Contract No. N62470-91-C-6637. January 1992.

Roy F. Weston, Inc., 1992b. Phase II Project Work Plan, FY92 MCON Project P-869, Hazardous/Toxic Waste Real Estate Acquisition Survey, Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. Contract No. N62470-92-R-7527. October 1992.

Roy F. Weston, Inc., 1993. Second Increment Phase II Report, FY92 MCON Project P-869, Hazardous/Toxic Waste Real Estate Acquisition Survey, Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. Contract No. N62470-92-R-7527. May 1993.

Appendix A
Standard Operating Procedures

SOP F101
Borehole and Sample Logging

BOREHOLE AND SAMPLE LOGGING
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Test Boring Record
- 5.2 Soil Classification
- 5.3 Soil Descriptions
  - 5.3.1 Grain Size Identification
  - 5.3.2 Color
  - 5.3.3 Relative Density and Consistency
  - 5.3.4 Moisture Content
  - 5.3.5 Stratification
  - 5.3.6 Texture/Fabric/Bedding
  - 5.3.7 Summary of Soil Descriptions
- 5.4 Sedimentary Rock Classifications
  - 5.4.1 Rock Type
  - 5.4.2 Color
  - 5.4.3 Bedding Thickness
  - 5.4.4 Hardness
  - 5.4.5 Fracturing
  - 5.4.6 Rock Quality Designation
  - 5.4.7 Weathering
  - 5.4.8 Other Characteristics
  - 5.4.9 Additional Forms

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

BOREHOLE AND SAMPLE LOGGING

1.0 PURPOSE

This SOP provides general reference information and technical guidance on borehole and sample logging. Borehole logs provide information that is used in the determination of geological conditions, assessment of contaminant distribution, and the evaluation of remedial actions.

2.0 SCOPE

This SOP provides descriptions of the standard techniques for borehole and sample logging. These techniques shall be used to provide consistent descriptions of subsurface lithology for each boring that is logged. While experience is the only method to develop confidence and accuracy in the description of soil and rock, the field geologist/engineer may develop adequate classifications through careful, thorough observation and consistent application of the classification procedure.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Soil classifications and terms are given in Sections 5.2 and 5.3. Rock classification and terms are presented in Section 5.4.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - It is the responsibility of the Project Manager to ensure that field personnel responsible for borehole logging are familiar with these procedures. It also is the responsibility of the Project Manager to ensure that the appropriate documents (e.g., test boring logs, field logbooks, etc.) have been correctly and completely filled out by the drilling inspector.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for the overall supervision of the drilling and boring activities, and for ensuring that each borehole is completely logged by the responsible drilling inspector. The Field Team Leader also is responsible for ensuring that all drilling inspectors have been briefed on these procedures.

Drilling Inspector - The drilling inspector (site geologist) is responsible for the direct supervision of boring and sampling activities. It is the Drilling Inspector's responsibility to log each boring, document subsurface conditions, complete the appropriate forms, and direct the drilling crew (or drilling supervisor).

5.0 PROCEDURES

The classification of soil and rock is one of the most important jobs of a drilling inspector or site geologist. It is imperative that the drilling inspector understand and accurately use the field classification system described in this SOP to maintain a consistent flow of information. This identification is based on both visual examination and manual tests. The results of the boring activities, including soil and rock classifications, shall be recorded on a Field Test Boring Record (see Figure 1) or the field notebook.

5.1 Test Boring Record

Each boring shall be fully described in a Field Test Boring Record (Figure 1). The drilling inspector shall log the boring, as it is being drilled, by recording relevant data on the Boring Record. It may be more appropriate to record the boring information in a bound field log book in cases where the information will not easily fit on the boring record. Field Test Boring Records may then be transcribed from the field log book, but must be completed at a minimum, on a weekly basis. The Field Test Boring Records must be completely filled out and signed prior to demobilization from the field activity. Field Test Boring Records must also be legible. Completed Field Test Boring Records shall be converted to report format using a Test Boring Record. An example of a completed Test Boring Record is provided in Attachment A.

The data which is to be included on the Boring Records, when applicable is listed below.

1. Project name, location, and Contract Task Order Number.
2. Date(s).
3. Identifying number and location of each boring.
4. If required, soil classifications and associated depths in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System (see Section 5.2 and Attachment B). These classifications will be noted in the field by the drilling inspector and revised, if necessary, based on

Baker

Baker Environmental, Inc

FIELD TEST BORING RECORD

PROJECT: _____

S.O. NO.: _____ BORING NO.: _____

COORDINATES: EAST: _____ NORTH: _____

ELEVATION: SURFACE: _____ TOP OF STEEL CASING: _____

RIG:	SPLIT SPOON	CASING	AUGERS	CORE BARREL	DATE	PROGRESS (FT)	WEATHER	WATER DEPTH (FT)	TIME
SIZE (DIAM.)									
LENGTH									
TYPE									
HAMMER WT.									
FALL									
STICK UP									

REMARKS: _____

DRILL RECORD							VISUAL DESCRIPTION					
DEPTH	SOIL / ROCK	Sample ID ----- Type - No. (N = No Samp.)	Samp. Rec. (Ft. & %)	SPT Blows Per 0.5' / RQD (Ft. & %)	Lab. Class / Pen. Rate	Lab. M.C. %	Classification (Grain Size, Principal Constituents, Etc.) / *Classification (Name, Grain Size, Principal Constituents, Etc.)*	Color / *Color*	Consist. or Density / *Hardness*	Moisture Content, Organic Content, Plasticity, and Other Observations / *Weathering, Bedding, Fracturing, and Other Observations*	SOIL / ROCK	ELEVATION
1												
2												
3												
4												
5												
6												
7												
8												
9												
10												

DRILLING CO.: _____ BAKER REP.: _____

DRILLER: _____ BORING NO.: _____ SHEET ___ OF ___

Baker

Baker Environmental, Inc

FIELD TEST BORING RECORD

PROJECT: _____

S.O. NO.: _____ BORING NO.: _____

DRILL RECORD							VISUAL DESCRIPTION					
DEPTH	SOIL	Sample ID —— Type - No. (N = No Samp.)	Samp. Rec. (Ft. & %)	SPT Blows Per 0.5'	Lab. Class	Lab. M.C. %	Classification (Grain Size, Principal Constituents, Etc.)	Color	Consist. or Density	Moisture Content, Organic Content, Plasticity, and Other Observations	SOIL	ELEVATION
	ROCK			RQD (Ft. & %)	Pen. Rate		Classification (Name, Grain Size, Principal Constituents, Etc.)	Color	Hardness	Weathering, Bedding, Fracturing, and Other Observations	ROCK	
1												
2												
3												
4												
5												
6												
7												
8												
9												
0												
1												
2												
3												
4												
5												
6												
7												
8												
9												
0												

DRILLING CO.: _____ BAKER REP.: _____

DRILLER: _____ BORING NO.: _____ SHEET ___ OF _

laboratory analysis and review. Both field determined USCS soil classification and a soil description shall be included on the log.

5. Depth limits, and the type and number of samples taken.

6. The number of blows required for each six-inch penetration of a split-spoon sampler and for each 12-inch penetration of casing. The percentage of sample recovered, hammer weight, fall length, and hydraulic pressures to push thin-walled tubes.

7. Depth to water as first encountered during drilling operations, along with the method of determination. Any distinct water bearing zones shall also be delineated.

8. Loss of drilling fluid and the interval over which loss occurred.

9. Identification of equipment used, including type of drilling rig, auger types and sizes, etc.

10. Start date and completion dates for the boring.

11. Name of the drilling company and the driller.

12. Size and length of the casing used in each hole.

13. Observations of visual contamination.

14. Field instrument readings (i.e., photoionization detector, organic vapor analyzer).

As the boring is advanced, the inspector shall evaluate the samples and the cuttings to determine the location of each stratigraphic unit. The descriptions should contain color, grain-size, consistency moisture, etc., in addition to the USCS classification category (Section 5.3.7).

Each sample collected for chemical or geotechnical analysis shall be handled as described in SOP #F102.

5.2 Soil Classification

The data shall be recorded on a Field Test Boring Record, or in a field logbook. The method of deriving the classification should be described, or reference made to this SOP or other applicable manuals. Both the soil classification and the soil descriptions must be entered on the Field Test Boring Record. If required, the soil classification shall consist of the two-letter USCS classification; the soil description shall be much more detailed.

Where required, soils will be classified according to the Unified Soil Classification System (USCS). This method of classification is detailed in Attachment B and identifies soil types on the basis of grain-size and liquid limits, and categorizes them through the use of two letters. Although some laboratory testing is required for full USCS classification, preliminary classifications may be made in the field.

Fine-grained soils are smaller than the No. 200 sieve and are of two types: silt (M) and clay (C). Some classification systems define size ranges for these soil particles, but for field classification purposes, they are identified by their respective behaviors. Organic material (O) is a common component of soil but has no size range; it is recognized by its composition; peat is designated by "Pt." Coarse-grained soils are divided into sand (S) or gravel (G). The careful study of the USCS will aid in developing the competence and consistency necessary for the classification of soils.

The second letter of the two-letter USCS symbol provides information about the grain size distribution of granular soil, or the plasticity characteristics of fine-grained soils. These second letter modifiers are (P) poorly graded/well sorted, (W) well graded/poorly sorted, (C) clayey, (M) silty, (L) low plasticity, or (H) high plasticity.

5.3 Soil Descriptions

The Test Boring Records shall contain complete soil descriptions in addition to the two-letter USCS classification, if required. Soil descriptions include the following components: grain size identification with descriptive terms indicating the relative percentage of each grain size, color, consistency or relative density, moisture content, organic content, plasticity, and other pertinent observations such as visual contamination, HNu measurements, etc. A summary of the soil description components is given in Attachment C.

5.3.1 Grain Size Identification

In nature, soils are comprised of varying size, shape, and combinations of the various grain types. The following terms are used to indicate soil grain size:

Size	Size Limits
Cobbles	3-inches to 12-inches
Coarse gravel	3/4-inches to 3-inches
Fine gravel	4.76 mm (# 4 sieve size) to 3/4-inches
Coarse sand	2 mm (# 10 sieve size) to 4.76 mm
Medium sand	0.42 mm (# 40 sieve size) to 2 mm
Fine sand	0.074 mm (# 200 sieve size) to 0.42 mm
Silt	0.002 mm to 0.074 mm
Clay	less than 0.002 mm

The proportion of each grain size (by weight percent) is indicated using the descriptive terms:

Trace	0 to 10 percent
Little	10 to 20 percent
Some	20 to 35 percent
And (or an adjective form of the grain size, i.e., sandy, silty, clayey)	35 to 50 percent

Some examples of soil grain size descriptions are:

- Silty fine sand: 50 to 65 percent fine sand and 35 to 50 percent silt.
- Medium to coarse sand, some silt: 65 to 90 percent medium to coarse sand, 20 to 35 percent silt.
- Fine sandy silt, trace clay: 50 to 65 percent silt, 35 to 50 percent fine sand, and 0 to 10 percent clay.

The soil type may be classified as noncohesive, granular soils or as cohesive, fine-grained soils as discussed in Section 5.3.3. The grain shape of a soil usually does not need to be determined unless unusual or unique features are readily apparent.

5.3.2 Color

Soil colors shall be described utilizing a single color descriptor preceded, when necessary, by a modifier to denote variations in shade or color mixtures. A soil could therefore be referred to as "gray" or "light-gray" or "blue-gray". Since color can be utilized in correlating units

between sampling locations, it is important for color descriptions to be consistent between borings.

Colors must be described while the sample is still moist. Soil samples shall be broken or split vertically to describe colors because sampling devices tend to smear the sample surface creating color variations between interior and exterior.

The term "mottled" shall be used to indicate soil irregularly marked with spots of different colors. Soil color charts shall not be used unless specified by the Project Manager.

5.3.3 Relative Density and Consistency

To classify the relative density and/or consistency of a soil, the drilling inspector first shall identify the soil type. Granular soils contain predominantly sands and gravels. These types of soil are noncohesive (particles do not adhere well when compressed). Conversely, fine-grained soils which contain predominantly silts and clays are cohesive (particles will adhere when compressed).

The density of noncohesive, granular soils or the consistency of cohesive soils is classified according to standard penetration resistances obtained from split barrel sampling performed according to ASTM D-1586. Standard penetration resistance is the number of blows required to drive a split-barrel sampler with a two-inch outside diameter 12-inches into the material using a 140-pound hammer falling freely through 30-inches. In cases were geotechnical information is required, the standard penetration test is performed by driving the sampler through an 18-inch sample interval, the number of blows will then be recorded for each six-inch increment. The density designation of granular soils is obtained by adding the number of blows required to penetrate the last 12 inches of the sample interval. It is important to note that if gravel and rock fragments are broken by the sampler, or if rock fragments are lodged in the tip, the resulting blow count will be erroneously high, reflecting a higher density than actually exists. This must be noted on the Field Test Boring Record and referenced to the sample number. In cases where soil sampling for environmental analytical analysis is required, 24-inch spoon barrels can be used in order to obtain a sufficient quantity of sample for required analysis. Accordingly, the second and third six-inch increments will be used to calculate the relative density.

The relative density designations for noncohesive soils are:

Designation	Standard Penetration Resistance (Blows per Foot)
Very loose	Less than 4
Loose	4 to 10
Medium dense	10 to 30
Dense	30 to 50
Very dense	Greater than 50

The consistency of cohesive soils is also determined by blow counts as shown:

Designation	Standard Penetration Resistance (Blows per Foot)
Very Soft	Less than 2
Soft	2 to 4
Medium Stiff	4 to 8
Stiff	8 to 15
Very Stiff	15 to 30
Hard	Over 30

5.3.4 Moisture Content

Moisture content is estimated in the field according to four categories: dry, damp, moist, and wet:

Designation	Moisture Content	Descriptive
Dry	0 to 10 percent	Little/no perceptible moisture
Damp	10 to 20 percent	Some perceptible moisture - not compactable
Moist	20 to 35 percent	Compactable
Wet	35 to 50 percent	Above compactable range

Little or no water should appear in dry soil. Wet soils appear to contain all the water they can possibly hold (i.e., saturated). Damp and moist are subjective. Laboratory tests for water content shall be performed if the natural water content is important.

5.3.5 Stratification

Stratification can only be determined after the split-barrel sampler is opened. Typically, bedding thicknesses are described as follows:

Designation	Bedding Spacing
Indistinct	No bedding apparent
Laminated	Less than 1/2-inch
Very thin	1/2-inch to 1-inch
Thin	1-inch to 4-inches
Medium	4-inches to 1-foot
Thick	1-foot to 3-feet
Massive	Greater than three feet

5.3.6 Texture/Fabric/Bedding

The texture/fabric/bedding of a soil shall be described, where appropriate. Texture is described as the relative angularity of the soil particles: rounded, subrounded, subangular, angular. Fabric shall be noted as to whether the particles are flat or bulky and whether there is a particular relation or orientation. The bedding structure also shall be noted (e.g., stratified, lensatic, nonstratified, heterogeneous varved, etc.).

5.3.7 Summary of Soil Descriptions

In summary, soils shall be classified in a similar manner by each drilling inspector. The soil description shall include:

- Soil grain size with appropriate descriptors
- Color
- Relative density and/or consistency
- Moisture content
- Stratification
- Texture/fabric/bedding
- Other distinguishing features

These descriptors are evaluated and the soil classified according the USCS system. All information, measurements and observations shall be legibly recorded on a Field Test Boring Record.

5.4 Sedimentary Rock Classifications

Rocks are grouped into three main divisions: sedimentary, igneous, and metamorphic. Sedimentary rocks are the most predominant type exposed at the earth's surface. As such, this section will consider only classification of sedimentary rocks. Standard geologic references should be used for the complete classification of sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic rocks.

For the purpose of completing the Field Test Boring Record in the field, sedimentary rocks should be classified using the following hierarchy:

- Rock type
- Color
- Bedding thickness
- Hardness
- Fracturing
- Rock Quality Designation
- Weathering
- Other characteristics

5.4.1 Rock Type

There are numerous names for sedimentary rocks such as sandstone, shale, siltstone, claystone, conglomerate, limestone, dolomite, coal, etc. The drilling inspector should select the most appropriate rock type based on experience. Some of the references listed in Section 7.0 provide a more complete discussion of sedimentary rock types.

In addition to selecting a rock type, the drilling inspector should record the grain size (and composition of grains and cement, if apparent) on the Field Test Boring Record. The following designation should be used to describe grain size in sedimentary rocks:

Designation	Grain Size Diameter
Cobbles	Greater than 64 mm (2.5-inches)
Pebbles	4 mm (0.16-inches) to 64 mm
Granules	2 mm (0.08-inches) to 4mm
Very Coarse Sand	1 mm to 2 mm
Coarse Sand	0.5 mm to 1 mm
Medium Sand	0.25 mm to 0.5 mm
Fine Sand	0.125 mm to 0.25 mm
Very Fine Sand	0.0625 mm to 0.125 mm
Silt	0.0039 mm to 0.0625 mm
Clay	Smaller than 0.0039 mm

For individual boundaries of grain size, a scale can be used for coarse-grained rocks. However, the division between silt and clay likely will not be measurable in the field. This boundary shall be determined by use of a hand lens. If the grains cannot be seen with the unaided eye, but are distinguishable with a hand lens (5x magnification) the grain size is silt. If the grains are not distinguishable with a hand lens, the grain size is clay.

5.4.2 Color

The color of rock can be determined in a manner similar to that for soil samples. Rock cores or fragments shall be classified while wet, when possible. Rock color charts shall not be used unless specified by the Project Manager.

5.4.3 Bedding Thickness

The bedding thickness designation for soils (Section 5.3.5) shall also be used for rock descriptions.

5.4.4 Hardness

The hardness of a rock is a function of the compaction, cementation, and mineralogical composition of the rock. A relative scale for sedimentary rock hardness follows:

- Very Soft - Very soft indicates that the rock is easily gouged by a knife, easily scratched by a fingernail, and/or easily broken by hand
- Soft - Soft indicates that the rock may be gouged by a knife, scratched by a fingernail, difficult to break by hand, and/or powders when hit by a hammer.
- Medium Hard - Medium hard indicates that the rock is easily scratched by a knife and/or is easily broken when hit by a hammer.
- Hard - Hard indicates that the rock is difficult to scratch with a knife but may be broken with a hammer.
- Very Hard - Very hard indicates that the rock is difficult to break with a hammer.

Note the difference in usage between the words "scratch" and "gouge". A scratch shall be considered a slight depression in the rock while a gouge is much deeper.

5.4.5 Fracturing

The degree of fracturing or brokenness of a rock is described by measuring the fractures or joint spacing. After eliminating drilling breaks, the average spacing is measured and is described by the following terms:

- Very Broken - Less than a two-inch spacing between fractures
- Broken - A two-inch to one-foot spacing between fractures
- Blocky - A one-foot to three-foot spacing between fractures
- Massive - A three-foot to ten-foot spacing between fractures

5.4.6 Rock Quality Designation

The structural integrity of the rock can be approximated by calculating the Rock Quality Designation (RQD) of cores recovered. The RQD is determined by adding the total lengths of all pieces exceeding four inches and dividing by the total length of core run:

$$RQD\ (\%) = r/l \times 100$$

Where:

r = Total length of all pieces of the lithologic unit being measured, which are greater than four inches, and have resulted from natural breaks. Natural breaks include slickenslides, joints, compaction slicks, bedding plane partings (not caused by drilling) friable zones, etc.

l = Total length of core run.

The results of the RQD calculations shall be recorded on the Field Test Boring Record.

5.4.7 Weathering

The degree of weathering is a significant parameter that is important in determining weathering profiles and also is useful in engineering designs. The following terms can be applied to distinguish the degree of weathering:

- Decomposed - Soft to very soft, bedding and fractures indistinct, no cementation.
- Highly weathered - very soft to soft, with medium hard relic rock fragments, little to moderate cementation. Vugs and openings in bedding and fracture planes, some of which may be filled.

- Weathered - Soft to medium hard. Good cementation, bedding and fractures are pronounced. Uniformly stained.

- Slightly weathered - Medium hard. Fractures pronounced, nonuniform staining, bedding distinct.

- Fresh - Medium hard to hard. No staining. Fractures may be present, bedding may or may not be distinct.

5.4.8 Other Characteristics

The following items should be included in rock description, where applicable:

- Description of contacts between rock units (sharp or gradational)
- Stratification
- Description of any filled cavities
- Cementation (calcareous, siliceous, hematitic, etc.)
- Description of joints and open fractures (with strike and dip, if possible)
- Observation of the presence of fossils

5.4.9 Additional Terms

The following terms also are used to further identify rocks:

- Seam - thin (12-inches or less), probably continuous layer.

- Some - Indicates significant (15 to 40 percent) amounts of an accessory material.

- Few - Indicates insignificant (0 to 15 percent) amounts of an accessory material.

- Interbedded - Indicates thin or very thin alternating seams of material occurring in approximately equal amounts.

- Interlayered - Indicates thick alternating seams of material occurring in approximately equal amounts.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Quality Assurance Records shall consist of completed Field Test Boring Records and Test Boring Records.

7.0 REFERENCES

1. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1990. Standard Methods for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes. ASTM Method D2487-90, Annual Book of Standards, ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

2. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1990. Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual - Manual Procedure). ASTM Method D2488-90, Annual Book of Standards, ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

ATTACHMENT A

EXAMPLE TEST BORING RECORD

Baker

Baker Environmental, Inc

TEST BORING RECORD

PROJECT: _____

S.O. NO.: _____ BORING NO.: _____

COORDINATES: EAST: _____ NORTH: _____

ELEVATION: SURFACE: _____ TOP OF PVC CASING: _____

RIG:	SPLIT SPOON	CASING	AUGERS	CORE BARREL	DATE	PROGRESS (FT)	WEATHER	WATER DEPTH (FT)	TIME
SIZE (DIAM.)									
LENGTH									
TYPE									
HAMMER WT.									
FALL									
STICK UP									

REMARKS:

SAMPLE TYPE

S = Split Spoon
T = Shelby Tube
R = Air Rotary
D = Denison
A = Auger
W = Wash
C = Core
P = Piston
N = No Sample

DEFINITIONS

SPT = Standard Penetration Test (ASTM D-1586) (Blows/0.5')
RQD = Rock Quality Designation (%)
Lab Class. = USCS (ASTM D-2487) or AASHTO (ASTM D-3282)
Lab Moist. = Moisture Content (ASTM D-2216) Dry Weight Basis

Depth (Ft.)	Sample Type and No.	Samp. Rec. Ft. & %	SPT or RQD	Lab. Class. or Pen. Rate	PID (ppm)	Visual Description	Elevatic
1							
2							
3							
4							
5							
6							
7							
8							
9							
10						Match to Sheet 2	

DRILLING CO.: _____ BAKER REP.: _____

DRILLER: _____ BORING NO.: _____ SHEET 1 OF _____

Baker

Baker Environmental, Inc.

TEST BORING RECORD

PROJECT: _____

S.O. NO.: _____ BORING NO.: _____

SAMPLE TYPE

S = Split Spoon
T = Shelby Tube
R = Air Rotary
D = Denison
A = Auger
W = Wash
C = Core
P = Piston
N = No Sample

DEFINITIONS

SPT = Standard Penetration Test (ASTM D-1586) (Blows/0.5')
RQD = Rock Quality Designation (%)
Lab Class. = USCS (ASTM D-2487) or AASHTO (ASTM D-3282)
Lab Moist. = Moisture Content (ASTM D-2216) Dry Weight Basis

Depth (Ft.)	Sample Type and No.	Samp. Rec. (Ft. & %)	SPT or RQD	Lab. Class. or Pen. Rate	PID (ppm)	Visual Description	Elevatic
11							
12							
13							
14							
15							
16							
17							
18							
19							
20							
21							
22							
23							
24							
25							
26							
27							
28							
29							
30							

DRILLING CO.: _____ BAKER REP.: _____

DRILLER: _____ BORING NO.: _____ SHEET 2 OF _

ATTACHMENT B

UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

MAJOR DIVISIONS			GROUP SYMBOLS	TYPICAL NAMES
COARSE-GRAINED SOILS	GRAVELS	CLEAN GRAVELS	GW	Well-Graded Gravels and Gravel-Sand Mixtures, Little or No Fines
			GP	Poorly Graded Gravels and Gravel-Sand Mixtures, Little or No Fines
		GRAVELS WITH FINES	GM	Silty Gravels, Gravel-Sand-Silt Mixtures
			GC	Clayey Gravels, Gravel-Sand-Clay Mixtures
	SANDS	CLEAN SANDS	SW	Well-Graded Sands and Gravelly Sands, Little or No Fines
			SP	Poorly Graded Sands and Gravelly Sands, Little or No Fines
		SANDS WITH FINES	SM	Silty Sands, Sand-Silt Mixtures
			SC	Clayey Sands, Sand-Clay Mixtures
FINE-GRAINED SOILS	SILTS AND CLAYS LIQUID LIMIT >50%		ML	Inorganic Silts, Very Fine Sands, Rock Flour, Silty or Clayey Fine Sands
			CL	Inorganic Clays of Low to Medium Plasticity, Gravelly Clay, Sandy Clays, Silty Clays, Lean Clays
			OL	Organic Silts and Organic Silty Silty Clays of Low Plasticity
	SILTS AND CLAYS LIQUID LIMIT <50%		MH	Inorganic Silts, Micaceous or Diatomaceous Fine Sands or Silts, Elastic Silts
			CH	Inorganic Clays of High Plasticity, Fat Clays
			OH	Organic Clays of Medium to High Plasticity
HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS			PT	Peat, Muck and Other Highly Organic Soils

ASTM GEOLOGICAL DESCRIPTION CHECKLIST FOR FINE-GRAINED AND PARTLY ORGANIC SOILS

1. TYPICAL NAME: Sandy Silt, Silty Clay, Clayey Silt, Organic Silt, Silt, Clay, Sandy Clay, Organic Clay
2. MAXIMUM PARTICLE SIZE
3. SIZE DISTRIBUTION
4. DRY STRENGTH: None, Very Low, Low, Medium, High, Very High
5. DILATENCY: None, Slow, Rapid
6. PLASTIC THREAD: Weak and Soft, Medium, Stiff, Very Stiff
7. PLASTICITY OF FINES: None, Low, Medium, High
8. COLOR: Use Munsell Notation, if Possible
9. ODOR: None, Earthy, Organic
10. MOISTURE CONTENT: Dry, Moist, Wet, Saturated
11. CONSISTENCY: Soft, Firm (Medium), Stiff, Very Stiff, Hard
12. STRUCTURE: Stratified, Laminated, Fissured, Slickensided, Blocky Lensed, Homogeneous
13. CEMENTATION: Weak, Strong
14. LOCAL OR GEOLOGIC NAME

ASTM GEOLOGICAL DESCRIPTION CHECKLIST FOR COARSE GRAINED SOILS

1. TYPICAL NAME: Boulder, Cobbles, Gravel, Sand (Add Descriptive Adjectives For Minor Constituents)
2. GRADUATION: Well Graded, Poorly Graded
3. MAXIMUM PARTICLE SIZE
4. SIZE DISTRIBUTION: Percent Gravel, Sand and Fines
5. GRAIN SHAPE: Angular, Subangular, Subrounded, Rounded
6. MINERALOGY: Rock Type For Gravel, Predominant Mineral in Sand
7. COLOR: Use Munsell Notation, if Possible
8. ODOR: None, Earthy, Organic
9. MOISTURE CONTENT: Dry, Moist, Wet, Saturated
10. NATURAL DENSITY: Loose Dense
11. STRUCTURE: Stratified, Lensed, Nonstratified
12. CEMENTATION: Weak, Strong
13. LOCAL OR GEOLOGIC NAME

NOTES

ATTACHMENT C

SOIL AND ROCK DESCRIPTION SUMMARY

SOIL DESCRIPTION

GRAIN SIZE IDENTIFICATION

NAME	SIZE LIMITS
Boulder	12" OR MORE
Cobbles	3" - 12"
Coarse Gravel	3/4" - 3"
Fine Gravel	4.76 mm (#4) - 3/4"
Coarse Sand	2 mm (#10) - 4.76 mm (#4)
Medium Sand	0.42 mm (#40) - 2 mm (#10)
Fine Sand	0.074 mm (#200)-0.42 mm (#40)
Silt	0.002 mm-0.074 mm (#200)
Clay	Less than 0.002 mm

RELATIVE DENSITY

NONCOHESIVE SOIL

TERM	SPT (Blows/ft)
Very Loose	Below 4
Loose	4-10
Medium Dense	10-30
Dense	30-50
Very Dense	OVER 50

COHESIVE SOILS

TERM	SPT (Blows/ft)
Very Soft	BELOW 2
Soft	2-4
Medium Stiff	4-8
Stiff	8-15
Very Stiff	15-30
Hard	OVER 30

MOISTURE	DESCRIPTIVE TERMS	
Dry -	Trace	0-10%
Damp	Little	10-20%
Moist	Some	20-35%
Wet	And	35-50%

ROCK DESCRIPTIONS

HARDNESS

Very Soft -	Easily gouged by knife, easily scratched by fingernail, easily broken by hand
Soft -	Gouged by knife, scratched by fingernail, difficult to break by hand, powders with hammer
Medium Hard -	Easily scratched by knife, easily broken with hammer
Hard -	Difficult to scratch, breaks with hammer
Very Hard -	Difficult to break, rings when struck

WEATHERING

Decomposed	-	Soft to Very soft, bedding and fractures indistinct, no cementation.
Highly Weathered	-	Very soft to soft, with medium hard relict rock fragments: little to moderate cementation. Vugs, openings in bedding and fractures (may be filled).
Weathered	-	Soft to medium hard. Good cementation. bedding and fractures are pronounced. Uniformly stained.
Slightly Weathered	-	Medium hard. Fractures pronounced, non-uniform staining, bedding distinct.
Fresh	-	Medium hard to hard. No staining. Fractures may be present. Bedding may or may not be indistinct.

BEDDING AND FRACTURES:

SPACING	BEDDING	FRACTURES
	Indistinct	
LESS THAN 1/2" (1 cm)	Laminated	Fissile
1/2" to 1" (1cm-3cm)	Very Thin	Very Close
1" TO 4" (3cm-10cm)	Thin	Close
4" TO 1' (10cm-30cm)	Moderate	Moderate
1' TO 3' (30 cm-1m)	Thick	Wide
3' TO 10' (1m-3m)	Massive	Very Wide

CONTACTS:

_____ = DEFINITE

_____ = INDEFINITE

. . . . . = GRADATIONAL

SAMPLE TYPE

S = Split Spoon
T = Shelby Tube
R = Air Rotary
D = Denison
A = Auger
W = Wash (Roller Bit)
C = Core
P = Piston
N = No Sample Taken

ABBREVIATIONS

HS = Hollow Stem
NP = Non Plastic
-PL = Below the Plastic Limit
PL = At the Plastic Limit
+PL = Above the Plastic Limit
+LL = Above the Liquid Limit
SPT = Standard Penetration Test
RQD = Rock Quality Designation

ROCK SYMBOLS

CONGLOMERATE	LIMESTONE
BRECCIA	DOLOMITE
SANDSTONE	COAL
SILTSTONE	VOID
SHALE	UNDIFFERENTIATED
CLAYSTONE	

HARDNESS

V. SOFT - CORE RECOVERY < 50%, EASILY GOUGED BY KNIFE OR SCREWDRIVER, EASILY SCRATCHED BY FINGERNAIL, EASILY BROKEN BY HAND

SOFT - CORE RECOVERY 50 - 75%, GOUGED BY KNIFE OR SCREWDRIVER, SCRATCHED BY FINGERNAIL, DIFFICULT TO BREAK BY HAND, POWDERS w/HAMMER

MED. HD. - CORE RECOVERY > 75%, EASILY SCRATCHED BY KNIFE OR SCREWDRIVER, EASILY BROKEN BY HAMMER

HD. - DIFFICULT TO SCRATCH, BREAKS w/HAMMER

V. HD. - DIFFICULT TO BREAK, RINGS WHEN STRUCK

SPACING	BEDDING	FRACTURES
	INDISTINCT	
LESS THAN ½" (1cm)	LAMINATED	FISSILE
½" To 1" (1cm-3cm)	VERY THIN	VERY CLOSE
1" To 4" (3cm-10cm)	THIN	CLOSE
4" To 1' (10cm-30cm)	MODERATE	MODERATE
1' To 3' (30cm-1m)	THICK	WIDE
3' To 10' (1m-3m)	MASSIVE	VERY WIDE

WEATHERING

DECOMPOSED - SOFT - V. SOFT, BEDDING AND FRACTURES INDISTINCT, NO CEMENTATION

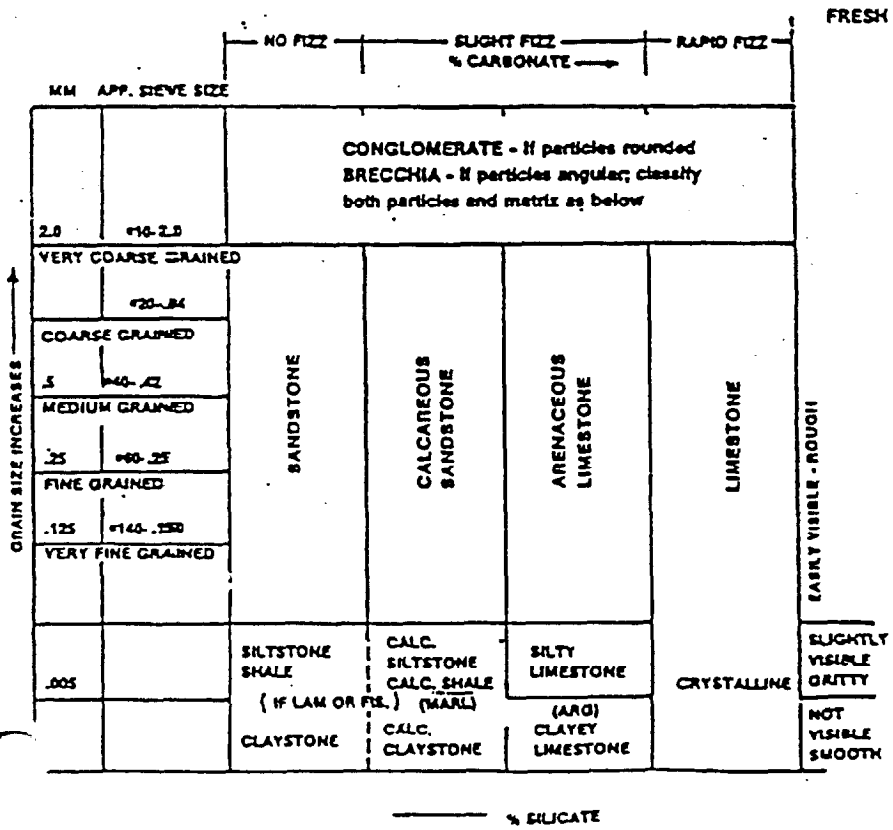
HL WTHR. - V. SOFT - SOFT, w/MED. HD. RELICT ROCK FRAGMENTS; LITTLE TO MOD. CEMENTATION, VUGS, OPENINGS IN BEDDING AND FRACTURES (MAY BE CLAY OR CALC. FILLED)

WTHR. - SOFT TO MED. HD., GOOD CEMENTATION, BEDDING AND FRACTURES ARE PRONOUNCED, UNIFORMLY STAINED

SL. WTHR. - MED. HD., FRACTURES PRONOUNCED, NON-UNIFORM STAINING, BEDDING DISTINCT

FRESH - MED. HD. TO HD., NO STAINING, FRACTURES MAY BE PRESENT, BEDDING MAY OR MAY NOT BE DISTINCT

COMMON LOCAL SEDIMENTARY ROCK CLASSIFICATIONS



RQD = $\frac{L}{R}$ - NTYPE CORE ONLY

L = TOTAL LENGTH IN A RUN OF CORE PIECES LONGER THAN 4"

R = LENGTH OF THE RUN

ROCK DESCRIPTIONS

Designation: D 2488 - 90

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS
1916 Race St. Philadelphia, Pa 19103
Reprinted from the Annual Book of ASTM Standards. Copyright ASTM
If not listed in the current combined index, will appear in the next edition.

Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2488; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This standard has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DoD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers procedures for the description of soils for engineering purposes.

1.2 This practice also describes a procedure for identifying soils, at the option of the user, based on the classification system described in Test Method D 2487. The identification is based on visual examination and manual tests. It must be clearly stated in reporting an identification that it is based on visual-manual procedures.

1.2.1 When precise classification of soils for engineering purposes is required, the procedures prescribed in Test Method D 2487 shall be used.

1.2.2 In this practice, the identification portion assigning a group symbol and name is limited to soil particles smaller than 3 in. (75 mm).

1.2.3 The identification portion of this practice is limited to naturally occurring soils (disturbed and undisturbed).

NOTE 1—This practice may be used as a descriptive system applied to such materials as shale, claystone, shells, crushed rock, etc. (See Appendix X2).

1.3 The descriptive information in this practice may be used with other soil classification systems or for materials other than naturally occurring soils.

1.4 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.* For specific precautionary statements see Section 8.

1.5 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[2]

D 1452 Practice for Soil Investigation and Sampling by Auger Borings[2]

D 1586 Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 2113 Practice for Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation[2]

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[2]

D 4083 Practice for Description of Frozen Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions:*

3.1.1 Except as listed below, all definitions are in accordance with Terminology D 653.

NOTE 2—For particles retained on a 3-in. (75-mm) US standard sieve, the following definitions are suggested:

Cobbles—particles of rock that will pass a 12-in. (300-mm) square opening and be retained on a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve, and

Boulders—particles of rock that will not pass a 12-in. (300-mm) square opening.

3.1.1.2 *clay*—soil passing a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve that can be made to exhibit plasticity (putty-like properties) within a range of water contents, and that exhibits considerable strength when air-dry. For classification, a clay is a fine-grained soil, or the fine-grained portion of a soil, with a plasticity index equal to or greater than 4, and the plot of plasticity index versus liquid limit falls on or above the "A" line (see Fig. 3 of Test Method D 2487).

3.1.1.3 *gravel*—particles of rock that will pass a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve and be retained on a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve with the following subdivisions:

coarse—passes a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve and is retained on a ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve.

fine—passes a ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve and is retained on a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

3.1.1.4 *organic clay*—a clay with sufficient organic content to influence the soil properties. For classification, an organic clay is a soil that would be classified as a clay, except that its liquid limit value after oven drying is less than 75 % of its liquid limit value before oven drying.

3.1.1.5 *organic silt*—a silt with sufficient organic content to influence the soil properties. For classification, an organic silt is a soil that would be classified as a silt except that its liquid limit value after oven drying is less than 75 % of its liquid limit value before oven drying.

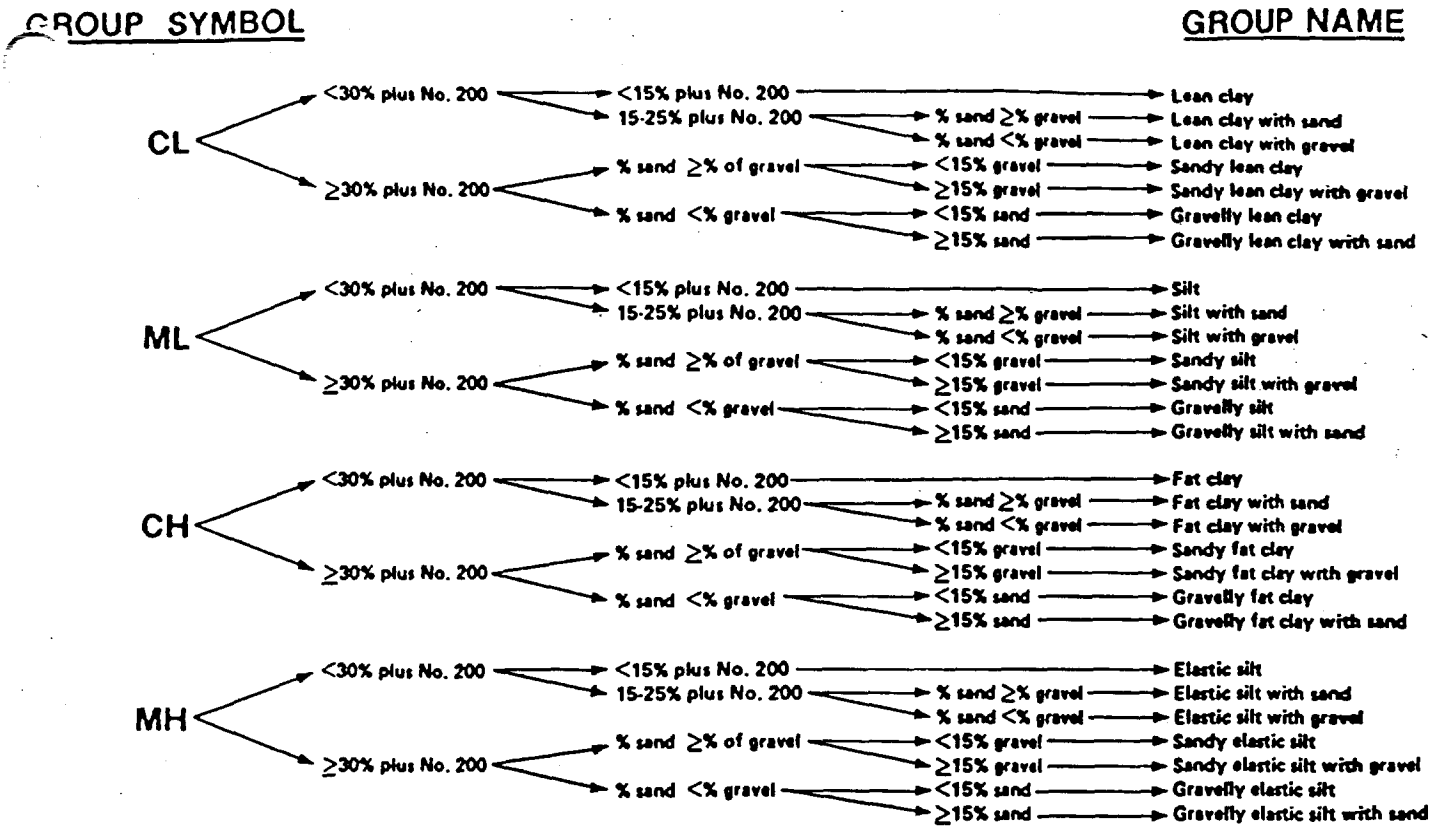
3.1.1.6 *peat*—a soil composed primarily of vegetable tissue in various stages of decomposition usually with an organic odor, a dark brown to black color, a spongy consistency, and a texture ranging from fibrous to amorphous.

3.1.1.7 *sand*—particles of rock that will pass a No. 4

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.07 on Identification and Classification of Soils.

Current edition approved June 29, 1990. Published August 1990. Originally published as D 2488 - 66 T. Last previous edition D 2488 - 84[ε1].

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.



NOTE—Percentages are based on estimating amounts of fines, sand, and gravel to the nearest 5 %.

FIG. 1a Flow Chart for Identifying Inorganic Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or more fines)

(4.75-mm) sieve and be retained on a No. 200 (75-µm) sieve with the following subdivisions:

coarse—passes a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and is retained on a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve.

medium—passes a No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve and is retained on a No. 40 (425-µm) sieve.

fine—passes a No. 40 (425-µm) sieve and is retained on a No. 200 (75-µm) sieve.

3.1.1.8 *silt*—soil passing a No. 200 (75-µm) sieve that is nonplastic or very slightly plastic and that exhibits little or no strength when air dry. For classification, a silt is a fine-grained soil, or the fine-grained portion of a soil, with a plasticity index less than 4, or the plot of plasticity index versus liquid limit falls below the "A" line (see Fig. 3 of Test Method D 2487).

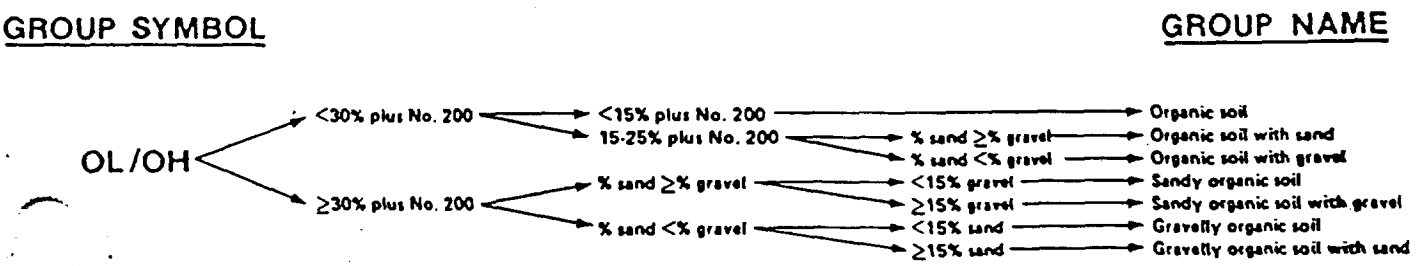
4. Summary of Practice

4.1 Using visual examination and simple manual tests, this practice gives standardized criteria and procedures for describing and identifying soils.

4.2 The soil can be given an identification by assigning a group symbol(s) and name. The flow charts, Figs. 1a and 1b for fine-grained soils, and Fig. 2, for coarse-grained soils, can be used to assign the appropriate group symbol(s) and name. If the soil has properties which do not distinctly place it into a specific group, borderline symbols may be used, see Appendix X3.

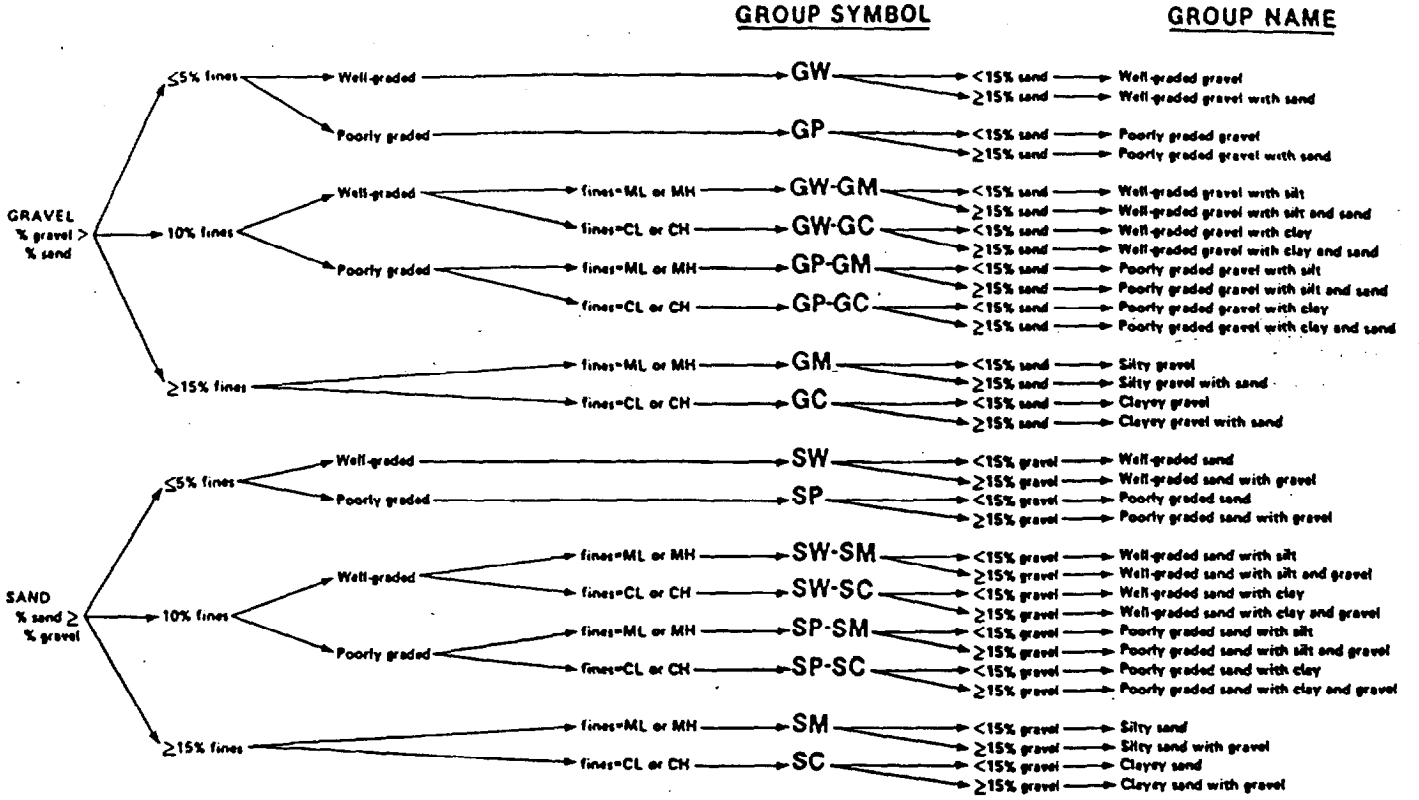
NOTE 3—It is suggested that a distinction be made between *dual symbols* and *borderline symbols*.

Dual Symbol—A dual symbol is two symbols separated by a hyphen, for example, GP-GM, SW-SC, CL-ML used to indicate that the soil has been identified as having the properties of a classification in accordance with Test Method D 2487 where two symbols are required. Two symbols are required when the soil has between 5 and 12 % fines or



NOTE—Percentages are based on estimating amounts of fines, sand, and gravel to the nearest 5 %.

FIG. 1b Flow Chart for Identifying Organic Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or more fines)



NOTE—Percentages are based on estimating amounts of fines, sand, and gravel to the nearest 5 %.

FIG. 2 Flow Chart for Identifying Coarse-Grained Soils (less than 50 % fines)

when the liquid limit and plasticity index values plot in the CL-ML area of the plasticity chart.

Borderline Symbol—A borderline symbol is two symbols separated by a slash, for example, CL/CH, GM/SM, CL/ML. A borderline symbol should be used to indicate that the soil has been identified as having properties that do not distinctly place the soil into a specific group (see Appendix X3).

5. Significance and Use

5.1 The descriptive information required in this practice can be used to describe a soil to aid in the evaluation of its significant properties for engineering use.

5.2 The descriptive information required in this practice should be used to supplement the classification of a soil as determined by Test Method D 2487.

5.3 This practice may be used in identifying soils using the classification group symbols and names as prescribed in Test Method D 2487. Since the names and symbols used in this practice to identify the soils are the same as those used in Test Method D 2487, it shall be clearly stated in reports and all other appropriate documents, that the classification symbol and name are based on visual-manual procedures.

5.4 This practice is to be used not only for identification of soils in the field, but also in the office, laboratory, or wherever soil samples are inspected and described.

5.5 This practice has particular value in grouping similar soil samples so that only a minimum number of laboratory tests need be run for positive soil classification.

NOTE 4—The ability to describe and identify soils correctly is learned more readily under the guidance of experienced personnel, but it may also be acquired systematically by comparing numerical laboratory test results for typical soils of each type with their visual and manual characteristics.

5.6 When describing and identifying soil samples from a given boring, test pit, or group of borings or pits, it is not necessary to follow all of the procedures in this practice for every sample. Soils which appear to be similar can be grouped together; one sample completely described and identified with the others referred to as similar based on performing only a few of the descriptive and identification procedures described in this practice.

5.7 This practice may be used in combination with Practice D 4083 when working with frozen soils.

6. Apparatus

6.1 *Required Apparatus:*

6.1.1 *Pocket Knife or Small Spatula.*

6.2 *Useful Auxiliary Apparatus:*

6.2.1 *Small Test Tube and Stopper* (or jar with a lid).

6.2.2 *Small Hand Lens.*

7. Reagents

7.1 *Purity of Water*—Unless otherwise indicated, references to water shall be understood to mean water from a city water supply or natural source, including non-potable water.

7.2 *Hydrochloric Acid*—A small bottle of dilute hydrochloric acid, HCl, one part HCl (10 *N*) to three parts water (This reagent is optional for use with this practice). See Section 8.

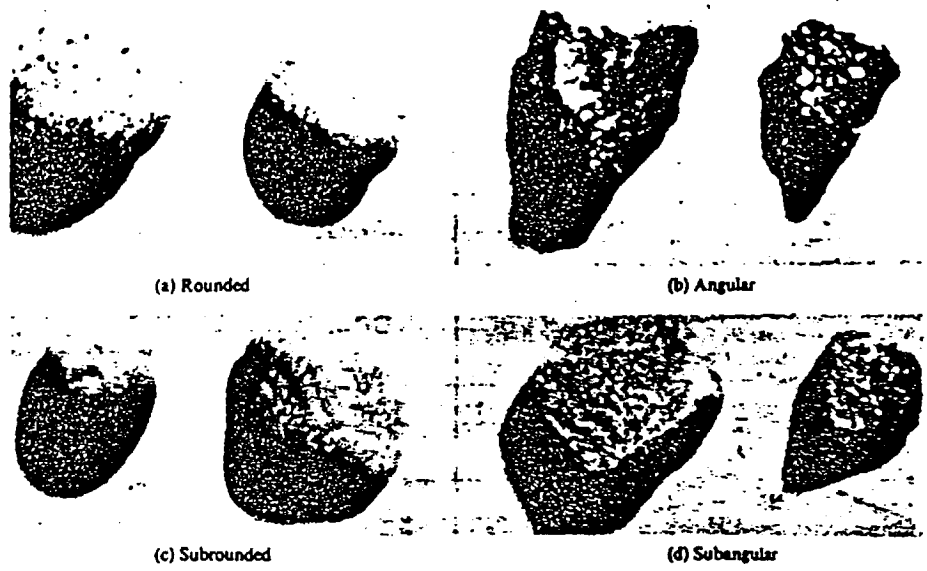


FIG. 3 Typical Angularity of Bulky Grains

8. Safety Precautions

8.1 When preparing the dilute HCl solution of one part concentrated hydrochloric acid (10 *N*) to three parts of distilled water, slowly add acid into water following necessary safety precautions. Handle with caution and store safely. If solution comes into contact with the skin, rinse thoroughly with water.

8.2 **Caution**—Do not add water to acid.

9. Sampling

9.1 The sample shall be considered to be representative of the stratum from which it was obtained by an appropriate, accepted, or standard procedure.

NOTE 5—Preferably, the sampling procedure should be identified as having been conducted in accordance with Practices D 1452, D 1587, or D 2113, or Method D 1586.

9.2 The sample shall be carefully identified as to origin.

NOTE 6—Remarks as to the origin may take the form of a boring number and sample number in conjunction with a job number, a geologic stratum, a pedologic horizon or a location description with respect to a permanent monument, a grid system or a station number and offset with respect to a stated centerline and a depth or elevation.

9.3 For accurate description and identification, the minimum amount of the specimen to be examined shall be in accordance with the following schedule:

Maximum Particle Size, Sieve Opening	Minimum Specimen Size, Dry Weight
4.75 mm (No. 4)	100 g (0.5 lb)
9.5 mm (3/8 in.)	200 g (0.5 lb)
19.0 mm (3/4 in.)	1.0 kg (2.2 lb)
38.1 mm (1 1/2 in.)	8.0 kg (18 lb)
75.0 mm (3 in.)	60.0 kg (132 lb)

NOTE 7—If random isolated particles are encountered that are significantly larger than the particles in the soil matrix, the soil matrix can be accurately described and identified in accordance with the preceeding schedule.

9.4 If the field sample or specimen being examined is smaller than the minimum recommended amount, the report shall include an appropriate remark.

TABLE 1 Criteria for Describing Angularity of Coarse-Grained Particles (see Fig. 3)

Description	Criteria
Angular	Particles have sharp edges and relatively plane sides with unpolished surfaces
Subangular	Particles are similar to angular description but have rounded edges
Subrounded	Particles have nearly plane sides but have well-rounded corners and edges
Rounded	Particles have smoothly curved sides and no edges

10. Descriptive Information for Soils

10.1 *Angularity*—Describe the angularity of the sand (coarse sizes only), gravel, cobbles, and boulders, as angular, subangular, subrounded, or rounded in accordance with the criteria in Table 1 and Fig. 3. A range of angularity may be stated, such as: subrounded to rounded.

10.2 *Shape*—Describe the shape of the gravel, cobbles, and boulders as flat, elongated, or flat and elongated if they meet the criteria in Table 2 and Fig. 4. Otherwise, do not mention the shape. Indicate the fraction of the particles that have the shape, such as: one-third of the gravel particles are flat.

10.3 *Color*—Describe the color. Color is an important property in identifying organic soils, and within a given

TABLE 2 Criteria for Describing Particle Shape (see Fig. 4)

The particle shape shall be described as follows where length, width, and thickness refer to the greatest, intermediate, and least dimensions of a particle, respectively.

Flat	Particles with width/thickness > 3
Elongated	Particles with length/width > 3
Flat and elongated	Particles meet criteria for both flat and elongated

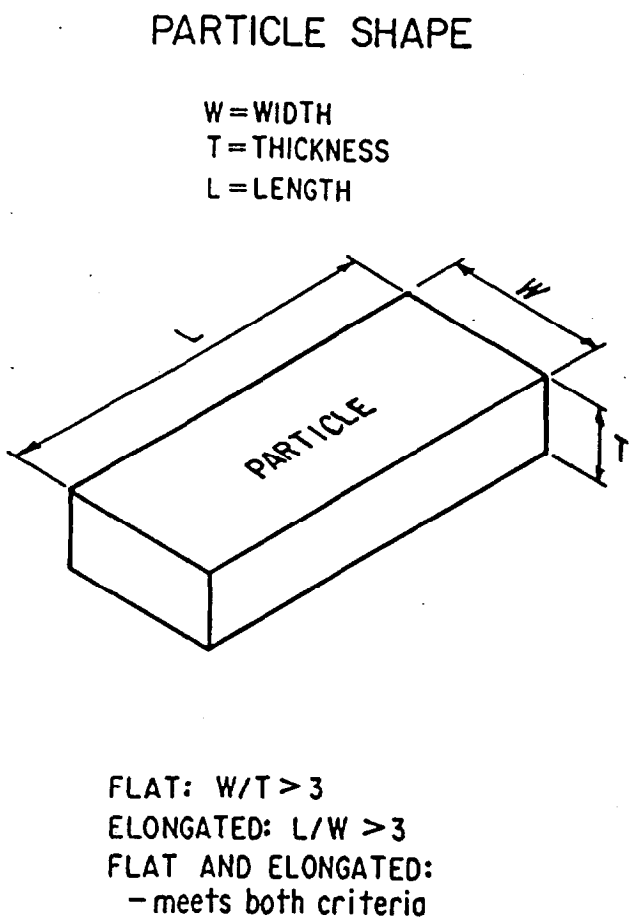


FIG. 4 Criteria for Particle Shape

TABLE 3 Criteria for Describing Moisture Condition

Description	Criteria
Dry	Absence of moisture, dusty, dry to the touch
Moist	Damp but no visible water
Wet	Visible free water, usually soil is below water table

locality it may also be useful in identifying materials of similar geologic origin. If the sample contains layers or patches of varying colors, this shall be noted and all representative colors shall be described. The color shall be described for moist samples. If the color represents a dry condition, this shall be stated in the report.

10.4 *Odor*—Describe the odor if organic or unusual. Soils containing a significant amount of organic material usually have a distinctive odor of decaying vegetation. This is especially apparent in fresh samples, but if the samples are dried, the odor may often be revived by heating a moistened sample. If the odor is unusual (petroleum product, chemical, and the like), it shall be described.

10.5 *Moisture Condition*—Describe the moisture condition as dry, moist, or wet, in accordance with the criteria in Table 3.

10.6 *HCl Reaction*—Describe the reaction with HCl as none, weak, or strong, in accordance with the critera in Table 4. Since calcium carbonate is a common cementing agent, a report of its presence on the basis of the reaction with dilute hydrochloric acid is important.

TABLE 4 Criteria for Describing the Reaction With HCl

Description	Criteria
None	No visible reaction
Weak	Some reaction, with bubbles forming slowly
Strong	Violent reaction, with bubbles forming immediately

TABLE 5 Criteria for Describing Consistency

Description	Criteria
Very soft	Thumb will penetrate soil more than 1 in. (25 mm)
Soft	Thumb will penetrate soil about 1 in. (25 mm)
Firm	Thumb will indent soil about ¼ in. (6 mm)
Hard	Thumb will not indent soil but readily indented with thumbnail
Very hard	Thumbnail will not indent soil

10.7 *Consistency*—For intact fine-grained soil, describe the consistency as very soft, soft, firm, hard, or very hard, in accordance with the criteria in Table 5. This observation is inappropriate for soils with significant amounts of gravel.

10.8 *Cementation*—Describe the cementation of intact coarse-grained soils as weak, moderate, or strong, in accordance with the criteria in Table 6.

10.9 *Structure*—Describe the structure of intact soils in accordance with the criteria in Table 7.

10.10 *Range of Particle Sizes*—For gravel and sand components, describe the range of particle sizes within each component as defined in 3.1.2 and 3.1.6. For example, about 20 % fine to coarse gravel, about 40 % fine to coarse sand.

10.11 *Maximum Particle Size*—Describe the maximum particle size found in the sample in accordance with the following information:

10.11.1 *Sand Size*—If the maximum particle size is a sand size, describe as fine, medium, or coarse as defined in 3.1.6. For example: maximum particle size, medium sand.

10.11.2 *Gravel Size*—If the maximum particle size is a gravel size, describe the maximum particle size as the smallest sieve opening that the particle will pass. For example, maximum particle size, 1½ in. (will pass a 1½-in. square opening but not a ¾-in. square opening).

10.11.3 *Cobble or Boulder Size*—If the maximum particle size is a cobble or boulder size, describe the maximum dimension of the largest particle. For example: maximum dimension, 18 in. (450 mm).

10.12 *Hardness*—Describe the hardness of coarse sand and larger particles as hard, or state what happens when the particles are hit by a hammer, for example, gravel-size particles fracture with considerable hammer blow, some gravel-size particles crumble with hammer blow. "Hard" means particles do not crack, fracture, or crumble under a hammer blow.

10.13 Additional comments shall be noted, such as the presence of roots or root holes, difficulty in drilling or augering hole, caving of trench or hole, or the presence of mica.

10.14 A local or commercial name or a geologic interpre-

TABLE 6 Criteria for Describing Cementation

Description	Criteria
Weak	Crumbles or breaks with handling or little finger pressure
Moderate	Crumbles or breaks with considerable finger pressure
Strong	Will not crumble or break with finger pressure

TABLE 7 Criteria for Describing Structure

Description	Criteria
..atified	Alternating layers of varying material or color with layers at least 6 mm thick; note thickness
Laminated	Alternating layers of varying material or color with the layers less than 6 mm thick; note thickness
Fissured	Breaks along definite planes of fracture with little resistance to fracturing
Slickensided	Fracture planes appear polished or glossy, sometimes striated
Blocky	Cohesive soil that can be broken down into small angular lumps which resist further breakdown
Lensed	Inclusion of small pockets of different soils, such as small lenses of sand scattered through a mass of clay; note thickness
Homogeneous	Same color and appearance throughout

tation of the soil, or both, may be added if identified as such.

10.15 A classification or identification of the soil in accordance with other classification systems may be added if identified as such.

11. Identification of Peat

11.1 A sample composed primarily of vegetable tissue in various stages of decomposition that has a fibrous to amorphous texture, usually a dark brown to black color, and an organic odor, shall be designated as a highly organic soil and shall be identified as peat, PT, and not subjected to the identification procedures described hereafter.

Preparation for Identification

2.1 The soil identification portion of this practice is ..sed on the portion of the soil sample that will pass a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve. The larger than 3-in. (75-mm) particles must be removed, manually, for a loose sample, or mentally, for an intact sample before classifying the soil.

12.2 Estimate and note the percentage of cobbles and the percentage of boulders. Performed visually, these estimates will be on the basis of volume percentage.

NOTE 8—Since the percentages of the particle-size distribution in Test Method D 2487 are by dry weight, and the estimates of percentages for gravel, sand, and fines in this practice are by dry weight, it is recommended that the report state that the percentages of cobbles and boulders are by volume.

12.3 Of the fraction of the soil smaller than 3 in. (75 mm), estimate and note the percentage, by dry weight, of the gravel, sand, and fines (see Appendix X4 for suggested procedures).

NOTE 9—Since the particle-size components appear visually on the basis of volume, considerable experience is required to estimate the percentages on the basis of dry weight. Frequent comparisons with laboratory particle-size analyses should be made.

12.3.1 The percentages shall be estimated to the closest 5 %. The percentages of gravel, sand, and fines must add up to 100 %.

12.3.2 If one of the components is present but not in sufficient quantity to be considered 5 % of the smaller than 3-in. (75-mm) portion, indicate its presence by the term , for example, trace of fines. A trace is not to be ..sidered in the total of 100 % for the components.

13. Preliminary Identification

13.1 The soil is *fine grained* if it contains 50 % or more fines. Follow the procedures for identifying fine-grained soils of Section 14.

13.2 The soil is *coarse grained* if it contains less than 50 % fines. Follow the procedures for identifying coarse-grained soils of Section 15.

14. Procedure for Identifying Fine-Grained Soils

14.1 Select a representative sample of the material for examination. Remove particles larger than the No. 40 sieve (medium sand and larger) until a specimen equivalent to about a handful of material is available. Use this specimen for performing the dry strength, dilatancy, and toughness tests.

14.2 *Dry Strength:*

14.2.1 From the specimen, select enough material to mold into a ball about 1 in. (25 mm) in diameter. Mold the material until it has the consistency of putty, adding water if necessary.

14.2.2 From the molded material, make at least three test specimens. A test specimen shall be a ball of material about ½ in. (12 mm) in diameter. Allow the test specimens to dry in air, or sun, or by artificial means, as long as the temperature does not exceed 60°C.

14.2.3 If the test specimen contains natural dry lumps, those that are about ½ in. (12 mm) in diameter may be used in place of the molded balls.

NOTE 10—The process of molding and drying usually produces higher strengths than are found in natural dry lumps of soil.

14.2.4 Test the strength of the dry balls or lumps by crushing between the fingers. Note the strength as none, low, medium, high, or very high in accorance with the criteria in Table 8. If natural dry lumps are used, do not use the results of any of the lumps that are found to contain particles of coarse sand.

14.2.5 The presence of high-strength water-soluble cementing materials, such as calcium carbonate, may cause exceptionally high dry strengths. The presence of calcium carbonate can usually be detected from the intensity of the reaction with dilute hydrochloric acid (see 10.6).

14.3 *Dilatancy:*

14.3.1 From the specimen, select enough material to mold into a ball about ½ in. (12 mm) in diameter. Mold the material, adding water if necessary, until it has a soft, but not sticky, consistency.

14.3.2 Smooth the soil ball in the palm of one hand with the blade of a knife or small spatula. Shake horizontally, striking the side of the hand vigorously against the other hand several times. Note the reaction of water appearing on

TABLE 8 Criteria for Describing Dry Strength

Description	Criteria
None	The dry specimen crumbles into powder with mere pressure of handling
Low	The dry specimen crumbles into powder with some finger pressure
Medium	The dry specimen breaks into pieces or crumbles with considerable finger pressure
High	The dry specimen cannot be broken with finger pressure. Specimen will break into pieces between thumb and a hard surface
Very high	The dry specimen cannot be broken between the thumb and a hard surface

TABLE 9 Criteria for Describing Dilatancy

Description	Criteria
None	No visible change in the specimen
Slow	Water appears slowly on the surface of the specimen during shaking and does not disappear or disappears slowly upon squeezing
Rapid	Water appears quickly on the surface of the specimen during shaking and disappears quickly upon squeezing

TABLE 10 Criteria for Describing Toughness

Description	Criteria
Low	Only slight pressure is required to roll the thread near the plastic limit. The thread and the lump are weak and soft
Medium	Medium pressure is required to roll the thread to near the plastic limit. The thread and the lump have medium stiffness
High	Considerable pressure is required to roll the thread to near the plastic limit. The thread and the lump have very high stiffness

the surface of the soil. Squeeze the sample by closing the hand or pinching the soil between the fingers, and note the reaction as none, slow, or rapid in accordance with the criteria in Table 9. The reaction is the speed with which water appears while shaking, and disappears while squeezing.

14.4 *Toughness:*

14.4.1 Following the completion of the dilatancy test, the test specimen is shaped into an elongated pat and rolled by hand on a smooth surface or between the palms into a thread about ⅛ in. (3 mm) in diameter. (If the sample is too wet to roll easily, it should be spread into a thin layer and allowed to lose some water by evaporation.) Fold the sample threads and reroll repeatedly until the thread crumbles at a diameter of about ⅛ in. The thread will crumble at a diameter of ⅛ in. when the soil is near the plastic limit. Note the pressure required to roll the thread near the plastic limit. Also, note the strength of the thread. After the thread crumbles, the pieces should be lumped together and kneaded until the lump crumbles. Note the toughness of the material during kneading.

14.4.2 Describe the toughness of the thread and lump as low, medium, or high in accordance with the criteria in Table 10.

14.5 *Plasticity*—On the basis of observations made during the toughness test, describe the plasticity of the material in accordance with the criteria given in Table 11.

14.6 Decide whether the soil is an *inorganic* or an *organic* fine-grained soil (see 14.8). If inorganic, follow the steps given in 14.7.

14.7 *Identification of Inorganic Fine-Grained Soils:*

TABLE 11 Criteria for Describing Plasticity

Description	Criteria
Nonplastic	A ⅛-in. (3-mm) thread cannot be rolled at any water content
Low	The thread can barely be rolled and the lump cannot be formed when drier than the plastic limit
Medium	The thread is easy to roll and not much time is required to reach the plastic limit. The thread cannot be rerolled after reaching the plastic limit. The lump crumbles when drier than the plastic limit
High	It takes considerable time rolling and kneading to reach the plastic limit. The thread can be rerolled several times after reaching the plastic limit. The lump can be formed without crumbling when drier than the plastic limit

14.7.1 Identify the soil as a *lean clay*, CL, if the soil has medium to high dry strength, no or slow dilatancy, and medium toughness and plasticity (see Table 12).

14.7.2 Identify the soil as a *fat clay*, CH, if the soil has high to very high dry strength, no dilatancy, and high toughness and plasticity (see Table 12).

14.7.3 Identify the soil as a *silt*, ML, if the soil has no to low dry strength, slow to rapid dilatancy, and low toughness and plasticity, or is nonplastic (see Table 12).

14.7.4 Identify the soil as an *elastic silt*, MH, if the soil has low to medium dry strength, no to slow dilatancy, and low to medium toughness and plasticity (see Table 12).

NOTE 11—These properties are similar to those for a lean clay. However, the silt will dry quickly on the hand and have a smooth, silky feel when dry. Some soils that would classify as MH in accordance with the criteria in Test Method D 2487 are visually difficult to distinguish from lean clays, CL. It may be necessary to perform laboratory testing for proper identification.

14.8 *Identification of Organic Fine-Grained Soils:*

14.8.1 Identify the soil as an *organic soil*, OL/OH, if the soil contains enough organic particles to influence the soil properties. Organic soils usually have a dark brown to black color and may have an organic odor. Often, organic soils will change color, for example, black to brown, when exposed to the air. Some organic soils will lighten in color significantly when air dried. Organic soils normally will not have a high toughness or plasticity. The thread for the toughness test will be spongy.

NOTE 12—In some cases, through practice and experience, it may be possible to further identify the organic soils as organic silts or organic clays, OL or OH. Correlations between the dilatancy, dry strength, toughness tests, and laboratory tests can be made to identify organic soils in certain deposits of similar materials of known geologic origin.

14.9 If the soil is estimated to have 15 to 25 % sand or gravel, or both, the words "with sand" or "with gravel" (whichever is more predominant) shall be added to the group name. For example: "lean clay with sand, CL" or "silt with gravel, ML" (see Figs. 1a and 1b). If the percentage of sand is equal to the percentage of gravel, use "with sand."

14.10 If the soil is estimated to have 30 % or more sand or gravel, or both, the words "sandy" or "gravelly" shall be added to the group name. Add the word "sandy" if there appears to be more sand than gravel. Add the word "gravelly" if there appears to be more gravel than sand. For example: "sandy lean clay, CL", "gravelly fat clay, CH", or "sandy silt, ML" (see Figs. 1a and 1b). If the percentage of sand is equal to the percent of gravel, use "sandy."

15. Procedure for Identifying Coarse-Grained Soils (Contains less than 50 % fines)

15.1 The soil is a *gravel* if the percentage of gravel is estimated to be more than the percentage of sand.

TABLE 12 Identification of Inorganic Fine-Grained Soils from Manual Tests

Soil Symbol	Dry Strength	Dilatancy	Toughness
ML	None to low	Slow to rapid	Low or thread cannot be formed
CL	Medium to high	None to slow	Medium
MH	Low to medium	None to slow	Low to medium
CH	High to very high	None	High

15.2 The soil is a *sand* if the percentage of gravel is estimated to be equal to or less than the percentage of sand.

15.3 The soil is a *clean gravel* or *clean sand* if the percentage of fines is estimated to be 5 % or less.

15.3.1 Identify the soil as a *well-graded gravel*, GW, or as a *well-graded sand*, SW, if it has a wide range of particle sizes and substantial amounts of the intermediate particle sizes.

15.3.2 Identify the soil as a *poorly graded gravel*, GP, or as a *poorly graded sand*, SP, if it consists predominantly of one size (uniformly graded), or it has a wide range of sizes with some intermediate sizes obviously missing (gap or skip graded).

15.4 The soil is either a *gravel with fines* or a *sand with fines* if the percentage of fines is estimated to be 15 % or more.

15.4.1 Identify the soil as a *clayey gravel*, GC, or a *clayey sand*, SC, if the fines are clayey as determined by the procedures in Section 14.

15.4.2 Identify the soil as a *silty gravel*, GM, or a *silty sand*, SM, if the fines are silty as determined by the procedures in Section 14.

15.5 If the soil is estimated to contain 10 % fines, give the soil a dual identification using two group symbols.

15.5.1 The first group symbol shall correspond to a clean gravel or sand (GW, GP, SW, SP) and the second symbol shall correspond to a gravel or sand with fines (GC, GM, SC, SM).

15.5.2 The group name shall correspond to the first group symbol plus the words "with clay" or "with silt" to indicate the plasticity characteristics of the fines. For example: "well-graded gravel with clay, GW-GC" or "poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SM" (see Fig. 2).

15.6 If the specimen is predominantly sand or gravel but contains an estimated 15 % or more of the other coarse-grained constituent, the words "with gravel" or "with sand" shall be added to the group name. For example: "poorly graded gravel with sand, GP" or "clayey sand with gravel, SC" (see Fig. 2).

15.7 If the field sample contains any cobbles or boulders, or both, the words "with cobbles" or "with cobbles and boulders" shall be added to the group name. For example: "silty gravel with cobbles, GM."

16. Report

16.1 The report shall include the information as to origin, and the items indicated in Table 13.

NOTE 13—*Example: Clayey Gravel with Sand and Cobbles, GC*—About 50 % fine to coarse, subrounded to subangular gravel; about 30 % fine to coarse, subrounded sand; about 20 % fines with medium plasticity, high dry strength, no dilatancy, medium toughness; weak reaction with HCl; original field sample had about 5 % (by volume) subrounded cobbles, maximum dimension, 150 mm.

In-Place Conditions—Firm, homogeneous, dry, brown

Geologic Interpretation—Alluvial fan

NOTE 14—Other examples of soil descriptions and identification are given in Appendixes X1 and X2.

NOTE 15—If desired, the percentages of gravel, sand, and fines may be stated in terms indicating a range of percentages, as follows:

Trace—Particles are present but estimated to be less than 5 %
Few—5 to 10 %
Little—15 to 25 %
Some—30 to 45 %
Mostly—50 to 100 %

TABLE 13 Checklist for Description of Soils

1. Group name
2. Group symbol
3. Percent of cobbles or boulders, or both (by volume)
4. Percent of gravel, sand, or fines, or all three (by dry weight)
5. Particle-size range:
   Gravel—fine, coarse
   Sand—fine, medium, coarse
6. Particle angularity: angular, subangular, subrounded, rounded
7. Particle shape: (if appropriate) flat, elongated, flat and elongated
8. Maximum particle size or dimension
9. Hardness of coarse sand and larger particles
10. Plasticity of fines: nonplastic, low, medium, high
11. Dry strength: none, low, medium, high, very high
12. Dilatancy: none, slow, rapid
13. Toughness: low, medium, high
14. Color (in moist condition)
15. Odor (mention only if organic or unusual)
16. Moisture: dry, moist, wet
17. Reaction with HCl: none, weak, strong

For intact samples:

18. Consistency (fine-grained soils only): very soft, soft, firm, hard, very hard
19. Structure: stratified, laminated, fissured, slickensided, lensed, homogeneous
20. Cementation: weak, moderate, strong
21. Local name
22. Geologic interpretation
23. Additional comments: presence of roots or root holes, presence of mica, gypsum, etc., surface coatings on coarse-grained particles, caving or sloughing of auger hole or trench sides, difficulty in augering or excavating, etc.

16.2 If, in the soil description, the soil is identified using a classification group symbol and name as described in Test Method D 2487, it must be distinctly and clearly stated in log forms, summary tables, reports, and the like, that the symbol and name are based on visual-manual procedures.

17. Precision and Bias

17.1 This practice provides qualitative information only, therefore, a precision and bias statement is not applicable.

18. Keywords

18.1 classification; clay; gravel; organic soils; sand; silt; soil classification; soil description; visual classification

APPENDIXES

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. EXAMPLES OF VISUAL SOIL DESCRIPTIONS

X1.1 The following examples show how the information required in 16.1 can be reported. The information that is included in descriptions should be based on individual circumstances and need.

X1.1.1 *Well-Graded Gravel with Sand (GW)*—About 75 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular gravel; about 25 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular sand; trace of fines; maximum size, 75 mm, brown, dry; no reaction with HCl.

X1.1.2 *Silty Sand with Gravel (SM)*—About 60 % predominantly fine sand; about 25 % silty fines with low plasticity, low dry strength, rapid dilatancy, and low toughness; about 15 % fine, hard, subrounded gravel, a few gravel-size particles fractured with hammer blow; maximum size, 25 mm; no reaction with HCl (Note—Field sample size smaller than recommended).

In-Place Conditions—Firm, stratified and contains lenses of silt 1 to 2 in. (25 to 50 mm) thick, moist, brown to gray; in-place density 106 lb/ft^3; in-place moisture 9 %.

X1.1.3 *Organic Soil (OL/OH)*—About 100 % fines with low plasticity, slow dilatancy, low dry strength, and low toughness; wet, dark brown, organic odor; weak reaction with HCl.

X1.1.4 *Silty Sand with Organic Fines (SM)*—About 75 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular reddish sand; about 25 % organic and silty dark brown nonplastic fines with no dry strength and slow dilatancy; wet; maximum size, coarse sand; weak reaction with HCl.

X1.1.5 *Poorly Graded Gravel with Silt, Sand, Cobbles and Boulders (GP-GM)*—About 75 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded to subangular gravel; about 15 % fine, hard, subrounded to subangular sand; about 10 % silty nonplastic fines; moist, brown; no reaction with HCl; original field sample had about 5 % (by volume) hard, subrounded cobbles and a trace of hard, subrounded boulders, with a maximum dimension of 18 in. (450 mm).

X2. USING THE IDENTIFICATION PROCEDURE AS A DESCRIPTIVE SYSTEM FOR SHALE, CLAYSTONE, SHELLS, SLAG, CRUSHED ROCK, AND THE LIKE

X2.1 The identification procedure may be used as a descriptive system applied to materials that exist in-situ as shale, claystone, sandstone, siltstone, mudstone, etc., but convert to soils after field or laboratory processing (crushing, slaking, and the like).

X2.2 Materials such as shells, crushed rock, slag, and the like, should be identified as such. However, the procedures used in this practice for describing the particle size and plasticity characteristics may be used in the description of the material. If desired, an identification using a group name and symbol according to this practice may be assigned to aid in describing the material.

X2.3 The group symbol(s) and group names should be placed in quotation marks or noted with some type of distinguishing symbol. See examples.

X2.4 Examples of how group names and symbols can be incororated into a descriptive system for materials that are not naturally occurring soils are as follows:

X2.4.1 *Shale Chunks*—Retrieved as 2 to 4-in. (50 to 100-mm) pieces of shale from power auger hole, dry, brown, no reaction with HCl. After slaking in water for 24 h, material identified as "Sandy Lean Clay (CL)"; about 60 % fines with medium plasticity, high dry strength, no dilatancy, and medium toughness; about 35 % fine to medium, hard sand; about 5 % gravel-size pieces of shale.

X2.4.2 *Crushed Sandstone*—Product of commercial crushing operation; "Poorly Graded Sand with Silt (SP-SM)"; about 90 % fine to medium sand; about 10 % nonplastic fines; dry, reddish-brown, strong reaction with HCl.

X2.4.3 *Broken Shells*—About 60 % gravel-size broken shells; about 30 % sand and sand-size shell pieces; about 10 % fines; "Poorly Graded Gravel with Sand (GP)."

X2.4.4 *Crushed Rock*—Processed from gravel and cobbles in Pit No. 7; "Poorly Graded Gravel (GP)"; about 90 % fine, hard, angular gravel-size particles; about 10 % coarse, hard, angular sand-size particles; dry, tan; no reaction with HCl.

X3. SUGGESTED PROCEDURE FOR USING A BORDERLINE SYMBOL FOR SOILS WITH TWO POSSIBLE IDENTIFICATIONS.

X3.1 Since this practice is based on estimates of particle size distribution and plasticity characteristics, it may be difficult to clearly identify the soil as belonging to one category. To indicate that the soil may fall into one of two possible basic groups, a borderline symbol may be used with the two symbols separated by a slash. For example: SC/CL or CL/CH.

X3.1.1 A borderline symbol may be used when the

percentage of fines is estimated to be between 45 and 55 %. One symbol should be for a coarse-grained soil with fines and the other for a fine-grained soil. For example: GM/ML or CL/SC.

X3.1.2 A borderline symbol may be used when the percentage of sand and the percentage of gravel are estimated to be about the same. For example: GP/SP, SC/GC, GM/SM. It is practically impossible to have a soil that would have a borderline symbol of GW/SW.

X3.1.3 A borderline symbol may be used when the soil could be either well graded or poorly graded. For example: GW/GP, SW/SP.

X3.1.4 A borderline symbol may be used when the soil could either be a silt or a clay. For example: CL/ML, CH/MH, SC/SM.

X3.1.5 A borderline symbol may be used when a fine-grained soil has properties that indicate that it is at the boundary between a soil of low compressibility and a soil of high compressibility. For example: CL/CH, MH/ML.

X3.2 The order of the borderline symbols should reflect similarity to surrounding or adjacent soils. For example: soils in a borrow area have been identified as CH. One sample is considered to have a borderline symbol of CL and CH. To show similarity, the borderline symbol should be CH/CL.

X3.3 The group name for a soil with a borderline symbol should be the group name for the first symbol, except for:

CL/CH lean to fat clay
ML/CL clayey silt
CL/ML silty clay

X3.4 The use of a borderline symbol should not be used indiscriminately. Every effort shall be made to first place the soil into a single group.

X4. SUGGESTED PROCEDURES FOR ESTIMATING THE PERCENTAGES OF GRAVEL, SAND, AND FINES IN A SOIL SAMPLE

X4.1 *Jar Method*—The relative percentage of coarse- and fine-grained material may be estimated by thoroughly shaking a mixture of soil and water in a test tube or jar, and then allowing the mixture to settle. The coarse particles will fall to the bottom and successively finer particles will be deposited with increasing time; the sand sizes will fall out of suspension in 20 to 30 s. The relative proportions can be estimated from the relative volume of each size separate. 's method should be correlated to particle-size laboratory erminations.

X4.2 *Visual Method*—Mentally visualize the gravel size particles placed in a sack (or other container) or sacks. Then, do the same with the sand size particles and the fines. Then, mentally compare the number of sacks to estimate the percentage of plus No. 4 sieve size and minus No. 4 sieve size present. The percentages of sand and fines in the minus sieve size No. 4 material can then be estimated from the wash test (X4.3).

X4.3 *Wash Test (for relative percentages of sand and fines)*—Select and moisten enough minus No. 4 sieve size material to form a 1-in (25-mm) cube of soil. Cut the cube in half, set one-half to the side, and place the other half in a small dish. Wash and decant the fines out of the material in the dish until the wash water is clear and then compare the two samples and estimate the percentage of sand and fines. Remember that the percentage is based on weight, not volume. However, the volume comparison will provide a reasonable indication of grain size percentages.

X4.3.1 While washing, it may be necessary to break down lumps of fines with the finger to get the correct percentages.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

Designation: D 2487 – 90

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS
1916 Race St., Philadelphia, Pa. 19103
Reprinted from the Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Copyright ASTM
If not listed in the current combined index, will appear in the next edition.

Standard Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2487; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This test method has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense. Consult the DOD Index of Specifications and Standards for the specific year of issue which has been adopted by the Department of Defense.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method describes a system for classifying mineral and organo-mineral soils for engineering purposes based on laboratory determination of particle-size characteristics, liquid limit, and plasticity index and shall be used when precise classification is required.

NOTE 1—Use of this standard will result in a single classification group symbol and group name except when a soil contains 5 to 12 % fines or when the plot of the liquid limit and plasticity index values falls into the crosshatched area of the plasticity chart. In these two cases, a dual symbol is used, for example, GP-GM, CL-ML. When the laboratory test results indicate that the soil is close to another soil classification group, the borderline condition can be indicated with two symbols separated by a slash. The first symbol should be the one based on this standard, for example, CL/CH, GM/SM, SC/CL. Borderline symbols are particularly useful when the liquid limit value of clayey soils is close to 50. These soils can have expansive characteristics and the use of a borderline symbol (CL/CH, CH/CL) will alert the user of the assigned classifications of expansive potential.

1.2 The group symbol portion of this sytem is based on laboratory tests performed on the portion of a soil sample passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve (see Specification E 11).

1.3 As a classification system, this test method is limited to naturally occurring soils.

NOTE 2—The group names and symbols used in this test method may be used as a descriptive system applied to such materials as shale, claystone, shells, crushed rock, etc. See Appendix X2.

1.4 This test method is for qualitative application only.

NOTE 3—When quantitative information is required for detailed designs of important structures, this test method must be supplemented by laboratory tests or other quantitative data to determine performance characteristics under expected field conditions.

1.5 The system is based on the widely recognized Unified Soil Classification System which was adopted by several U.S. Government agencies in 1952 as an outgrowth of the Airfield Classification System developed by A. Casagrande.[2]

1.6 *This standard does not purport to address the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

C 117 Test Method for Materials Finer Than 75-µm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing[3]
C 136 Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates[3]
C 702 Practice for Reducing Field Samples of Aggregate to Testing Size[3]
D 420 Practice for Investigating and Sampling Soil and Rock for Engineering Purposes[4]
D 421 Practice for Dry Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[4]
D 422 Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils[4]
D 653 Terminology Relating to Soil, Rock, and Contained Fluids[4]
D 1140 Test Method for Amount of Material in Soils Finer than the No. 200 (75-µm) Sieve[4]
D 2216 Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil, Rock, and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures[4]
D 2217 Practice for Wet Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants[4]
D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[4]
D 4083 Practice for Description of Frozen Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[4]
D 4318 Test Method for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils[4]
D 4427 Classification of Peat Samples by Laboratory Testing[4]
E 11 Specification for Wire-Cloth Sieves for Testing Purposes[3]

3. Terminology

3.1 *Definitions*—Except as listed below, all definitions are in accordance with Terms and Symbols D 653.

NOTE 4—For particles retained on a 3-in. (75-mm) U.S. standard sieve, the following definitions are suggested:

Cobbles—particles of rock that will pass a 12-in. (300-mm) square opening and be retained on a 3-in. (75-mm) U.S. standard sieve, and

Boulders—particles of rock that will not pass a 12in. (300-mm) square opening

3.1.1 *gravel*—particles of rock that will pass a 3-in.

[1] This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.07 on Identification and Classification of Soils.

Current edition approved June 29, 1990. Published August 1990. Originally published as D 2487 – 66 T. Last previous edition D 2487 – 85[ε1].

[2] Casagrande, A., "Classification and Identification of Soils," *Transactions*, ASCE, 1948, p. 901.

[3] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.02.

[4] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

(75-mm) sieve and be retained on a No. 4 (4.75-mm) U.S. standard sieve with the following subdivisions:

Coarse—passes 3-in. (75-mm) sieve and retained on ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve, and

Fine—passes ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve and retained on No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

3.1.2 *sand*—particles of rock that will pass a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and be retained on a No. 200 (75-µm) U.S. standard sieve with the following subdivisions:

Coarse—passes No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and retained on No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve,

Medium—passes No. 10 (2.00-mm) sieve and retained on No. 40 (425-µm) sieve, and

Fine—passes No. 40 (425-µm) sieve and retained on No. 200 (75-µm) sieve.

3.1.3 *clay*—soil passing a No. 200 (75-µm) U.S. standard sieve that can be made to exhibit plasticity (putty-like properties) within a range of water contents and that exhibits considerable strength when air dry. For classification, a clay is a fine-grained soil, or the fine-grained portion of a soil, with a plasticity index equal to or greater than 4, and the plot of plasticity index versus liquid limit falls on or above the "A" line.

3.1.4 *silt*—soil passing a No. 200 (75-µm) U.S. standard sieve that is nonplastic or very slightly plastic and that exhibits little or no strength when air dry. For classification, a silt is a fine-grained soil, or the fine-grained portion of a soil, with a plasticity index less than 4 or if the plot of plasticity index versus liquid limit falls below the "A" line.

3.1.5 *organic clay*—a clay with sufficient organic content influence the soil properties. For classification, an organic clay is a soil that would be classified as a clay except that its liquid limit value after oven drying is less than 75 % of its liquid limit value before oven drying.

3.1.6 *organic silt*—a silt with sufficient organic content to influence the soil properties. For classification, an organic silt is a soil that would be classified as a silt except that its liquid limit value after oven drying is less than 75 % of its liquid limit value before oven drying.

3.1.7 *peat*—a soil composed of vegetable tissue in various stages of decomposition usually with an organic odor, a dark-brown to black color, a spongy consistency, and a texture ranging from fibrous to amorphous.

3.2 *Descriptions of Terms Specific to This Standard:*

3.2.1 *coefficient of curvature*, Cc—the ratio $(D_{30})^2/(D_{10} \times D_{60})$, where D_{60}, D_{30}, and D_{10} are the particle diameters corresponding to 60, 30, and 10 % finer on the cumulative particle-size distribution curve, respectively.

3.2.2 *coefficient of uniformity*, Cu—the ratio D_{60}/D_{10}, where D_{60} and D_{10} are the particle diameters corresponding to 60 and 10 % finer on the cumulative particle-size distribution curve, respectively.

4. Summary of Test Method

4.1 As illustrated in Table 1, this classification system identifies three major soil divisions: coarse-grained soils, fine-grained soils, and highly organic soils. These three divisions are further subdivided into a total of 15 basic soil groups.

4.2 Based on the results of visual observations and prescribed laboratory tests, a soil is catalogued according to the basic soil groups, assigned a group symbol(s) and name, and thereby classified. The flow charts, Fig. 1 for fine-grained soils, and Fig. 2 for coarse-grained soils, can be used to assign the appropriate group symbol(s) and name.

5. Significance and Use

5.1 This test method classifies soils from any geographic location into categories representing the results of prescribed laboratory tests to determine the particle-size characteristics, the liquid limit, and the plasticity index.

5.2 The assigning of a group name and symbol(s) along with the descriptive information required in Practice D 2488 can be used to describe a soil to aid in the evaluation of its significant properties for engineering use.

5.3 The various groupings of this classification system have been devised to correlate in a general way with the engineering behavior of soils. This test method provides a useful first step in any field or laboratory investigation for geotechnical engineering purposes.

5.4 This test method may also be used as an aid in training personnel in the use of Practice D 2488.

5.5 This test method may be used in combination with Practice D 4083 when working with frozen soils.

6. Apparatus

6.1 In addition to the apparatus that may be required for obtaining and preparing the samples and conducting the prescribed laboratory tests, a plasticity chart, similar to Fig. 3, and a cumulative particle-size distribution curve, similar to Fig. 4, are required.

NOTE 5—The "U" line shown on Fig. 3 has been empirically determined to be the approximate "upper limit" for natural soils. It is a good check against erroneous data, and any test results that plot above or to the left of it should be verified.

7. Sampling

7.1 Samples shall be obtained and identified in accordance with a method or methods, recommended in Recommended Practice D 420 or by other accepted procedures.

7.2 For accurate identification, the minimum amount of test sample required for this test method will depend on which of the laboratory tests need to be performed. Where only the particle-size analysis of the sample is required, specimens having the following minimum dry weights are required:

Maximum Particle Size, Sieve Opening	Minimum Specimen Size, Dry Weight
4.75 mm (No. 4)	100 g (0.25 lb)
9.5 mm (⅜ in.)	200 g (0.5 lb)
19.0 mm (¾ in.)	1.0 kg (2.2 lb)
38.1 mm (1½ in.)	8.0 kg (18 lb)
75.0 mm (3 in.)	60.0 kg (132 lb)

Whenever possible, the field samples should have weights two to four times larger than shown.

7.3 When the liquid and plastic limit tests must also be performed, additional material will be required sufficient to provide 150 g to 200 g of soil finer than the No. 40 (425-µm) sieve.

7.4 If the field sample or test specimen is smaller than the minimum recommended amount, the report shall include an appropriate remark.

TABLE 1 Soil Classification Chart

Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests[A]				Soil Classification	
				Group Symbol	Group Name[B]
Coarse-Grained Soils More than 50 % retained on No. 200 sieve	Gravels More than 50 % of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	Clean Gravels Less than 5 % fines[C]	$Cu \geq 4$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3$[E]	GW	Well-graded gravel[F]
			$Cu < 4$ and/or $1 > Cc > 3$[E]	GP	Poorly graded gravel[F]
		Gravels with Fines More than 12 % fines[C]	Fines classify as ML or MH	GM	Silty gravel[F,G,H]
			Fines classify as CL or CH	GC	Clayey gravel[F,G,H]
	Sands 50 % or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	Clean Sands Less than 5 % fines[D]	$Cu \geq 6$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3$[E]	SW	Well-graded sand
			$Cu < 6$ and/or $1 > Cc > 3$[E]	SP	Poorly graded sand[I]
		Sands with Fines More than 12 % fines[D]	Fines classify as ML or MH	SM	Silty sand[G,H,I]
			Fines classify as CL or CH	SC	Clayey sand[G,H,I]
Fine-Grained Soils 50 % or more passes the No. 200 sieve	Silts and Clays Liquid limit less than 50	Inorganic	PI > 7 and plots on or above "A" line[J]	CL	Lean clay[K,L,M]
			PI < 4 or plots below "A" line[J]	ML	Silt[K,L,M]
		organic	$\frac{\text{Liquid limit – oven dried}}{\text{Liquid limit – not dried}} < 0.75$	OL	Organic clay[K,L,M,N] / Organic silt[K,L,M,O]
	Silts and Clays Liquid limit 50 or more	Inorganic	PI plots on or above "A" line	CH	Fat clay[K,L,M]
			PI plots below "A" line	MH	Elastic silt[K,L,M]
		organic	$\frac{\text{Liquid limit – oven dried}}{\text{Liquid limit – not dried}} < 0.75$	OH	Organic clay[K,L,M,P] / Organic silt[K,L,M,Q]
Highly organic soils		Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor		PT	Peat

[A] Based on the material passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

[B] If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.

[C] Gravels with 5 to 12 % fines require dual symbols:
GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt
GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay
GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt
GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay

[D] Sands with 5 to 12 % fines require dual symbols:
SW-SM well-graded sand with silt
SW-SC well-graded sand with clay
SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt
SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay

[E] $Cu = D_{60}/D_{10}$ $\quad Cc = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$

[F] If soil contains ≥ 15 % sand, add "with sand" to group name.

[G] If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

[H] If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.

[I] If soil contains ≥ 15 % gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.

[J] If Atterberg limits plot in hatched area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

[K] If soil contains 15 to 29 % plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant.

[L] If soil contains ≥ 30 % plus No. 200, predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.

[M] If soil contains ≥ 30 % plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.

[N] PI ≥ 4 and plots on or above "A" line.

[O] PI < 4 or plots below "A" line.

[P] PI plots on or above "A" line.

[Q] PI plots below "A" line.

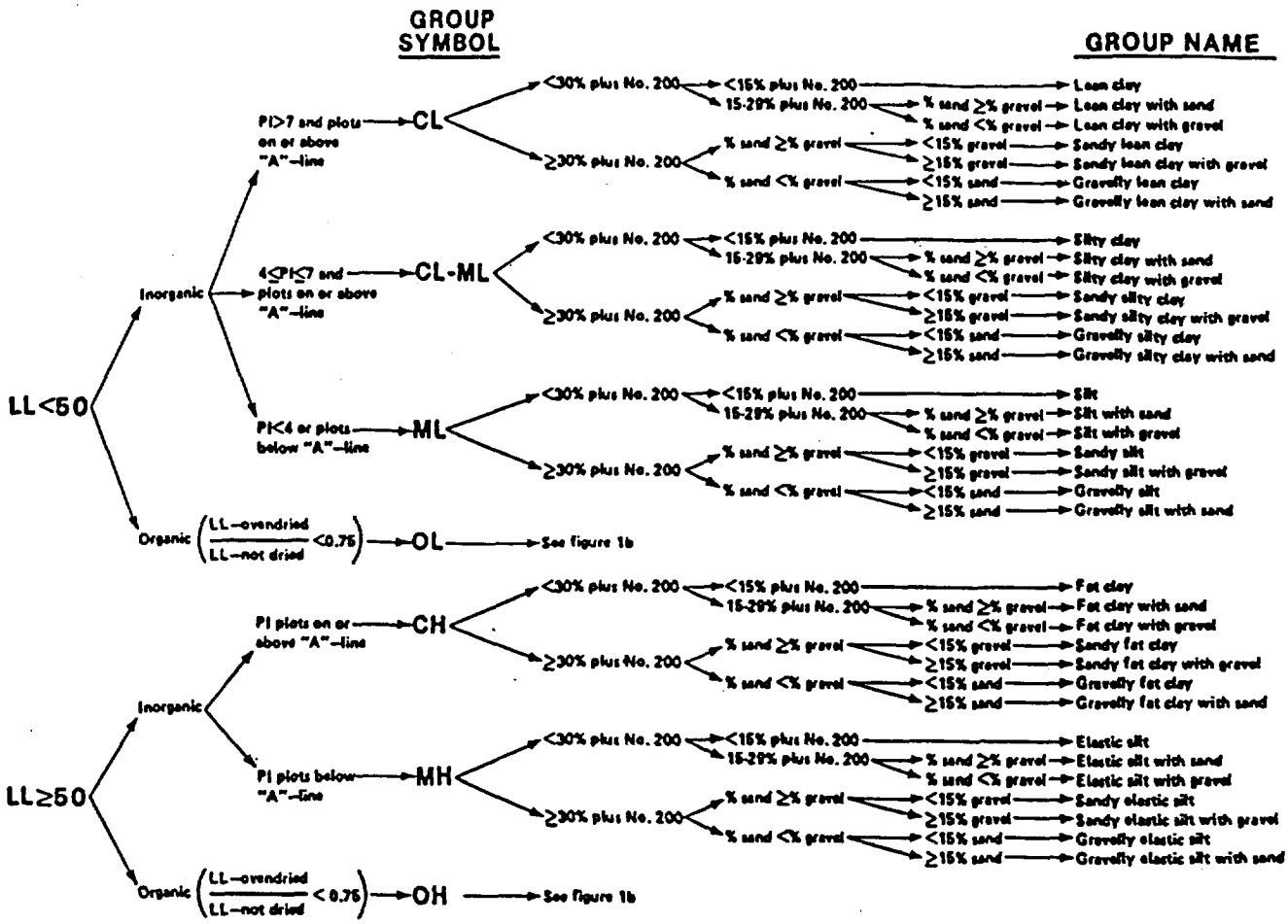


FIG. 1a Flow Chart for Classifying Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or More Passes No. 200 Sieve)

8. Classification of Peat

8.1 A sample composed primarily of vegetable tissue in various stages of decomposition and has a fibrous to amorphous texture, a dark-brown to black color, and an organic odor should be designated as a highly organic soil and shall be classified as peat, PT, and not subjected to the classification procedures described hereafter.

8.2 If desired, classification of type of peat can be performed in accordance with Classification D 4427.

9. Preparation for Classification

9.1 Before a soil can be classified according to this test method, generally the particle-size distribution of the minus 3-in. (75-mm) material and the plasticity characteristics of the minus No. 40 (425-μm) sieve material must be determined. See 9.8 for the specific required tests.

9.2 The preparation of the soil specimen(s) and the testing for particle-size distribution and liquid limit and plasticity index shall be in accordance with accepted standard procedures. Two procedures for preparation of the soil specimens for testing for soil classification purposes are given in Appendixes X3 and X4. Appendix X3 describes the wet preparation method and is the preferred method for cohesive soils that have never dried out and for organic soils.

9.3 When reporting soil classifications determined by this test method, the preparation and test procedures used shall be reported or referenced.

9.4 Although the test procedure used in determining the particle-size distribution or other considerations may require a hydrometer analysis of the material, a hydrometer analysis is not necessary for soil classification.

9.5 The percentage (by dry weight) of any plus 3-in. (75-mm) material must be determined and reported as auxiliary information.

9.6 The maximum particle size shall be determined (measured or estimated) and reported as auxiliary information.

9.7 When the cumulative particle-size distribution is required, a set of sieves shall be used which include the following sizes (with the largest size commensurate with the maximum particle size) with other sieve sizes as needed or required to define the particle-size distribution:

3-in. (75-mm)
¾-in.(19.0-mm)
No. 4 (4.75-mm)
No. 10 (2.00-mm)
No. 40 (425-μm)
No. 200 (75-μm)

9.8 The tests required to be performed in preparation for classification are as follows:

9.8.1 For soils estimated to contain less than 5 % fines, a plot of the cumulative particle-size distribution curve of the fraction coarser than the No. 200 (75-μm) sieve is required. The cumulative particle-size distribution curve may be plotted on a graph similar to that shown in Fig. 4.

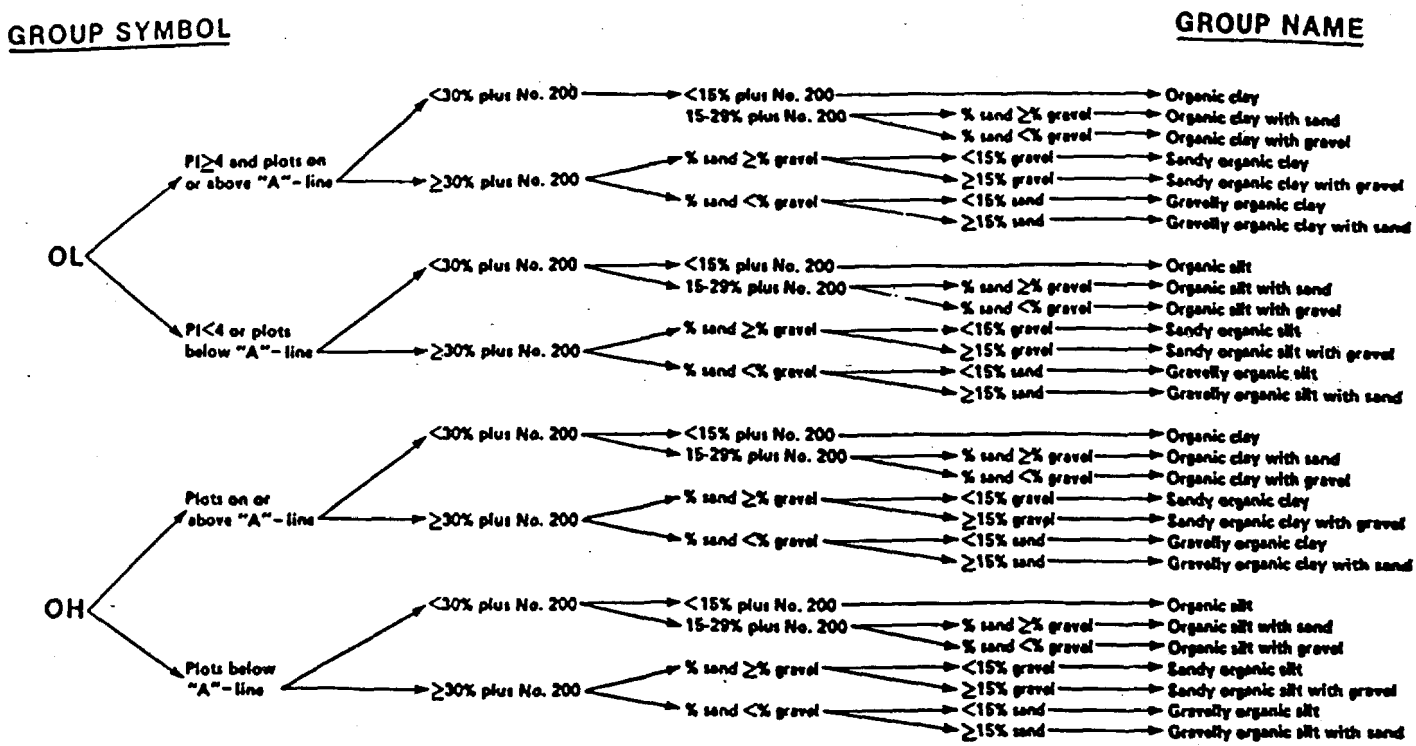


FIG. 1b Flow Chart for Classifying Organic Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or More Passes No. 200 Sieve)

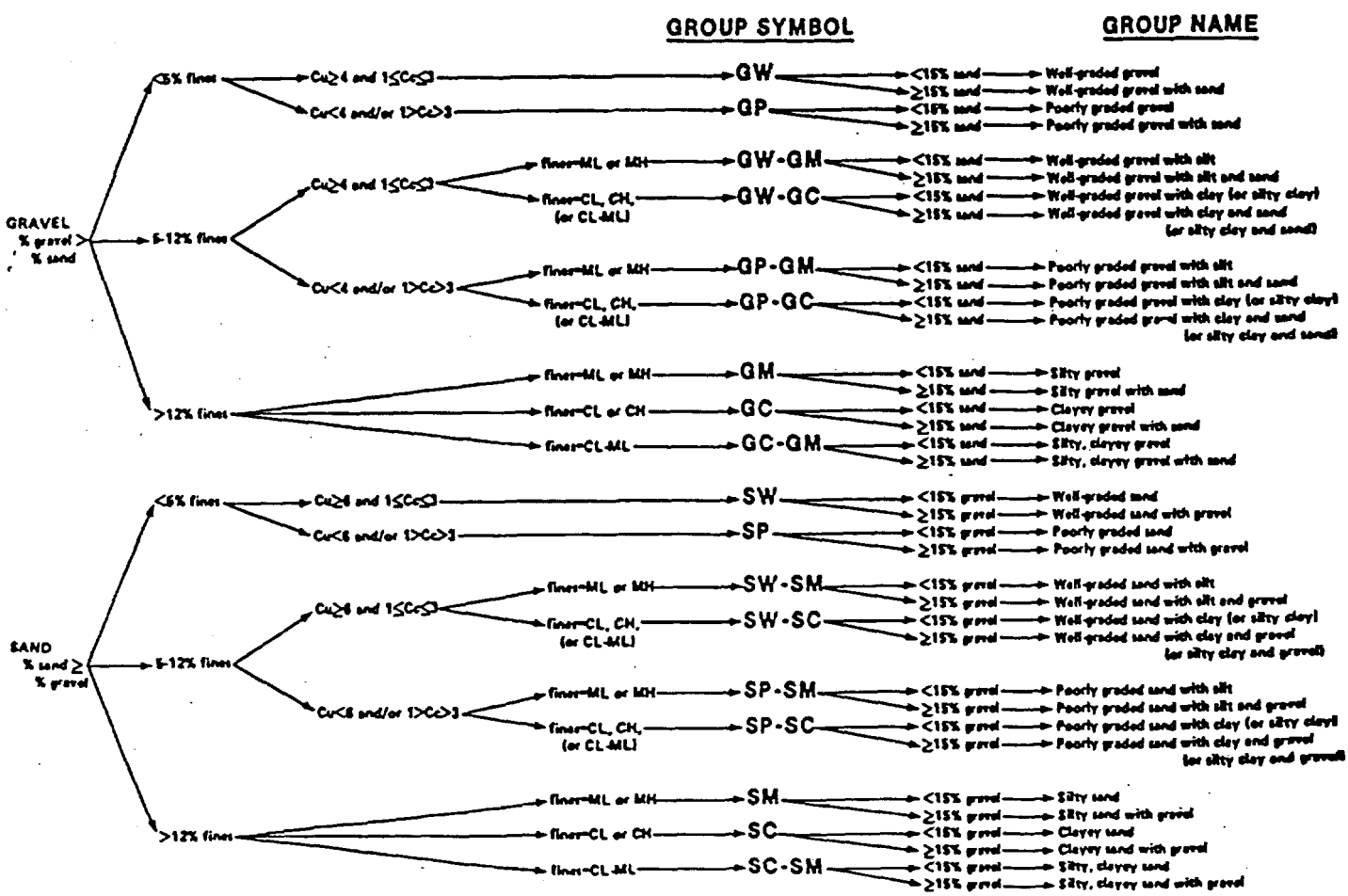


FIG. 2 Flow Chart for Classifying Coarse-Grained Soils (More Than 50 % Retained on No. 200 Sieve)

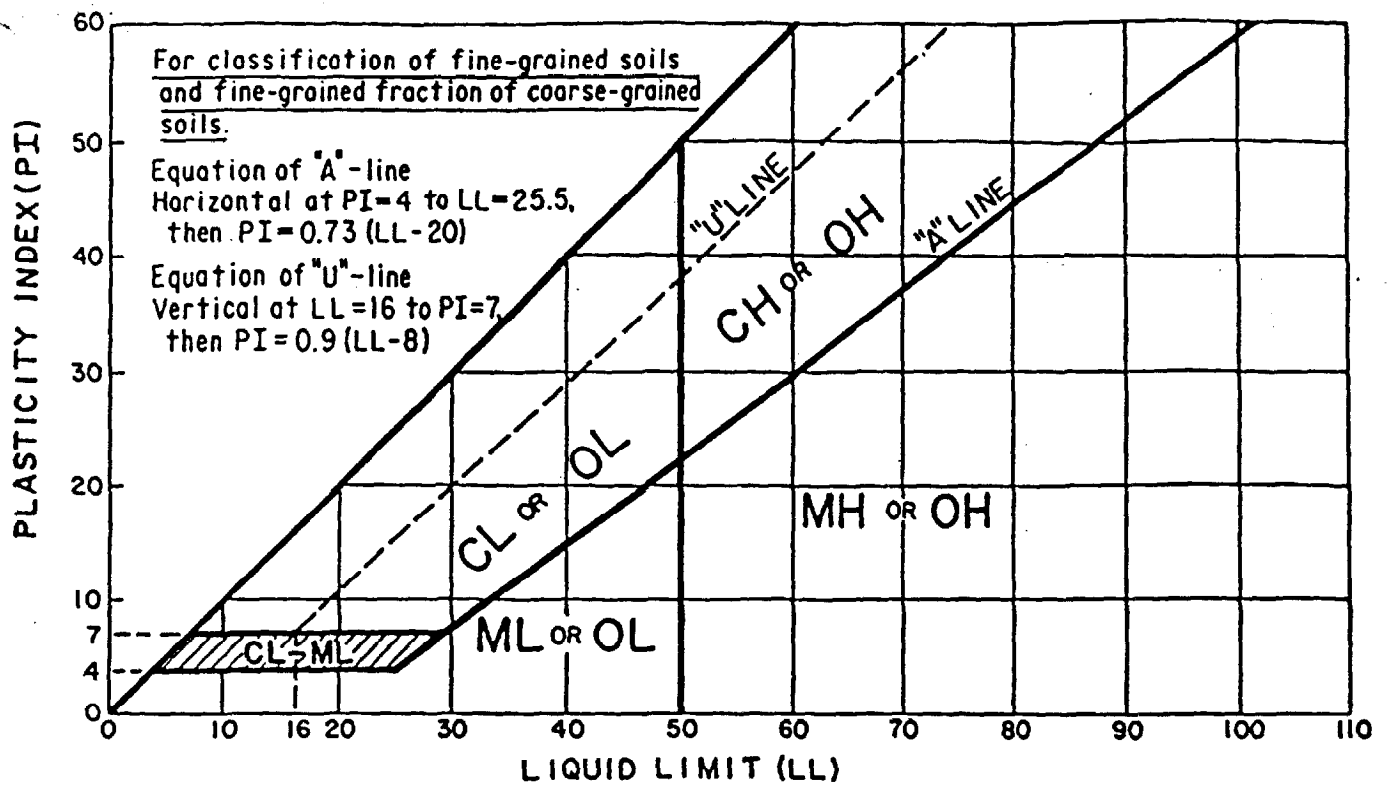


FIG. 3 Plasticity Chart

.2 For soils estimated to contain 5 to 15 % fines, a ulative particle-size distribution curve, as described in 9.8.1, is required, and the liquid limit and plasticity index are required.

9.8.2.1 If sufficient material is not available to determine the liquid limit and plasticity index, the fines should be estimated to be either silty or clayey using the procedures described in Practice D 2488 and so noted in the report.

9.8.3 For soils estimated to contain 15 % or more fines, a determination of the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel is required, and the liquid limit and plasticity index are required. For soils estimated to contain 90 % fines or more, the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel may be estimated using the procedures described in Practice D 2488 and so noted in the report.

10. Preliminary Classification Procedure

10.1 Class the soil as fine-grained if 50 % or more by dry weight of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve and follow Section 11.

10.2 Class the soil as coarse-grained if more than 50 % by dry weight of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve and follow Section 12.

11. Procedure for Classification of Fine-Grained Soils (50 % or more by dry weight passing the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve)

The soil is an inorganic clay if the position of the .ity index versus liquid limit plot, Fig. 3, falls on or above the "A" line, the plasticity index is greater than 4, and the presence of organic matter does not influence the liquid limit as determined in 11.3.2.

NOTE 6—The plasticity index and liquid limit are determined on the minus No. 40 (425 µm) sieve material.

11.1.1 Classify the soil as a *lean clay*, CL, if the liquid limit is less than 50. See area identified as CL on Fig. 3.

11.1.2 Classify the soil as a *fat clay*, CH, if the liquid limit is 50 or greater. See area identified as CH on Fig. 3.

NOTE 7—In cases where the liquid limit exceeds 110 or the plasticity index exceeds 60, the plasticity chart may be expanded by maintaining the same scale on both axes and extending the "A" line at the indicated slope.

11.1.3 Classify the soil as a *silty clay*, CL-ML, if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot falls on or above the "A" line and the plasticity index is in the range of 4 to 7. See area identified as CL-ML on Fig. 3.

11.2 The soil is an inorganic silt if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot, Fig. 3, falls below the "A" line or the plasticity index is less than 4, and presence of organic matter does not influence the liquid limit as determined in 11.3.2.

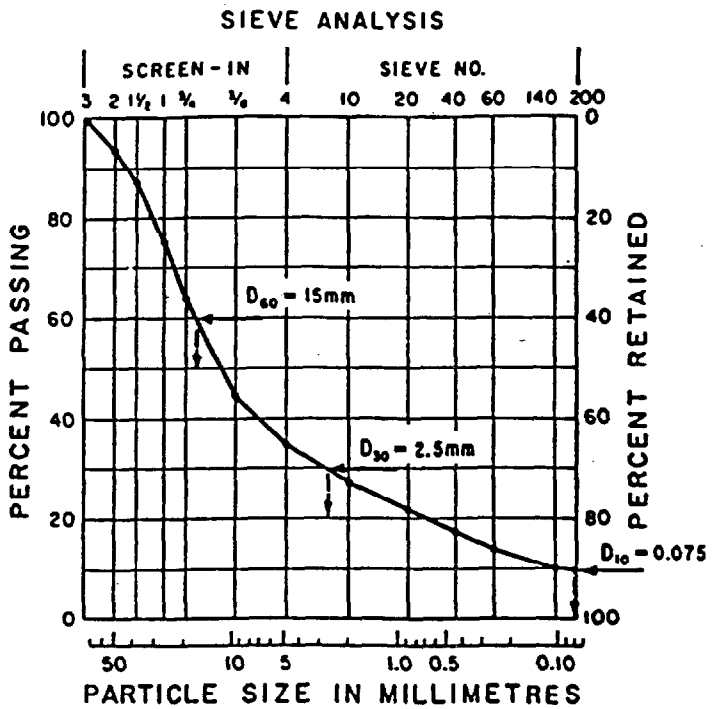
11.2.1 Classify the soil as a *silt*, ML, if the liquid limit is less than 50. See area identified as ML on Fig. 3.

11.2.2 Classify the soil as an *elastic silt*, MH, if the liquid limit is 50 or greater. See area identified as MH on Fig. 3.

11.3 The soil is an organic silt or clay if organic matter is present in sufficient amounts to influence the liquid limit as determined in 11.3.2.

11.3.1 If the soil has a dark color and an organic odor when moist and warm, a second liquid limit test shall be performed on a test specimen which has been oven dried at 110 ± 5°C to a constant weight, typically over night.

11.3.2 The soil is an organic silt or organic clay if the liquid limit after oven drying is less than 75 % of the liquid



$$Cu = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} = \frac{15}{0.075} = 200 \qquad Cc = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}} = \frac{(2.5)^2}{0.075 \times 15} = 5.6$$

FIG. 4 Cumulative Particle-Size Plot

limit of the original specimen determined before oven drying (see Procedure B of Practice D 2217).

11.3.3 Classify the soil as an *organic silt* or *organic clay*, OL, if the liquid limit (not oven dried) is less than 50 %. Classify the soil as an *organic silt*, OL, if the plasticity index is less than 4, or the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot falls below the "A" line. Classify the soil as an *organic clay*, OL, if the plasticity index is 4 or greater and the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot falls on or above the "A" line. See area identified as OL (or CL-ML) on Fig. 3.

11.3.4 Classify the soil as an *organic clay* or *organic silt*, OH, if the liquid limit (not oven dried) is 50 or greater. Classify the soil as an *organic silt*, OH, if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot falls below the "A" line. Classify the soil as an *organic clay*, OH, if the position of the plasticity index versus liquid-limit plot falls on or above the "A" line. See area identified as OH on Fig. 3.

11.4 If less than 30 % but 15 % or more of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve, the words "with sand" or "with gravel" (whichever is predominant) shall be added to the group name. For example, lean clay with sand, CL; silt with gravel, ML. If the percent of sand is equal to the percent of gravel, use "with sand."

11.5 If 30 % or more of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve, the words "sandy" or "gravelly" shall be added to the group name. Add the word "sandy" if 30 % or more of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve and the coarse-grained portion is predominantly sand. Add the word "gravelly" if 30 % or more of the test specimen is retained on the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve and the coarse-grained portion is predominantly gravel. For example, sandy lean clay, CL; gravelly fat clay, CH; sandy silt, ML. If the percent of sand is equal to the percent of gravel, use "sandy."

12. Procedure for Classification of Coarse-Grained Soils (more than 50 % retained on the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve)

12.1 Class the soil as gravel if more than 50 % of the coarse fraction [plus No. 200 (75-µm) sieve] is retained on the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

12.2 Class the soil as sand if 50 % or more of the coarse fraction [plus No. 200 (75-µm) sieve] passes the No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

12.3 If 12 % or less of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve, plot the cumulative particle-size distribution, Fig. 4, and compute the coefficient of uniformity, Cu, and coefficient of curvature, Cc, as given in Eqs 1 and 2.

$$Cu = D_{60}/D_{10} \quad (1)$$

$$Cc = (D_{30})^2/(D_{10} \times D_{60}) \quad (2)$$

where:

D_{10}, D_{30}, and D_{60} = the particle-size diameters corresponding to 10, 30, and 60 %, respectively, passing on the cumulative particle-size distribution curve, Fig. 4.

NOTE 8—It may be necessary to extrapolate the curve to obtain the D_{10} diameter.

12.3.1 If less than 5 % of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve, classify the soil as a *well-graded gravel*, GW, or *well-graded sand*, SW, if Cu is greater than 4.0 for gravel or greater than 6.0 for sand, and Cc is at least 1.0 but not more than 3.0.

12.3.2 If less than 5 % of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve, classify the soil as *poorly graded gravel*,

GP, or *poorly graded sand*, SP, if either the Cu or the Cc criteria for well-graded soils are not satisfied.

12.4 If more than 12 % of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve, the soil shall be considered a coarse-grained soil with fines. The fines are determined to be either clayey or silty based on the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot on Fig. 3. (See 9.8.2.1 if insufficient material available for testing). (See NOTE 6)

12.4.1 Classify the soil as a *clayey gravel*, GC, or *clayey sand*, SC, if the fines are clayey, that is, the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot, Fig. 3, falls on or above the "A" line and the plasticity index is greater than 7.

12.4.2 Classify the soil as a *silty gravel*, GM, or *silty sand*, SM, if the fines are silty, that is, the position of the plasticity index versus liquid limit plot, Fig. 3, falls below the "A" line or the plasticity index is less than 4.

12.4.3 If the fines plot as a silty clay, CL-ML, classify the soil as a *silty, clayey gravel*, GC-GM, if it is a gravel or a *silty, clayey sand*, SC-SM, if it is a sand.

12.5 If 5 to 12 % of the test specimen passes the No. 200 (75-µm) sieve, give the soil a dual classification using two group symbols.

12.5.1 The first group symbol shall correspond to that for a gravel or sand having less than 5 % fines (GW, GP, SW, SP), and the second symbol shall correspond to a gravel or sand having more than 12 % fines (GC, GM, SC, SM).

12.5.2 The group name shall correspond to the first group symbol plus "with clay" or "with silt" to indicate the plasticity characteristics of the fines. For example, well-graded gravel with clay, GW-GC; poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SM (See 9.8.2.1 if insufficient material available for testing).

NOTE 9—If the fines plot as a *silty clay*, CL-ML, the second group symbol should be either GC or SC. For example, a poorly graded sand with 10 % fines, a liquid limit of 20, and a plasticity index of 6 would be classified as a poorly graded sand with silty clay, SP-SC.

12.6 If the specimen is predominantly sand or gravel but contains 15 % or more of the other coarse-grained constituent, the words "with gravel" or "with sand" shall be added to the group name. For example, poorly graded gravel with sand, clayey sand with gravel.

12.7 If the field sample contained any cobbles or boulders or both, the words "with cobbles," or "with cobbles and boulders" shall be added to the group name. For example, silty gravel with cobbles, GM.

13. Report

13.1 The report should include the group name, group symbol, and the results of the laboratory tests. The particle-size distribution shall be given in terms of percent of gravel, sand, and fines. The plot of the cumulative particle-size distribution curve shall be reported if used in classifying the soil. Report appropriate descriptive information according to the procedures in Practice D 2488. A local or commercial name or geologic interpretation for the material may be added at the end of the descriptive information if identified as such. The test procedures used shall be referenced.

NOTE 10—*Example: Clayey Gravel with Sand and Cobbles* (GC)—46 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded gravel; 30 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded sand; 24 % clayey fines, LL = 38, PI = 19; weak reaction with HCl; original field sample had 4 % hard, subrounded cobbles; maximum dimension 150 mm.

In-Place Conditions—firm, homogeneous, dry, brown.

Geologic Interpretation—alluvial fan.

NOTE 11—Other examples of soil descriptions are given in Appendix X1.

14. Precision and Bias

14.1 This test method provides qualitative data only; therefore, a precision and bias statement is nonapplicable.

15. Keywords

15.1 Atterberg limits; classification; clay; gradation; gravel; laboratory classification; organic soils; sand; silt; soil classification; soil tests

APPENDIXES

(Nonmandatory Information)

X1. EXAMPLES OF DESCRIPTIONS USING SOIL CLASSIFICATION

X1.1 The following examples show how the information required in 13.1 can be reported. The appropriate descriptive information from Practice D 2488 is included for illustrative purposes. The additional descriptive terms that would accompany the soil classification should be based on the intended use of the classification and the individual circumstances.

X1.1.1 *Well-Graded Gravel with Sand (GW)*—73 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular gravel; 23 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular sand; 4 % fines; Cc = 2.7, Cu = 12.4.

X1.1.2 *Silty Sand with Gravel (SM)*—61 % predominantly fine sand; 23 % silty fines, LL = 33, PI = 6; 16 % fine, hard, subrounded gravel; no reaction with HCl; (field sample smaller than recommended). *In-Place Conditions*—Firm, stratified and contains lenses of silt 1 to 2 in. thick, moist, brown to gray; in-place density = 106 lb/ft^3 and in-place moisture = 9 %.

X1.1.3 *Organic Clay (OL)*—100 % fines, LL (not dried) = 32, LL (oven dried) = 21, PI (not dried) = 10; wet, dark brown, organic odor, weak reaction with HCl.

X1.1.4 *Silty Sand with Organic Fines (SM)*—74 % fine to coarse, hard, subangular reddish sand; 26 % organic and silty dark-brown fines, LL (not dried) = 37, LL (oven dried) = 26, PI (not dried) = 6, wet, weak reaction with HCl.

X1.1.5 *Poorly Graded Gravel with Silt, Sand, Cobbles and Boulders (GP-GM)*—78 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded to subangular gravel; 16 % fine to coarse, hard, subrounded

to subangular sand; 6 % silty (estimated) fines; moist, brown; no reaction with HCl; original field sample had 7 % hard, subrounded cobbles and 2 % hard, subrounded boulders with a maximum dimension of 18 in.

X2. USING SOIL CLASSIFICATION AS A DESCRIPTIVE SYSTEM FOR SHALE, CLAYSTONE, SHELLS, SLAG, CRUSHED ROCK, ETC.

X2.1 The group names and symbols used in this test method may be used as a descriptive system applied to materials that exist in situ as shale, claystone, sandstone, siltstone, mudstone, etc., but convert to soils after field or laboratory processing (crushing, slaking, etc.).

X2.2 Materials such as shells, crushed rock, slag, etc., should be identified as such. However, the procedures used in this method for describing the particle size and plasticity characteristics may be used in the description of the material. If desired, a classification in accordance with this test method may be assigned to aid in describing the material.

X2.3 If a classification is used, the group symbol(s) and group names should be placed in quotation marks or noted with some type of distinguishing symbol. See examples.

X2.4 Examples of how soil classifications could be incorporated into a description system for materials that are not naturally occurring soils are as follows:

X2.4.1 *Shale Chunks*—Retrieved as 2 to 4-in. pieces of shale from power auger hole, dry, brown, no reaction with HCl. After laboratory processing by slaking in water for 24 h, material classified as "Sandy Lean Clay (CL)"—61 % clayey fines, LL = 37, PI = 16; 33 % fine to medium sand; 6 % gravel-size pieces of shale.

X2.4.2 *Crushed Sandstone*—Product of commercial crushing operation; "Poorly Graded Sand with Silt (SP-SM)"—91 % fine to medium sand; 9 % silty (estimated) fines; dry, reddish-brown, strong reaction with HCl.

X2.4.3 *Broken Shells*—62 % gravel-size broken shells; 31 % sand and sand-size shell pieces; 7 % fines; would be classified as "Poorly Graded Gravel with Sand (GP)".

X2.4.4 *Crushed Rock*—Processed gravel and cobbles from Pit No. 7; "Poorly Graded Gravel (GP)"—89 % fine, hard, angular gravel-size particles; 11 % coarse, hard, angular sand-size particles, dry, tan; no reaction with HCl; Cc = 2.4, Cu = 0.9.

X3. PREPARATION AND TESTING FOR CLASSIFICATION PURPOSES BY THE WET METHOD

X3.1 This appendix describes the steps in preparing a soil sample for testing for purposes of soil classification using a wet-preparation procedure.

X3.2 Samples prepared in accordance with this procedure should contain as much of their natural water content as possible and every effort should be made during obtaining, preparing, and transportating the samples to maintain the natural moisture.

X3.3 The procedures to be followed in this test method assume that the field sample contains fines, sand, gravel, and plus 3-in. (75-mm) particles and the cumulative particle-size distribution plus the liquid limit and plasticity index values are required (see 9.8). Some of the following steps may be omitted when they are not applicable to the soil being tested.

X3.4 If the soil contains plus No. 200 (75-μm) particles that would degrade during dry sieving, use a test procedure for determining the particle-size characteristics that prevents this degradation.

X3.5 Since this classification system is limited to the portion of a sample passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve, the plus 3-in. (75-mm) material shall be removed prior to the determination of the particle-size characteristics and the liquid limit and plasticity index.

X3.6 The portion of the field sample finer than the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve shall be obtained as follows:

X3.6.1 Separate the field sample into two fractions on a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve, being careful to maintain the natural water content in the minus 3-in. (75-mm) fraction. Any particles adhering to the plus 3-in. (75-mm) particles shall be brushed or wiped off and placed in the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X3.6.2 Determine the air-dry or oven-dry weight of the fraction retained on the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve. Determine the total (wet) weight of the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X3.6.3 Thoroughly mix the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve. Determine the water content, in accordance with Method D 2216, of a representative specimen with a minimum dry weight as required in 7.2. Save the water-content specimen for determination of the particle-size analysis in accordance with X3.8.

X3.6.4 Compute the dry weight of the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve based on the water content and total (wet) weight. Compute the total dry weight of the sample and calculate the percentage of material retained on the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X3.7 Determine the liquid limit and plasticity index as follows:

X3.7.1 If the soil disaggregates readily, mix on a clean, hard surface and select a representative sample by quartering in accordance with Methods C 702.

X3.7.1.1 If the soil contains coarse-grained particles coated with and bound together by tough clayey material, take extreme care in obtaining a representative portion of the No. 40 (425-μm) fraction. Typically, a larger portion than normal has to be selected, such as the minimum weights required in 7.2.

X3.7.1.2 To obtain a representative specimen of a basically cohesive soil, it may be advantageous to pass the soil through a ¾-in. (19-mm) sieve or other convenient size so the material can be more easily mixed and then quartered or split to obtain the representative specimen.

X3.7.2 Process the representative specimen in accordance with Procedure B of Practice D 2217.

X3.7.3 Perform the liquid-limit test in accordance with Test Method D 4318, except the soil shall not be air dried prior to the test.

X3.7.4 Perform the plastic-limit test in accordance with Test Method D 4318, except the soil shall not be air dried prior to the test, and calculate the plasticity index.

X3.8 Determine the particle-size distribution as follows:

X3.8.1 If the water content of the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve was required (X3.6.3), use the water-content specimen for determining the particle-size distribution. Otherwise, select a representative specimen in accordance with Practice C 702 with a minimum dry weight as required in 7.2.

X3.8.2 If the cumulative particle-size distribution including a hydrometer analysis is required, determine the particle-size distribution in accordance with Method D 422. See 9.7 for the set of required sieves.

X3.8.3 If the cumulative particle-size distribution without a hydrometer analysis is required, determine the particle-size distribution in accordance with Method C 136. See 9.7 for the set of required sieves. The specimen should be soaked until all clayey aggregations have softened and then washed in accordance with Test Method C 117 prior to performing the particle-size distribution.

X3.8.4 If the cumulative particle-size distribution is not required, determine the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel in the specimen in accordance with Test Method C 117, being sure to soak the specimen long enough to soften all clayey aggregations, followed by Method C 136 using a nest of sieves which shall include a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve.

X3.8.5 Calculate the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel in the minus 3-in. (75-mm) fraction for classification purposes.

X4. AIR-DRIED METHOD OF PREPARATION OF SOILS FOR TESTING FOR CLASSIFICATION PURPOSES

X4.1 This appendix describes the steps in preparing a soil sample for testing for purposes of soil classification when air-drying the soil before testing is specified or desired or when the natural moisture content is near that of an air-dried state.

X4.2 If the soil contains organic matter or mineral colloids that are irreversibly affected by air drying, the wet-preparation method as described in Appendix X3 should be used.

X4.3 Since this classification system is limited to the portion of a sample passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve, the plus 3-in. (75-mm) material shall be removed prior to the determination of the particle-size characteristics and the liquid limit and plasticity index.

X4.4 The portion of the field sample finer than the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve shall be obtained as follows:

X4.4.1 Air dry and weigh the field sample.

X4.4.2 Separate the field sample into two fractions on a 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X4.4.3 Weigh the two fractions and compute the percentage of the plus 3-in. (75-mm) material in the field sample.

X4.5 Determine the particle-size distribution and liquid limit and plasticity index as follows (see 9.8 for when these tests are required):

X4.5.1 Thoroughly mix the fraction passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

X4.5.2 If the cumulative particle-size distribution including a hydrometer analysis is required, determine the particle-size distribution in accordance with Method D 422. See 9.7 for the set of sieves that is required.

X4.5.3 If the cumulative particle-size distribution without a hydrometer analysis is required, determine the particle-size distribution in accordance with Test Method D 1140 followed by Method C 136. See 9.7 for the set of sieves that is required.

X4.5.4 If the cumulative particle-size distribution is not required, determine the percent fines, percent sand, and percent gravel in the specimen in accordance with Test Method D 1140 followed by Method C 136 using a nest of sieves which shall include a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and a No. 200 (75-μm) sieve.

X4.5.5 If required, determine the liquid limit and the plasticity index of the test specimen in accordance with Test Method D 4318.

X5. RATIONALE

X5.1 Significant revisions were made to the standard which appeared as D 2487 – 83 from the previous version of D 2487 – 69 (1975). The changes are documented in the literature.

X5.2 Changes in this version from the last include the addition of 8.2 on classification of peat, the addition of 4.5 on classification of frozen soils, the addition of NOTE 6 for clarification of materials used to determine the plasticity index and liquid limit, and the addition of Appendix X5 on Rationale.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

SOP F102
Soil and Rock Sample Acquisition

SOIL AND ROCK SAMPLE ACQUISITION
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Rock Cores
- 5.2 Subsurface Soil Samples
  - 5.2.1 Split-Barrel (Split-Spoon) Samples
  - 5.2.2 Thin-Wall (Shelby Tube) Sampling
  - 5.2.3 Bucket (Hand) Auger Sampling
- 5.3 Surface Soil Samples

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

SOIL AND ROCK SAMPLE ACQUISITION

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this procedure is to describe the handling of rock cores and subsurface soil samples collected during drilling operations. Surface soil sampling also is described.

2.0 SCOPE

The methods described in this SOP are applicable for the recovery of subsurface soil and rock samples acquired by coring operations or soil sampling techniques such as split-barrel sampling and thin-walled tube sampling. Procedures for the collection of surface soil samples also are discussed. This SOP does not discuss drilling techniques or well installation procedures. ASTM procedures for "Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils," "Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils," and "Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation" have been included as Attachments A through C, respectively.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Thin-Walled Tube Sampler - A thin-walled metal tube (also called Shelby tube) used to recover relatively undisturbed soil samples. These tubes are available in various sizes, ranging from 2 to 5 inches outer diameter (O.D.) and 18 to 54 inches length. A stationary piston device is included in the sampler to reduce sample disturbance and increase recovery.

Split-Barrel Sampler - A steel tube, split in half lengthwise, with the halves held together by threaded collars at either end of the tube. Also called a split-spoon sampler, this device can be driven into unconsolidated materials using a drive weight mounted on the drilling string. A standard split-spoon sampler (used for performing Standard Penetration Tests) is two inches O.D. and 1-3/8-inches inner diameter (I.D.). This standard spoon is available in two common lengths providing either 20-inch or 26-inch internal longitudinal clearance for obtaining 18-inch or 24-inch long samples, respectively.

Grab Sample - An individual sample collected from a single location at a specific time or period of time generally not exceeding 15 minutes. Grab samples are associated with surface water,

groundwater, wastewater, waste, contaminated surfaces, soil, and sediment sampling. Grab samples are typically used to characterize the media at a particular instant in time.

Composite Samples - A sample collected over time that typically consists of a series of discrete samples which are combined or "composited". Two types of composite samples are listed below:

- Areal Composite: A sample collected from individual grab samples collected on an areal or cross-sectional basis. Areal composites shall be made up of equal volumes of grab samples. Each grab sample shall be collected in an identical manner. Examples include sediment composites from quarter-point sampling of streams and soil samples from grid points.

- Vertical Composite: A sample collected from individual grab samples collected from a vertical cross section. Vertical composites shall be made up of equal volumes of grab samples. Each grab sample shall be collected in an identical manner. Examples include vertical profiles of soil/sediment columns, lakes and estuaries.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - The Project Manager is responsible for ensuring that, where applicable, project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures, or that other approved procedures are developed. Furthermore, the Project Manager is responsible for development of documentation of procedures which deviate from those presented herein.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for selecting and detailing the specific sampling techniques and equipment to be used, and documenting these in the Sampling and Analysis Plan. It is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to ensure that these procedures are implemented in the field and to ensure that personnel performing sampling activities have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures.

Drilling Inspector - It is the responsibility of the drilling inspector to follow these procedures, or to follow documented, project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team Leader and/or the Project Manager. The Drilling Inspector is responsible for the proper acquisition of rock cores and subsurface soil samples.

Sampling Personnel - It is the responsibility of the field sampling personnel to follow these procedures, or to follow documented, project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team Leader and/or the Project Manager. The sampling personnel are responsible for the proper acquisition of samples.

5.0 PROCEDURES

Subsurface soil and rock samples are used to characterize the three-dimensional subsurface stratigraphy. This characterization can indicate the potential for migration of contaminants from various sites. In addition, definition of the actual migration of contaminants can be obtained through chemical analysis of subsurface soil samples. Where the remedial activities may include in-situ treatment, or the excavation and removal of the contaminated soil, the depth and areal extent of contamination must be known as accurately as possible.

Surface soil samples serve to characterize the extent of surface contamination at various sites. These samples may be collected during initial site screening to determine gross contamination levels and levels of personal protection required as part of more intensive field sampling activities, to gather more detailed site data during design, or to determine the need for, or success of, cleanup actions.

Site construction activities may require that the engineering and physical properties of soil and rock be determined. Soil types, bearing strength, compressibility, permeability, plasticity, and moisture content are some of the geotechnical characteristics that may be determined by laboratory tests of soil samples. Rock quality, strength, stratigraphy, structure, etc. often are needed to design and construct deep foundations or remedial components.

5.1 Rock Cores

Once rock coring has been completed and the core recovered, the rock core must be carefully removed from the barrel, placed in a core tray (previously labeled "top" and "bottom" to avoid confusion), classified, and measured for percentage of recovery, as well as the rock quality designation (RQD) (see SOP F101). If split-barrels are used, the core may be measured and classified in the split barrel after opening and then transferred to a core box.

Each core shall be described and classified on a Field Test Boring Record using a uniform system as presented in SOP F101. If moisture content will be determined or if it is desirable to prevent drying (e.g., to prevent shrinkage of hydrated formations) or oxidation of the core, the core must be wrapped in plastic sleeves immediately after logging. Each plastic sleeve shall be labeled with indelible ink. The boring number, run number and the footage represented in each sleeve shall be included, as well as the top and bottom of the core run.

After sampling, rock cores must be placed in the sequence of recovery in wooden or plastic core boxes provided by the drilling contractor. Rock cores from two different borings shall not be placed in the same core box. The core boxes should be constructed to accommodate at least 20 linear feet of core in rows of approximately five feet each and should be constructed with hinged tops secured with screws, and a latch (usually a hook and eye) to keep the top securely fastened. Wood partitions shall be placed at the end of each core run and between rows. The depth from the surface of the boring to the top and bottom of the drill run and the run number shall be marked on the wooden partitions with indelible ink. The order of placing cores shall be the same in all core boxes. The top of each core obtained should be clearly and permanently marked on each box. The width of each row must be compatible with the core diameter to prevent lateral movement of the core in the box. Similarly, any empty space in a row shall be filled with an appropriate filler material or spacers to prevent longitudinal movement of the core in the box.

The inside and outside of the core-box lid shall be marked by indelible ink to show all pertinent data pertaining to the box's contents. At a minimum, the following information must be included:

- Project name
- Date
- CTO number
- Boring number
- Footage (depths)
- Run number(s)
- Recovery
- Rock Quality Designation (RQD)
- Box number (x of x)

It is also useful to draw a large diagram of the core in the box, on the inside of the box top. This

provides more room for elevations, run numbers, recoveries, comments, etc., than could be entered on the upper edges of partitions or spaces in the core box.

For easy retrieval when core boxes are stacked, the sides and ends of the box should also be labeled and include CTO number, boring number, top and bottom depths of core and box number.

Due to the weight of the core, a filled core box should always be handled by two people. Core boxes stored on site should be protected from the weather. The core boxes should be removed from the site in a careful manner as soon as possible. Exposure to extreme heat or cold should be avoided whenever possible.

5.2 Subsurface Soil Samples

This section discusses three methods for collecting subsurface soil samples: (1) split-spoon sampling; (2) shelby tube sampling; and, (3) bucket auger sampling. All three methods yield samples suitable for laboratory analysis. Copies of the ASTM procedures for split-spoon sampling and shelby-tube sampling are provided in Attachments A and B, respectively.

5.2.1 Split-Barrel (Split-Spoon) Sampling

The following procedures are to be used for split-spoon, geotechnical soil sampling:

1. Clean out the borehole to the desired sampling depth using equipment that will ensure that the material to be sampled is not disturbed by the operation.

2. Side-discharge bits are permissible. A bottom-discharge bit should not be used. The process of jetting through the sampler and then sampling when the desired depth is reached shall not be permitted. Where casing is used, it may not be driven below the sampling elevation.

3. The two-inch O.D. split-barrel sampler should be driven with blows from a 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches in accordance with ASTM D1586-84, Standard Penetration Test.

4. Repeat this operation at intervals not longer than 5 feet in homogeneous strata, or as specified in the Sampling and Analysis Plan.

5. Record on the Field Test Boring Record or field logbook the number of blows required to effect each six inches of penetration or fraction thereof. The first six inches is considered to be a seating drive. The sum of the number of blows required for the

second and third six inches of penetration is termed the penetration resistance, N. If the sampler is driven less than 18 inches, the penetration resistance is that for the last one foot of penetration. (If less than one foot is penetrated, the logs shall state the number of blows and the fraction of one foot penetrated.) In cases where samples are driven 24 inches, the sum of second and third six-inch increments will be used to calculate the penetration resistance. (Refusal of the SPT will be noted as 50 blows over an interval equal to or less than 6 inches; the interval driven will be noted with the blow count.)

6. Bring the sampler to the surface and remove both ends and one half of the split-spoon such that the soil recovered rests in the remaining half of the barrel. Describe carefully the recovery (length), composition, structure, consistency, color, condition, etc. of the recovered soil according to SOP F101; then put into jars without ramming. Jars with samples not taken for chemical analysis should be sealed with wax, or hermetically sealed (using a teflon cap liner) to prevent evaporation of the soil moisture. Affix labels to the jar and complete Chain-of-Custody and other required sample data forms (see SOP F302). Protect samples against extreme temperature changes and breakage by placing them in appropriate cartons stored in a protected area.

7. Split-spoon samplers shall be decontaminated after each use and prior to the initial use at a site according to SOP F501.

In addition to collecting soils for geotechnical purposes, split-spoon sampling can be employed to obtain samples for environmental analytical analysis. The following procedures are to be used for split-spoon, environmental soil sampling:

1. Follow sample collection procedures 1 through 6 as outlined in Section 5.2.1.

2. After sample collection, remove the soil from the split-spoon sampler. Prior to filling laboratory containers, the soil sample should be mixed thoroughly as possible to ensure that the sample is as representative as possible of the sample interval. Soil samples for volatile organic compounds should <u>not</u> be mixed. Further, sample containers for volatile organic compounds analyses should be filled completely without head space remaining in the container to minimize volatilization.

3. Record all pertinent sampling information such as soil description, sample depth, sample number, sample location, and time of sample collection in the Field Test Boring Record or field logbook. In addition, label, tag, and number the sample bottle(s).

4. Pack the samples for shipping (see SOP F300). Attach seal to the shipping package. Make sure that Chain-of-Custody Forms and Sample Request Forms are properly filled out and enclosed or attached (see SOP F301).

5. Decontaminate the split-spoon sample as described in SOP F501. Replace disposable latex gloves between sample stations to prevent cross-contaminating samples.

For obtaining composite soil samples (see Definitions), a slightly modified approach is employed. Each individual discrete soil sample from the desired sample interval will be placed into a stainless-steel, decontaminated bowl prior to filling the laboratory sample containers. Special care should be taken to cover the bowl between samples with aluminum foil to minimize volatilization. Immediately after obtaining soils from the desired sampling interval, the sample to be analyzed for Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) should be collected. Care should be taken to obtain a representative sampling of each sample interval. The remaining soils should be thoroughly mixed. Adequate mixing can be achieved by stirring in a circular fashion and occasionally turning the soils over. Once the remaining soils have been thoroughly combined, samples for analyses other than VOCs should be placed into the appropriate sampling containers.

5.2.2 Thin-Wall (Shelby Tube) Sampling

When it is desired to take undisturbed samples of soil for physical laboratory testing, thin-walled seamless tube samplers (Shelby tubes) will be used. The following method applies:

1. Clean out the hole to the sampling elevation, being careful to minimize the chance for disturbance or contamination of the material to be sampled.

2. The use of bottom discharge bits or jetting through an open-tube sampler to clean out the hole shall not be allowed. Any side discharge bits are permitted.

3. The sampler must be of a stationary piston-type, to limit sample disturbance and aid in retaining the sample. Either the hydraulically operated or control rod activated-type of stationary piston sampler may be used. Prior to inserting the tube sampler in the hole, check to ensure that the sampler head contains a check valve. The check valve is necessary to keep water in the rods from pushing the sample out of the tube sampler during sample withdrawal and to maintain a suction within the tube to help retain the sample.

4. With the sampling tube resting on the bottom of the hole and the water level in the boring at the natural groundwater level or above, push the tube into the soil by a continuous and rapid motion, without impacting or twisting. In no case shall the tube be pushed further than the length provided for the soil sample. Allow a free space in the tube for cuttings and sludge.

5. After pushing the tube, the sample should sit 5 to 15 minutes prior to removal. Immediately before removal, the sample must be sheared by rotating the rods with a pipe wrench a minimum of two revolutions.

6. Upon removal of the sampler tube from the hole, measure the length of sample in the tube and also the length penetrated. Remove disturbed material in the upper end of the tube and measure the length of sample again. After removing at least an inch of

soil, from the lower end and after inserting an impervious disk, seal both ends of the tube with at least a 1/2-inch thickness of wax applied in a way that will prevent the wax from entering the sample. Newspaper or other types of filler must be placed in voids at either end of the sampler prior to sealing with wax. Place plastic caps on the ends of the sampler, tape them into place and then dip the ends in wax to seal them.

7. Affix labels to the tubes and record sample number, depth, penetration, and recovery length on the label. Mark the same information and "up" direction on the tube with indelible ink, and mark the end of the sample. Complete chain-of-custody and other required forms (see SOP F302). Do not allow tubes to freeze, and store the samples vertically (with the same orientation they had in the ground, i.e., top of sample is up) in a cool place out of the sun at all times. Ship samples protected with suitable resilient packing material to reduce shock, vibration, and disturbance.

8. From soil removed from the ends of the tube, make a careful description using the methods presented in SOP F101.

9. When thin-wall tube samplers are used to collect soil for certain chemical analyses, it may be necessary to avoid using wax, newspaper, or other fillers. The SAP for each site should address specific materials allowed dependent on analytes being tested.

Thin-walled undisturbed tube samplers are restricted in their usage by the consistency of the soil to be sampled. Often very loose and/or wet samples cannot be retrieved by the samplers, and soils with a consistency in excess of very stiff cannot be penetrated by the sampler. Devices such as Dension or Pitcher cores can be used in conjunction with the tube samplers to obtain undisturbed samples of stiff soils. Using these devices normally increases sampling costs and, therefore, their use should be weighed against the increased cost and the need for an undisturbed sample. In any case, if a sample cannot be obtained with a tube sampler, an attempt should be made with a split-spoon sampler at the same depth so that at least one sample can be obtained for classification purposes.

5.2.3 Bucket (Hand) Auger Sampling

Hand augering is the most common manual method used to collect subsurface samples. Typically, 4-inch auger buckets with cutting heads are pushed and twisted into the ground and removed as the buckets are filled. The auger holes are advanced one bucket at a time. The practical depth of investigation using a hand auger is related to the material being sampled. In sands, augering is usually easily accomplished, but the depth of investigation is controlled by the depth at which sands begin to cave. At this point, auger holes usually begin to collapse and cannot practically be advanced to lower depths, and further samples, if required, must be collected using some type of pushed or driven device. Hand augering may

also become difficult in tight clays or cemented sands. At depths approaching 20 feet, torquing of hand auger extensions becomes so severe that in resistant materials, powered methods must be used if deeper samples are required.

When a vertical sampling interval has been established, one auger bucket is used to advance the auger hole to the first desired sampling depth. If the sample at this location is to be a vertical composite of all intervals, the same bucket may be used to advance the hole, as well collect subsequent samples in the same hole. However, if discrete grab samples are to be collected to characterize each depth, a new bucket must be placed on the end of the auger extension immediately prior to collecting the next sample. The top several inches of soil should be removed from the bucket to minimize the chances of cross-contamination of the sample from fall-in of material from the upper portions of the hole. The bucket auger should be decontaminated between samples as outlined in SOP F502.

In addition to hand augering, powered augers can be used to advance a boring for subsurface soil collection. However, this type of equipment is technically a sampling aid and not a sampling device, and 20 to 25 feet is the typical lower depth range for this equipment. It is used to advance a hole to the required sample depth, at which point a hand auger is usually used to collect the sample.

5.3 Surface Soil Samples

Surface soils are generally classified as soils between the ground surface and 6 to 12 inches below ground surface. For loosely packed surface soils, stainless steel (organic analyses) or plastic (inorganic analyses) scoops or trowels, can be used to collect representative samples. For densely packed soils or deeper soil samples, a hand or power soil auger may be used.

The following methods are to be used:

1. Use a soil auger for deep samples (greater than 12 inches) or a scoop or trowel for surface samples. Remove debris, rocks, twigs, and vegetation before collecting the sample.

2. Immediately transfer the sample to the appropriate sample container. Attach a label and identification tag. Record all required information in the field logbook and on the sample log sheet, chain-of-custody record, and other required forms.

3. Classify and record a description of the sample, as discussed in SOP F101. Descriptions for surface soil samples should be recorded in the field logbook; descriptions for soil samples collected with power or hand augers shall be recorded on a Field Test Boring Record.

4. Store the sampling utensil in a plastic bag until decontamination or disposal. Use a new or freshly-decontaminated sampling utensil for each sample taken.

5. Pack and ship as described in SOP F300.

6. Mark the location with a numbered stake if possible and locate sample points on a sketch of the site or on a sketch in the field logbook.

7. When a representative composited sample is to be prepared (e.g., samples taken from a gridded area or from several different depths), it is best to composite individual samples in the laboratory where they can be more precisely composited on a weight or volume basis. If this is not possible, the individual samples (all of equal volume, i.e., the sample bottles should be full) should be placed in a stainless steel bucket, mixed thoroughly using a stainless steel spatula or trowel, and a composite sample collected. In some cases, as delineated in project-specific sampling and analysis plans, laboratory compositing of the samples may be more appropriate than field compositing. Samples to be analyzed for parameters sensitive to volatilization should be composited and placed into the appropriate sample bottles immediately upon collection.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Where applicable, Field Test Boring Records and Test Boring Records will serve as the quality assurance records for subsurface soil samples, rock cores and near surface soil samples collected with a hand or power auger. Observations shall be recorded in the Field Logbook as described in SOP F303. Chain-of-Custody records shall be completed for samples collected for laboratory analysis as described in SOP F302.

7.0 REFERENCES

1. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1987. Standard Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils. ASTM Method D1586-84, Annual Book of Standards, ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

2. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1987. Standard Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils. Method D1587-83, Annual Book of Standards, ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

3. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1987. Standard Practice for Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation. Method D2113-83 (1987), Annual Book of Standards ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

4. U. S. EPA, 1991. Standard Operating Procedures and Quality Assurance Manual. Environmental Compliance Branch, U. S. EPA, Environmental Services Division, Athens, Georgia.

ATTACHMENT A

ASTM D1586-84
STANDARD METHOD FOR PENETRATION TEST AND SPLIT-BARREL SAMPLING OF SOILS

It is also useful to draw a large diagram of the core in the box, on the inside of the box top. This provides more room for elevations, run numbers, recoveries, comments, etc., than could be entered on the upper edges of partitions or spaces in the core box.

For easy retrieval when core boxes are stacked, the sides and ends of the box should also be labeled and include CTO number, boring number, top and bottom depths of core and box number.

Due to the weight of the core, a filled core box should always be handled by two people. Core boxes stored on site should be protected from the weather. The core boxes should be removed from the site in a careful manner as soon as possible. Exposure to extreme heat or cold should be avoided whenever possible.

5.2 Subsurface Soil Samples

This section discusses three methods for collecting subsurface soil samples: (1) split-spoon sampling; (2) shelby tube sampling; and, (3) bucket auger sampling. All three methods yield samples suitable for laboratory analysis. Copies of the ASTM procedures for split-spoon sampling and shelby-tube sampling are provided in Attachments A and B, respectively.

5.2.1 Split-Barrel (Split-Spoon) Sampling

The following procedures are to be used for split-spoon, geotechnical soil sampling:

1. Clean out the borehole to the desired sampling depth using equipment that will ensure that the material to be sampled is not disturbed by the operation.

2. Side-discharge bits are permissible. A bottom-discharge bit should not be used. The process of jetting through the sampler and then sampling when the desired depth is reached shall not be permitted. Where casing is used, it may not be driven below the sampling elevation.

3. The two-inch O.D. split-barrel sampler should be driven with blows from a 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches in accordance with ASTM D1586-84, Standard Penetration Test.

4. Repeat this operation at intervals not longer than 5 feet in homogeneous strata, or as specified in the Sampling and Analysis Plan.

5. Record on the Field Test Boring Record or field logbook the number of blows required to effect each six inches of penetration or fraction thereof. The first six inches is considered to be a seating drive. The sum of the number of blows required for the second and third six inches of penetration is termed the penetration resistance, N. If the sampler is driven less than 18 inches, the penetration resistance is that for the last one foot of penetration. (If less than one foot is penetrated, the logs shall state the number of blows and the fraction of one foot penetrated.) In cases where samples are driven 24 inches, the sum of second and third six-inch increments will be used to calculate the penetration resistance. (Refusal of the SPT will be noted as 50 blows over an interval equal to or less than 6 inches; the interval driven will be noted with the blow count.)

6. Bring the sampler to the surface and remove both ends and one half of the split-spoon such that the soil recovered rests in the remaining half of the barrel. Describe carefully the recovery (length), composition, structure, consistency, color, condition, etc. of the recovered soil according to SOP F101; then put into jars without ramming. Jars with samples not taken for chemical analysis should be sealed with wax, or hermetically sealed (using a teflon cap liner) to prevent evaporation of the soil moisture. Affix labels to the jar and complete Chain-of-Custody and other required sample data forms (see SOP F302). Protect samples against extreme temperature changes and breakage by placing them in appropriate cartons stored in a protected area.

7. Split-spoon samplers shall be decontaminated after each use and prior to the initial use at a site according to SOP F501.

In addition to collecting soils for geotechnical purposes, split-spoon sampling can be employed to obtain samples for environmental analytical analysis. The following procedures are to be used for split-spoon, environmental soil sampling:

1. Follow sample collection procedures 1 through 6 as outlined in Section 5.2.1.

2. After sample collection, remove the soil from the split-spoon sampler. Prior to filling laboratory containers, the soil sample should be mixed thoroughly as possible to ensure that the sample is as representative as possible of the sample interval. Soil samples for volatile organic compounds should <u>not</u> be mixed. Further, sample containers for volatile organic compounds analyses should be filled completely without head space remaining in the container to minimize volatilization.

3. Record all pertinent sampling information such as soil description, sample depth, sample number, sample location, and time of sample collection in the Field Test Boring Record or field logbook. In addition, label, tag, and number the sample bottle(s).

4. Pack the samples for shipping (see SOP F300). Attach seal to the shipping package. Make sure that Chain-of-Custody Forms and Sample Request Forms are properly filled out and enclosed or attached (see SOP F301).

5. Decontaminate the split-spoon sample as described in SOP F501. Replace disposable latex gloves between sample stations to prevent cross-contaminating samples.

For obtaining composite soil samples (see Definitions), a slightly modified approach is employed. Each individual discrete soil sample from the desired sample interval will be placed into a stainless-steel, decontaminated bowl prior to filling the laboratory sample containers. Special care should be taken to cover the bowl between samples with aluminum foil to minimize volatilization. Immediately after obtaining soils from the desired sampling interval, the sample to be analyzed for Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) should be collected. Care should be taken to obtain a representative sampling of each sample interval. The remaining soils should be thoroughly mixed. Adequate mixing can be achieved by stirring in a circular fashion and occasionally turning the soils over. Once the remaining soils have been thoroughly combined, samples for analyses other than VOCs should be placed into the appropriate sampling containers.

5.2.2 Thin-Wall (Shelby Tube) Sampling

When it is desired to take undisturbed samples of soil for physical laboratory testing, thin-walled seamless tube samplers (Shelby tubes) will be used. The following method applies:

1. Clean out the hole to the sampling elevation, being careful to minimize the chance for disturbance or contamination of the material to be sampled.

2. The use of bottom discharge bits or jetting through an open-tube sampler to clean out the hole shall not be allowed. Any side discharge bits are permitted.

3. The sampler must be of a stationary piston-type, to limit sample disturbance and aid in retaining the sample. Either the hydraulically operated or control rod activated-type of stationary piston sampler may be used. Prior to inserting the tube sampler in the hole, check to ensure that the sampler head contains a check valve. The check valve is necessary to keep water in the rods from pushing the sample out of the tube sampler during sample withdrawal and to maintain a suction within the tube to help retain the sample.

4. With the sampling tube resting on the bottom of the hole and the water level in the boring at the natural groundwater level or above, push the tube into the soil by a continuous and rapid motion, without impacting or twisting. In no case shall the tube be pushed further than the length provided for the soil sample. Allow a free space in the tube for cuttings and sludge.

5. After pushing the tube, the sample should sit 5 to 15 minutes prior to removal. Immediately before removal, the sample must be sheared by rotating the rods with a pipe wrench a minimum of two revolutions.

6. Upon removal of the sampler tube from the hole, measure the length of sample in the tube and also the length penetrated. Remove disturbed material in the upper end of the tube and measure the length of sample again. After removing at least an inch of soil, from the lower end and after inserting an impervious disk, seal both ends of the tube with at least a 1/2-inch thickness of wax applied in a way that will prevent the wax from entering the sample. Newspaper or other types of filler must be placed in voids at either end of the sampler prior to sealing with wax. Place plastic caps on the ends of the sampler, tape them into place and then dip the ends in wax to seal them.

7. Affix labels to the tubes and record sample number, depth, penetration, and recovery length on the label. Mark the same information and "up" direction on the tube with indelible ink, and mark the end of the sample. Complete chain-of-custody and other required forms (see SOP F302). Do not allow tubes to freeze, and store the samples vertically (with the same orientation they had in the ground, i.e., top of sample is up) in a cool place out of the sun at all times. Ship samples protected with suitable resilient packing material to reduce shock, vibration, and disturbance.

8. From soil removed from the ends of the tube, make a careful description using the methods presented in SOP F101.

9. When thin-wall tube samplers are used to collect soil for certain chemical analyses, it may be necessary to avoid using wax, newspaper, or other fillers. The SAP for each site should address specific materials allowed dependent on analytes being tested.

Thin-walled undisturbed tube samplers are restricted in their usage by the consistency of the soil to be sampled. Often very loose and/or wet samples cannot be retrieved by the samplers, and soils with a consistency in excess of very stiff cannot be penetrated by the sampler. Devices such as Dension or Pitcher cores can be used in conjunction with the tube samplers to obtain undisturbed samples of stiff soils. Using these devices normally increases sampling costs and, therefore, their use should be weighed against the increased cost and the need for an undisturbed sample. In any case, if a sample cannot be obtained with a tube sampler, an attempt should be made with a split-spoon sampler at the same depth so that at least one sample can be obtained for classification purposes.

5.2.3 Bucket (Hand) Auger Sampling

Hand augering is the most common manual method used to collect subsurface samples. Typically, 4-inch auger buckets with cutting heads are pushed and twisted into the ground and removed as the buckets are filled. The auger holes are advanced one bucket at a time. The practical depth of investigation using a hand auger is related to the material being sampled. In sands, augering is usually easily accomplished, but the depth of investigation is controlled by the depth at which sands begin to cave. At this point, auger holes usually begin to collapse

and cannot practically be advanced to lower depths, and further samples, if required, must be collected using some type of pushed or driven device. Hand augering may also become difficult in tight clays or cemented sands. At depths approaching 20 feet, torquing of hand auger extensions becomes so severe that in resistant materials, powered methods must be used if deeper samples are required.

When a vertical sampling interval has been established, one auger bucket is used to advance the auger hole to the first desired sampling depth. If the sample at this location is to be a vertical composite of all intervals, the same bucket may be used to advance the hole, as well collect subsequent samples in the same hole. However, if discrete grab samples are to be collected to characterize each depth, a new bucket must be placed on the end of the auger extension immediately prior to collecting the next sample. The top several inches of soil should be removed from the bucket to minimize the chances of cross-contamination of the sample from fall-in of material from the upper portions of the hole. The bucket auger should be decontaminated between samples as outlined in SOP F502.

In addition to hand augering, powered augers can be used to advance a boring for subsurface soil collection. However, this type of equipment is technically a sampling aid and not a sampling device, and 20 to 25 feet is the typical lower depth range for this equipment. It is used to advance a hole to the required sample depth, at which point a hand auger is usually used to collect the sample.

5.3 Surface Soil Samples

Surface soils are generally classified as soils between the ground surface and 6 to 12 inches below ground surface. For loosely packed surface soils, stainless steel (organic analyses) or plastic (inorganic analyses) scoops or trowels, can be used to collect representative samples. For densely packed soils or deeper soil samples, a hand or power soil auger may be used.

The following methods are to be used:

1. Use a soil auger for deep samples (greater than 12 inches) or a scoop or trowel for surface samples. Remove debris, rocks, twigs, and vegetation before collecting the sample.

2. Immediately transfer the sample to the appropriate sample container. Attach a label and identification tag. Record all required information in the field logbook and on the sample log sheet, chain-of-custody record, and other required forms.

3. Classify and record a description of the sample, as discussed in SOP F101. Descriptions for surface soil samples should be recorded in the field logbook; descriptions for soil samples collected with power or hand augers shall be recorded on a Field Test Boring Record.

4. Store the sampling utensil in a plastic bag until decontamination or disposal. Use a new or freshly-decontaminated sampling utensil for each sample taken.

5. Pack and ship as described in SOP F300.

6. Mark the location with a numbered stake if possible and locate sample points on a sketch of the site or on a sketch in the field logbook.

7. When a representative composited sample is to be prepared (e.g., samples taken from a gridded area or from several different depths), it is best to composite individual samples in the laboratory where they can be more precisely composited on a weight or volume basis. If this is not possible, the individual samples (all of equal volume, i.e., the sample bottles should be full) should be placed in a stainless steel bucket, mixed thoroughly using a stainless steel spatula or trowel, and a composite sample collected. In some cases, as delineated in project-specific sampling and analysis plans, laboratory compositing of the samples may be more appropriate than field compositing. Samples to be analyzed for parameters sensitive to volatilization should be composited and placed into the appropriate sample bottles immediately upon collection.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Where applicable, Field Test Boring Records and Test Boring Records will serve as the quality assurance records for subsurface soil samples, rock cores and near surface soil samples collected with a hand or power auger. Observations shall be recorded in the Field Logbook as described in SOP F303. Chain-of-Custody records shall be completed for samples collected for laboratory analysis as described in SOP F302.

7.0 REFERENCES

1. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1987. Standard Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils. ASTM Method D1586-84, Annual Book of Standards, ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

2. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1987. Standard Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils. Method D1587-83, Annual Book of Standards, ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

3. American Society for Testing and Materials, 1987. Standard Practice for Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation. Method D2113-83 (1987), Annual Book of Standards ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

4. U. S. EPA, 1991. Standard Operating Procedures and Quality Assurance Manual. Environmental Compliance Branch, U. S. EPA, Environmental Services Division, Athens, Georgia.

Designation: D 1586 – 84

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS
1916 Race St., Philadelphia, Pa. 19103
Reprinted from the Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Copyright ASTM
If not listed in the current combined index, will appear in the next edition.

Standard Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 1586; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This method has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense and for listing in the DOD Index of Specifications and Standards.

1. Scope

1.1 This method describes the procedure, generally known as the Standard Penetration Test (SPT), for driving a split-barrel sampler to obtain a representative soil sample and a measure of the resistance of the soil to penetration of the sampler.

1.2 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of whoever uses this standard to consult and establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.* For a specific precautionary statement, see 5.4.1.

1.3 The values stated in inch-pound units are to be regarded as the standard.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 2487 Test Method for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes[2]

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

3. Descriptions of Terms Specific to This Standard

3.1 *anvil*—that portion of the drive-weight assembly which the hammer strikes and through which the hammer energy passes into the drill rods.

3.2 *cathead*—the rotating drum or windlass in the rope-cathead lift system around which the operator wraps a rope to lift and drop the hammer by successively tightening and loosening the rope turns around the drum.

3.3 *drill rods*—rods used to transmit downward force and torque to the drill bit while drilling a borehole.

3.4 *drive-weight assembly*—a device consisting of the hammer, hammer fall guide, the anvil, and any hammer drop system.

3.5 *hammer*—that portion of the drive-weight assembly consisting of the 140 ± 2 lb (63.5 ± 1 kg) impact weight which is successively lifted and dropped to provide the energy that accomplishes the sampling and penetration.

3.6 *hammer drop system*—that portion of the drive-weight assembly by which the operator accomplishes the lifting and dropping of the hammer to produce the blow.

3.7 *hammer fall guide*—that part of the drive-weight assembly used to guide the fall of the hammer.

3.8 *N-value*—the blowcount representation of the penetration resistance of the soil. The *N*-value, reported in blows per foot, equals the sum of the number of blows required to drive the sampler over the depth interval of 6 to 18 in. (150 to 450 mm) (see 7.3).

3.9 ΔN—the number of blows obtained from each of the 6-in. (150-mm) intervals of sampler penetration (see 7.3).

3.10 *number of rope turns*—the total contact angle between the rope and the cathead at the beginning of the operator's rope slackening to drop the hammer, divided by 360° (see Fig. 1).

3.11 *sampling rods*—rods that connect the drive-weight assembly to the sampler. Drill rods are often used for this purpose.

3.12 *SPT*—abbreviation for Standard Penetration Test, a term by which engineers commonly refer to this method.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 This method provides a soil sample for identification purposes and for laboratory tests appropriate for soil obtained from a sampler that may produce large shear strain disturbance in the sample.

4.2 This method is used extensively in a great variety of geotechnical exploration projects. Many local correlations and widely published correlations which relate SPT blowcount, or *N*-value, and the engineering behavior of earthworks and foundations are available.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Drilling Equipment*—Any drilling equipment that provides at the time of sampling a suitably clean open hole before insertion of the sampler and ensures that the penetration test is performed on undisturbed soil shall be acceptable. The following pieces of equipment have proven to be suitable for advancing a borehole in some subsurface conditions.

5.1.1 *Drag, Chopping, and Fishtail Bits*, less than 6.5 in. (162 mm) and greater than 2.2 in. (56 mm) in diameter may be used in conjuction with open-hole rotary drilling or casing-advancement drilling methods. To avoid disturbance of the underlying soil, bottom discharge bits are not permitted; only side discharge bits are permitted.

5.1.2 *Roller-Cone Bits*, less than 6.5 in. (162 mm) and greater than 2.2 in. (56 mm) in diameter may be used in

[1] This method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

Current edition approved Sept. 11, 1984. Published November 1984. Originally published as D 1586 – 58 T. Last previous edition D 1586 – 67 (1974).

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

ATTACHMENT B

ASTM D1587-83

STANDARD PRACTICE FOR THIN-WALLED TUBE SAMPLING OF SOILS

Designation: D 1587 – 83

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS
1916 Race St., Philadelphia, Pa. 19103
Reprinted from the Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Copyright ASTM
If not listed in the current combined index, will appear in the next edition.

Standard Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 1587; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

This practice has been approved for use by agencies of the Department of Defense and for listing in the DOD Index of Specifications and Standards.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice covers a procedure for using a thin-walled metal tube to recover relatively undisturbed soil samples suitable for laboratory tests of structural properties. Thin-walled tubes used in piston, plug, or rotary-type samplers, such as the Denison or Pitcher, must comply with the portions of this practice which describe the thin-walled tubes (5.3).

NOTE 1—This practice does not apply to liners used within the above samplers.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 2488 Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)[2]

D 3550 Practice for Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

D 4220 Practices for Preserving and Transporting Soil Samples[2]

3. Summary of Practice

3.1 A relatively undisturbed sample is obtained by pressing a thin-walled metal tube into the in-situ soil, removing the soil-filled tube, and sealing the ends to prevent the soil from being disturbed or losing moisture.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 This practice, or Practice D 3550, is used when it is necessary to obtain a relatively undisturbed specimen suitable for laboratory tests of structural properties or other tests that might be influenced by soil disturbance.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Drilling Equipment*—Any drilling equipment may be used that provides a reasonably clean hole; that does not disturb the soil to be sampled; and that does not hinder the penetration of the thin-walled sampler. Open borehole diameter and the inside diameter of driven casing or hollow stem auger shall not exceed 3.5 times the outside diameter of the thin-walled tube.

5.2 *Sampler Insertion Equipment*, shall be adequate to provide a relatively rapid continuous penetration force. For hard formations it may be necessary, although not recommended, to drive the thin-walled tube sampler.

5.3 *Thin-Walled Tubes*, should be manufactured as shown in Fig. 1. They should have an outside diameter of 2 to 5 in. and be made of metal having adequate strength for use in the soil and formation intended. Tubes shall be clean and free of all surface irregularities including projecting weld seams.

5.3.1 *Length of Tubes*—See Table 1 and 6.4.

5.3.2 *Tolerances*, shall be within the limits shown in Table 2.

5.3.3 *Inside Clearance Ratio*, should be 1 % or as specified by the engineer or geologist for the soil and formation to be sampled. Generally, the inside clearance ratio used should increase with the increase in plasticity of the soil being sampled. See Fig. 1 for definition of inside clearance ratio.

5.3.4 *Corrosion Protection*—Corrosion, whether from galvanic or chemical reaction, can damage or destroy both the thin-walled tube and the sample. Severity of damage is a function of time as well as interaction between the sample and the tube. Thin-walled tubes should have some form of protective coating. Tubes which will contain samples for more than 72 h shall be coated. The type of coating to be used may vary depending upon the material to be sampled. Coatings may include a light coat of lubricating oil, lacquer, epoxy, Teflon, and others. Type of coating must be specified by the engineer or geologist if storage will exceed 72 h. Plating of the tubes or alternate base metals may be specified by the engineer or geologist.

5.4 *Sampler Head*, serves to couple the thin-walled tube to the insertion equipment and, together with the thin-walled tube, comprises the thin-walled tube sampler. The sampler head shall contain a suitable check valve and a venting area to the outside equal to or greater than the area through the check valve. Attachment of the head to the tube shall be concentric and coaxial to assure uniform application of force to the tube by the sampler insertion equipment.

6. Procedure

6.1 Clean out the borehole to sampling elevation using whatever method is preferred that will ensure the material to be sampled is not disturbed. If groundwater is encountered, maintain the liquid level in the borehole at or above ground water level during the sampling operation.

6.2 Bottom discharge bits are not permitted. Side discharge bits may be used, with caution. Jetting through an open-tube sampler to clean out the borehole to sampling elevation is not permitted. Remove loose material from the center of a casing or hollow stem auger as carefully as

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

Current edition approved Aug. 17, 1983. Published October 1983. Originally published as D 1587 – 58 T. Last previous edition D 1587 – 74.

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Vol 04.08.

ATTACHMENT C

ASTM D2113-83 (1987)
STANDARD PRACTICE FOR DIAMOND CORE DRILLING FOR SITE INVESTIGATION

Designation: D 2113 – 83 (Reapproved 1987)

Standard Practice for Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2113; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This practice describes equipment and procedures for diamond core drilling to secure core samples of rock and some soils that are too hard to sample by soil-sampling methods. This method is described in the context of obtaining data for foundation design and geotechnical engineering purposes rather than for mineral and mining exploration.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 *ASTM Standards:*

D 1586 Method for Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

D 1587 Practice for Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils[2]

D 3550 Practice for Ring-Lined Barrel Sampling of Soils[2]

3. Significance and Use

3.1 This practice is used to obtain core specimens of superior quality that reflect the in-situ conditions of the material and structure and which are suitable for standard physical-properties tests and structural-integrity determination.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Drilling Machine,* capable of providing rotation, feed, and retraction by hydraulic or mechanical means to the drill rods.

4.2 *Fluid Pump or Air Compressor,* capable of delivering sufficient volume and pressure for the diameter and depth of hole to be drilled.

4.3 *Core barrels,* as required:

4.3.1 *Single Tube Type, WG Design,* consisting of a hollow steel tube, with a head at one end threaded for drill rod, and a threaded connection for a reaming shell and core bit at the other end. A core lifter, or retainer located within the core bit is normal, but may be omitted at the discretion of the geologist or engineer.

4.3.2 *Double Tube, Swivel-Type, WG Design*—An assembly of two concentric steel tubes joined and supported at the upper end by means of a ball or roller-bearing swivel arranged to permit rotation of the outer tube without causing rotation of the inner tube. The upper end of the outer tube, or removable head, is threaded for drill rod. A threaded connection is provided on the lower end of the outer tube for a reaming shell and core bit. A core lifter located within the core bit is normal but may be omitted at the discretion of the geologist or engineer.

4.3.3 *Double-Tube, Swivel-Type, WT Design,* is essentially the same as the double tube, swivel-type, WG design, except that the WT design has thinner tube walls, a reduced annular area between the tubes, and takes a larger core from the same diameter bore hole. The core lifter is located within the core bit.

4.3.4 *Double Tube, Swivel Type, WM Design,* is similar to the double tube, swivel-type, WG design, except that the inner tube is threaded at its lower end to receive a core lifter case that effectively extends the inner tube well into the core bit, thus minimizing exposure of the core to the drilling fluid. A core lifter is contained within the core lifter case on the inner tube.

4.3.5 *Double Tube Swivel-Type, Large-Diameter Design,* is similar to the double tube, swivel-type, WM design, with the addition of a ball valve, to control fluid flow, in all three available sizes and the addition of a sludge barrel, to catch heavy cuttings, on the two larger sizes. The large-diameter design double tube, swivel-type, core barrels are available in three core per hole sizes as follows: 2¾ in. (69.85 mm) by 3⅞ in. (98.43 mm), 4 in. (101.6 mm) by 5½ in. (139.7 mm), and 6 in. (152.4 mm) by 7¾ in. (196.85 mm). Their use is generally reserved for very detailed investigative work or where other methods do not yield adequate recovery.

4.3.6 *Double Tube, Swivel-Type, Retrievable Inner-Tube Method,* in which the core-laden inner-tube assembly is retrieved to the surface and an empty inner-tube assembly returned to the face of the borehole through the matching large-bore drill rods without need for withdrawal and replacement of the drill rods in the borehole. The inner-tube assembly consists of an inner tube with removable core lifter case and core lifter at one end and a removable inner-tube head, swivel bearing, suspension adjustment, and latching device with release mechanism on the opposite end. The inner-tube latching device locks into a complementary recess in the wall of the outer tube such that the outer tube may be rotated without causing rotation of the inner tube and such that the latch may be actuated and the inner-tube assembly transported by appropriate surface control. The outer tube is threaded for the matching, large-bore drill rod and internally configured to receive the inner-tube latching device at one end and threaded for a reaming shell and bit, or bit only, at the other end.

4.4 *Longitudinally Split Inner Tubes*—As opposed to conventional cylindrical inner tubes, allow inspection of, and access to, the core by simply removing one of the two halves. They are not standardized but are available for most core barrels including many of the retrievable inner-tube types.

[1] This practice is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-18 on Soil and Rock and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D18.02 on Sampling and Related Field Testing for Soil Investigations.

Current edition approved June 24, 1983. Published August 1983. Originally published as D 2113 – 62 T. Last previous edition D 2113 – 70 (1976).

[2] *Annual Book of ASTM Standards,* Vol 04.08.

4.5 *Core Bits*—Core bits shall be surface set with diamonds, impregnated with small diamond particles, inserted with tungsten carbide slugs, or strips, hard-faced with various hard surfacing materials or furnished in saw-tooth form, all as appropriate to the formation being cored and with concurrence of the geologist or engineer. Bit matrix material, crown shape, water-way type, location and number of water ways, diamond size and carat weight, and bit facing materials shall be for general purpose use unless otherwise approved by the geologist or engineer. Nominal size of some bits is shown in Table 1.

NOTE 1—Size designation (letter symbols) used throughout the text and in Tables 1, 2, and 3 are those standardized by the Diamond Core Drill Manufacturers' Assoc. (DCDMA). Inch dimensions in the tables have been rounded to the nearest hundredth of an inch.

4.6 *Reaming Shells,* shall be surface set with diamonds, impregnated with small diamond particles, inserted with tungsten carbide strips or slugs, hard faced with various types of hard surfacing materials, or furnished blank, all as appropriate to the formation being cored.

4.7 *Core Lifters*—Core lifters of the split-ring type, either plain or hard-faced, shall be furnished and maintained, along with core-lifter cases or inner-tube extensions or inner-tube shoes, in good condition. Basket or finger-type lifters, together with any necessary adapters, shall be on the job and available for use with each core barrel if so directed by the geologist or engineer.

4.8 *Casings:*

4.8.1 *Drive Pipe or Drive Casing,* shall be standard weight (schedule 40), extra-heavy (schedule 80), double extra-heavy (schedule 160) pipe or W-design flush-joint casing as required by the nature of the overburden or the placement method. Drive pipe or W-design casing shall be of sufficient diameter to pass the largest core barrel to be used, and it shall be driven to bed rock or to firm seating at an elevation below water-sensitive formation. A hardened drive shoe is to be used as a cutting edge and thread protection device on the bottom of the drive pipe or casing. The drive shoe inside diameter shall be large enough to pass the tools intended for use, and the shoe and pipe or casing shall be free from burrs or obstructions.

4.8.2 *Casing*—When necessary to case through formations already penetrated by the borehole or when no drive casing has been set, auxiliary casing shall be provided to fit inside the borehole to allow use of the next smaller core barrel. Standard sizes of telescoping casing are shown in Table 2. Casing bits have an obstruction in their interior and will not pass the next smaller casing size. Use a casing shoe if additional telescoping is anticipated.

4.8.3 *Casing Liner*—Plastic pipe or sheet-metal pipe may be used to line an existing large-diameter casing. Liners, so used, should not be driven, and care should be taken to maintain true alignment throughout the length of the liner.

4.8.4 *Hollow Stem Auger*—Hollow stem auger may be used as casing for coring.

4.9 *Drill Rods:*

4.9.1 *Drill Rods of Tubular Steel Construction* are normally used to transmit feed, rotation, and retraction forces from the drilling machine to the core barrel. Drill-rod sizes that are presently standardized are shown in Table 3.

4.9.2 Large bore drill rods used with retrievable inner-tube core barrels are not standardized. Drill rods used with retrievable inner-tube core barrels should be those manufactured by the core-barrel manufacturer specifically for the core barrel.

4.9.3 *Composite Drill Rods* are specifically constructed from two or more materials intended to provide specific properties such as light weight or electrical nonconductivity.

4.9.4 *Nonmagnetic Drill Rods* are manufactured of nonferrous materials such as aluminum or brass and are used primarily for hole survey work. Some nonmagnetic rods have left-hand threads in order to further their value in survey work. No standard exists for nonmagnetic rods.

4.10 *Auxiliary Equipment,* shall be furnished as required by the work and shall include: roller rock bits, drag bits, chopping bits, boulder busters, fishtail bits, pipe wrenches, core barrel wrenches, lubrication equipment, core boxes, and marking devices. Other recommended equipment includes:

TABLE 1 Core Bit Sizes

Size Designation	Outside Diameter		Inside Diameter	
	in.	mm	in.	mm
RWT	1.16	29.5	0.375	18.7
EWT	1.47	37.3	0.905	22.9
EWG, EWM	1.47	37.3	0.845	21.4
AWT	1.88	47.6	1.281	32.5
AWG, AWM	1.88	47.6	1.185	30.0
BWT	2.35	59.5	1.750	44.6
BWG, BWM	2.35	59.5	1.655	42.0
NWT	2.97	75.3	2.313	58.7
NWG, NWM	2.97	75.3	2.155	54.7
2¾ × 3⅞	3.84	97.5	2.69	68.3
HWT	3.89	98.8	3.187	80.9
HWG, . . .	3.89	98.8	3.000	76.2
4 × 5½	5.44	138.0	3.97	100.8
6 × 7¾	7.66	194.4	5.97	151.6

TABLE 2 Casing Sizes

Size Designation	Outside Diameter		Inside Diameter		Threads per in.	Will Fit Hole Drilled with Core Bit Size
	in.	mm	in.	mm		
RW	1.144	36.5	1.19	30.1	5	EWT, EWG, EWM
EW	1.81	46.0	1.50	38.1	4	AWT, AWG, AWM
AW	2.25	57.1	1.91	48.4	4	BWT, BWG, BWM
BW	2.88	73.0	2.38	60.3	4	NWT, NWG, NWM
NW	3.50	88.9	3.00	76.2	4	HWT, HWG
HW	4.50	114.3	4.00	101.6	4	4 × 5½
PW	5.50	139.7	5.00	127.0	3	6 × 7¾
SW	6.63	168.2	6.00	152.4	3	6 × 7¾
UW	7.63	193.6	7.00	177.8	2	. . .
ZW	8.63	219.0	8.00	203.2	2	. . .

TABLE 3 Drill Rods

Size Designation	Rod and Coupling Outside Diameter		Rod Inside Diameter		Coupling Bore, Threads		
	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	per in.
RW	1.09	27.7	0.72	18.2	0.41	10.3	4
EW	1.38	34.9	1.00	25.4	0.44	11.1	3
AW	1.72	43.6	1.34	34.1	0.63	15.8	3
BW	2.13	53.9	1.75	44.4	0.75	19.0	3
NW	2.63	66.6	2.25	57.1	1.38	34.9	3
HW	3.50	88.9	3.06	77.7	2.38	60.3	3

core splitter, rod wicking, pump-out tools or extruders, and hand sieve or strainer.

5. Transportation and Storage of Core Containers

5.1 *Core Boxes,* shall be constructed of wood or other durable material for the protection and storage of cores while enroute from the drill site to the laboratory or other processing point. All core boxes shall be provided with longitudinal separators and recovered cores shall be laid out as a book would read, from left to right and top to bottom, within the longitudinal separators. Spacer blocks or plugs shall be marked and inserted into the core column within the separators to indicate the beginning of each coring run. The beginning point of storage in each core box is the upper left-hand corner. The upper left-hand corner of a hinged core box is the left corner when the hinge is on the far side of the box and the box is right-side up. All hinged core boxes must be permanently marked on the outside to indicate the top and the bottom. All other core boxes must be permanently marked on the outside to indicate the top and the bottom and additionally, must be permanently marked internally to indicate the upper-left corner of the bottom with the letters UL or a splotch of red paint not less than 1 in.^{2} Lid or cover fitting(s) for core boxes must be of such quality as to ensure against mix up of the core in the event of impact or upsetting of the core box during transportation.

5.2 Transportation of cores from the drill site to the laboratory or other processing point shall be in durable core boxes so padded or suspended as to be isolated from shock or impact transmitted to the transporter by rough terrain or careless operation.

5.3 Storage of cores, after initial testing or inspection at the laboratory or other processing point, may be in cardboard or similar less costly boxes provided all layout and marking requirements as specified in 5.1 are followed. Additional spacer blocks or plugs shall be added if necessary at time of storage to explain missing core. Cores shall be stored for a period of time specified by the engineer but should not normally be discarded prior to completion of the project for which they were taken.

6. Procedure

6.1 Use core-drilling procedures when formations are encountered that are too hard to be sampled by soil-sampling methods. A 1-in. (25.4-mm) or less penetration for 50 blows in accordance with Method D 1586 or other criteria established by the geologist or engineer, shall indicate that soil-sampling methods are not applicable.

6.1.1 Seat the casing on bedrock or in a firm formation to prevent raveling of the borehole and to prevent loss of drilling fluid. Level the surface of the rock or hard formation at the bottom of the casing when necessary, using the appropriate bits. Casing may be omitted if the borehole will stand open without the casing.

6.1.2 Begin the core drilling using an N-size double-tube swivel-type core barrel or other size or type approved by the engineer. Continue core drilling until core blockage occurs or until the net length of the core barrel has been drilled in. Remove the core barrel from the hole and disassemble it as necessary to remove the core. Reassemble the core barrel and return it to the hole. Resume coring.

6.1.3 Place the recovered core in the core box with the upper (surface) end of the core at the upper-left corner of the core box as described in 5.1. Continue boxing core with appropriate markings, spacers, and blocks as described in 5.1. Wrap soft or friable cores or those which change materially upon drying in plastic film or seal in wax, or both, when such treatment is required by the engineer. Use spacer blocks or slugs properly marked to indicate any noticeable gap in recovered core which might indicate a change or void in the formation. Fit fracture, bedded, or jointed pieces of core together as they naturally occurred.

6.1.4 Stop the core drilling when soft materials are encountered that produce less than 50 % recovery. If necessary, secure samples of soft materials in accordance with the procedures described in Method D 1586, Practice D 1587, or Practice D 3550, or by any other method acceptable to the geologist or engineer. Resume diamond core drilling when refusal materials as described in 6.1 are again encountered.

6.2 Subsurface structure, including the dip of strata, the occurrence of seams, fissures, cavities, and broken areas are among the most important items to be detected and described. Take special care to obtain and record information about these features. If conditions prevent the continued advance of the core drilling, the hole should be cemented and redrilled, or reamed and cased, or cased and advanced with the next smaller-size core barrel, as required by the geologist or engineer.

6.3 Drilling mud or grouting techniques must be approved by the geologist or engineer prior to their use in the borehole.

6.4 *Compatibility of Equipment:*

6.4.1 Whenever possible, core barrels and drill rods should be selected from the same letter-size designation to ensure maximum efficiency. See Tables 1 and 3.

6.4.2 Never use a combination of pump, drill rod, and core barrel that yields a clear-water up-hole velocity of less than 120 ft/min.

6.4.3 Never use a combination of air compressor, drill rod, and core barrel that yields a clear-air up-hole velocity of less than 3000 ft/min.

7. Boring Log

7.1 The boring log shall include the following:

7.1.1 Project identification, boring number, location, date boring began, date boring completed, and driller's name.

7.1.2 Elevation of the ground surface.

7.1.3 Elevation of or depth to ground water and raising or lowering of level including the dates and the times measured.

7.1.4 Elevations or depths at which drilling fluid return was lost.

7.1.5 Size, type, and design of core barrel used. Size, type, and set of core bit and reaming shell used. Size, type, and length of all casing used. Description of any movements of the casing.

7.1.6 Length of each core run and the length or percentage, or both, of the core recovered.

7.1.7 Geologist's or engineer's description of the formation recovered in each run.

7.1.8 Driller's description, if no engineer or geologist is present, of the formation recovered in each run.

7.1.9 Subsurface structure description, including dip of strata and jointing, cavities, fissures, and any other observations made by the geologist or engineer that could yield information regarding the formation.

7.1.10 Depth, thickness, and apparent nature of the filling of each cavity or soft seam encountered, including opinions gained from the feel or appearance of the inside of the inner tube when core is lost. Record opinions as such.

7.1.11 Any change in the character of the drilling fluid or drilling fluid return.

7.1.12 Tidal and current information when the borehole is sufficiently close to a body of water to be affected.

7.1.13 Drilling time in minutes per foot and bit pressure in pound-force per square inch gage when applicable.

7.1.14 Notations of character of drilling, that is, soft, slow, easy, smooth, etc.

8. Precision and Bias

8.1 This practice does not produce numerical data; therefore, a precision and bias statement is not applicable.

NOTE 2—Inclusion of the following tables and use of letter symbols in the foregoing text is not intended to limit the practice to use of DCDMA tools. The table and text references are included as a convenience to the user since the vast majority of tools in use do meet DCDMA dimensional standards. Similar equipment of approximately equal size on the metric standard system is acceptable unless otherwise stipulated by the engineer or geologist.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

SOIL AND ROCK SAMPLE ACQUISITION

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this procedure is to describe the handling of rock cores and subsurface soil samples collected during drilling operations. Surface soil sampling also is described.

2.0 SCOPE

The methods described in this SOP are applicable for the recovery of subsurface soil and rock samples acquired by coring operations or soil sampling techniques such as split-barrel sampling and thin-walled tube sampling. Procedures for the collection of surface soil samples also are discussed. This SOP does not discuss drilling techniques or well installation procedures. ASTM procedures for "Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils," "Thin-Walled Tube Sampling of Soils," and "Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation" have been included as Attachments A through C, respectively.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Thin-Walled Tube Sampler - A thin-walled metal tube (also called Shelby tube) used to recover relatively undisturbed soil samples. These tubes are available in various sizes, ranging from 2 to 5 inches outer diameter (O.D.) and 18 to 54 inches length. A stationary piston device is included in the sampler to reduce sample disturbance and increase recovery.

Split-Barrel Sampler - A steel tube, split in half lengthwise, with the halves held together by threaded collars at either end of the tube. Also called a split-spoon sampler, this device can be driven into unconsolidated materials using a drive weight mounted on the drilling string. A standard split-spoon sampler (used for performing Standard Penetration Tests) is two inches O.D. and 1-3/8-inches inner diameter (I.D.). This standard spoon is available in two common lengths providing either 20-inch or 26-inch internal longitudinal clearance for obtaining 18-inch or 24-inch long samples, respectively.

Grab Sample - An individual sample collected from a single location at a specific time or period of time generally not exceeding 15 minutes. Grab samples are associated with surface water,

groundwater, wastewater, waste, contaminated surfaces, soil, and sediment sampling. Grab samples are typically used to characterize the media at a particular instant in time.

Composite Samples - A sample collected over time that typically consists of a series of discrete samples which are combined or "composited". Two types of composite samples are listed below:

- Areal Composite : A sample collected from individual grab samples collected on an areal or cross-sectional basis. Areal composites shall be made up of equal volumes of grab samples. Each grab sample shall be collected in an identical manner. Examples include sediment composites from quarter-point sampling of streams and soil samples from grid points.

- Vertical Composite: A sample collected from individual grab samples collected from a vertical cross section. Vertical composites shall be made up of equal volumes of grab samples. Each grab sample shall be collected in an identical manner. Examples include vertical profiles of soil/sediment columns, lakes and estuaries.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - The Project Manager is responsible for ensuring that project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures, where applicable, or that other, approved procedures are developed. The Project Manager is responsible for development of documentation of procedures which deviate from those presented herein.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for selecting and detailing the specific sampling techniques and equipment to be used, and documenting these in the Sampling and Analysis Plan. It is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to ensure that these procedures are implemented in the field and to ensure that personnel performing sampling activities have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures.

Drilling Inspector - It is the responsibility of the drilling inspector to follow these procedures, or to follow documented, project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team Leader and/or the Project Manager. The Drilling Inspector is responsible for the proper acquisition of rock cores and subsurface soil samples.

Sampling Personnel - It is the responsibility of the field sampling personnel to follow these procedures, or to follow documented, project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team Leader and/or the Project Manager. The sampling personnel are responsible for the proper acquisition of surface soil samples.

5.0 PROCEDURES

Subsurface soil and rock samples are used to characterize the three-dimensional subsurface stratigraphy. This characterization can indicate the potential for migration of chemical contaminants from hazardous substance sites. In addition, definition of the actual migration of contaminants can be obtained through chemical analysis of subsurface soil samples. Where the remedial activities may include in-situ treatment, or the excavation and removal of the contaminated soil, the depth and areal extent of contamination must be known as accurately as possible.

Surface soil samples serve to characterize the extent of surface contamination at hazardous waste sites. These samples may be collected during initial site screening to determine gross contamination levels and levels of personal protection required as part of more intensive field sampling activities, to gather more detailed site data during design, or to determine the need for, or success of, cleanup actions.

Site construction activities may require that the engineering and physical properties of soil and rock be determined. Soil types, bearing strength, compressibility, permeability, plasticity, and moisture content are some of the geotechnical characteristics that may be determined by laboratory tests of soil samples. Rock quality, strength, stratigraphy, structure, etc. often are needed to design and construct deep foundations or remedial components.

5.1 Rock Cores

Once the rock coring has been completed and the core recovered, the rock core shall be carefully removed from the barrel, placed in a core tray (previously labeled "top" and "bottom" to avoid confusion), classified, and measured for percentage of recovery, as well as the rock

quality designation (RQD) (see SOP F101). If split-barrels are used, the core may be measured and classified in the split barrel after opening and then transferred to a core box.

Each core shall be described and classified on a Field Test Boring Record using a uniform system as presented in SOP F101. If moisture content will be determined or if it is desirable to prevent drying (e.g., to prevent shrinkage of hydrated formations) or oxidation of the core, the core must be wrapped in plastic sleeves immediately after logging. Each plastic sleeve shall be labeled with indelible ink. The boring number, run number and the footage represented in each sleeve shall be included, as well as the top and bottom of the core run.

After sampling, rock cores must be placed in the sequence of recovery in wooden or plastic core boxes provided by the drilling contractor. Rock cores from two different borings shall not be placed in the same core box. The core boxes should be constructed to accommodate at least 20 linear feet of core in rows of approximately five feet each and should be constructed with hinged tops secured with screws, and a latch (usually a hook and eye) to keep the top securely fastened. Wood partitions shall be placed at the end of each core run and between rows. The depth from the surface of the boring to the top and bottom of the drill run and the run number shall be marked on the wooden partitions with indelible ink. The order of placing cores shall be the same in all core boxes. The top of each core obtained should be clearly and permanently marked on each box. The width of each row must be compatible with the core diameter to prevent lateral movement of the core in the box. Similarly, any empty space in a row shall be filled with an appropriate filler material or spacers to prevent longitudinal movement of the core in the box.

The inside and outside of the core-box lid shall be marked by indelible ink to show all pertinent data pertaining to the box's contents. At a minimum, the following information must be included:

- Project name
- Date
- CTO number
- Boring number
- Footage (depths)
- Run number(s)
- Recovery
- Rock Quality Designation (RQD)
- Box number (x of x)

SOP F103
Monitor Well Installation

MONITORING WELL INSTALLATION
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Well Installation
- 5.2 Surface Completion
- 5.3 Well Development
- 5.4 Contaminated Materials Handling
- 5.5 Well Construction Logs

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

MONITORING WELL INSTALLATION

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this procedure is to provide general guidance and reference material regarding the installation of monitoring wells at various sites.

2.0 SCOPE

This SOP describes the methods of installing a groundwater monitoring well, and creating a Monitoring Well Installation Record. This SOP does not discuss drilling, soil sampling, borehole logging or related activities. These other activities are discussed in SOPs F102 and F101 entitled Soil and Rock Sample Acquisition, and Borehole and Sample Logging, respectively.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Monitoring Well - A monitoring well is a well which is properly screened, cased, and sealed to intercept a discrete zone of the subsurface, and is capable of providing a groundwater level and sample representative of the zone being monitored.

Piezometer - A piezometer is a pipe or tube inserted into an aquifer or other water-bearing zone, open to water flow at the bottom, open to the atmosphere at the top, and used to measure water level elevations. Piezometers are not used for the collection of groundwater quality samples or aquifer characteristic data other than water level elevations.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - It is the responsibility of the Project Manager to ensure that field personnel installing monitoring wells are familiar with these procedures. The Project Manager also is responsible for ensuring that all appropriate documents (e.g., test boring logs, monitoring well construction logs, etc.) have been correctly and completely filled out by the drilling inspector.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for the overall supervision of all drilling, boring and well installation activities, and for ensuring that the well is completely

and correctly installed and logged. The Field Team Leader also is responsible for ensuring that all drilling inspectors have been briefed on these procedures.

Drilling Inspector (Site Geologist) - The Drilling Inspector or Site Geologist is responsible for the direct supervision of drilling and well installation activities. It is the Drilling Inspector's responsibility to log each boring and details of the well installation, document subsurface conditions, complete the appropriate forms, and supervise the drilling crew (or drilling supervisor).

5.0 PROCEDURES

The objectives for the use of each monitoring well and of the entire array of wells must be clearly defined before the monitoring system is designed. Within the monitoring system, different monitoring wells may serve different purposes and, therefore, may require different types of construction. During all phases of the well design (both office and field), attention must be given to clearly documenting the basis for design decisions, the details of well construction, and the materials used.

The objectives for installing monitoring wells may include:

- Determining groundwater flow directions and velocities.
- Sampling or monitoring for groundwater contamination.
- Determining aquifer characteristics (e.g., hydraulic conductivity).
- Performing site remediation via injection or recovery.

In cases where only the groundwater flow direction or velocity needs to be determined, cluster piezometers or wells (i.e., wells completed to different depths in different boreholes at one data collection station) may be used. For groundwater quality monitoring or aquifer characteristic determination, monitoring wells or cluster wells should be used.

Siting of monitoring wells shall be performed after a preliminary estimation of groundwater flow direction. Typically, site visits, topographic mapping, regional/local hydrogeologic information, previously installed piezometers or monitoring wells, or information supplied by local drilling companies will provide information for siting wells. Flexibility should be maintained, so that well locations may be modified during the field investigation to account

for site conditions. The horizontal and vertical locations of all monitoring wells shall be determined through a site survey upon completion of well installation.

Guidelines for Navy underground storage tank (UST) monitoring well construction are given in Attachment A.

5.1 Well Installation

The methods discussed in this section are applicable to shallow, small diameter monitoring wells. Project-specific modifications to these methods shall be documented in the Sampling and Analysis Plan. Typical shallow monitoring well construction details are shown in Figures A-1 and A-2 in Attachment A for wells with flush-mounted and stick-up wells, respectively.

Note that these procedures discuss well installation using a PVC screen and riser pipe. Other materials such as stainless steel or Teflon are also available. However, PVC generally is much less expensive and easier to work with than either stainless steel or Teflon. A disadvantage to using PVC is the potential for degradation of the materials, or release (leaching) of constituents into the groundwater. Because of these concerns, justification for using PVC must be developed on a project-specific basis. The checklist shown in Attachment B provides a format for developing this justification.

Upon completion of each boring (refer to SOP F101 and F102 for Borehole and Sample Logging, and Soil and Rock Sample Acquisition, respectively), monitoring wells will usually be constructed using either two-inch or four-inch inside diameter (I.D.) screen and riser. Schedule 40 PVC, threaded, flush-joint casings with a continuous #10 slot (0.010-inch), threaded, flush-joint PVC screen. If wells are to be constructed over 100 feet in length, or in high traffic areas, or under other unusual conditions, Schedule 80 PVC may be used because of its greater strength.

An appropriate length of well screen shall be installed in each boring. The length of screen typically varies from one to 20 feet depending on site-specific conditions. For UST applications, the screen should be installed such that at least two-feet of screen is above the water table and the remainder of the screen extends below the water surface. Should very shallow water table conditions be encountered, the screened interval in both the saturated and

unsaturated zones may be reduced to ensure an adequate well seal above the screened interval. If this situation is expected, it should be addressed in the project plans, as necessary. A six-inch section of PVC casing may be placed at the bottom of each screen to act as a settling cup for fines which may pass through the filter pack and screen.

Other applications may call for different screen placement depending on the zone to be monitored and the expected contaminants. For example, monitoring for dense non-aqueous phase liquids *(DNAPLS)* may require placing the screened interval in a "sump" at the base of the aquifer. Depending on the purpose of the monitoring well, the riser pipe may extend from the top of the screened interval to either six inches below the ground surface (for flush-mounted wells) to between one and two feet above the ground surface for wells completed with stick-up.

The annular space around the screen is to be successfully backfilled with a well graded quartz-sand, sodium bentonite and cement/bentonite grout as the hollow-stem augers are being withdrawn from the borehole. The sand size used in well construction will be appropriate for the formation monitored by the well. Sand shall be placed, preferably via tremie pipe, from the bottom of the boring to approximately two feet above the top of the screened interval. A lesser distance above the top of the screened interval may be packed with sand if the well is very shallow to allow for placement of sealing materials.

A sodium bentonite seal at least one-foot thick (but no more than three-feet thick) shall be place above the sand pack. The bentonite shall be allowed to hydrate for at least 20 minutes before further completion of the well. Distilled water will be added to the well to hydrate the bentonite, if necessary.

The annular space above the bentonite seal will be backfilled with a cement/bentonite and grout consisting of three to four percent bentonite powder (by dry weight) and seven gallons of potable water per 94 pound bag of portland cement. The grout mixture shall be specified in the project plans. The grout will be tremied into the annular space, preferably with a side-discharge tremie pipe, into annular spaces greater than ten feet high. If the annular space is less than ten feet high, the grout may be poured directly into the annular space.

The depth intervals of all backfill materials shall be measured with a weighted measuring

tape to the nearest 0.1 foot and recorded on the Field Monitoring Well Construction Record or in a field logbook.

5.2 Surface Completion

There are several methods for surface completion of monitoring wells. Two such methods are discussed below.

The first method considers wells completed with stick-up. The aboveground section of the PVC riser pipe will be protected by installation of a four or six-inch diameter, five-foot long steel casing with locking cap and lock into the cement grout. The bottom of the surface casing will be placed at a minimum of 2-1/2, but not more than 3-1/2 feet below the ground surface, as space permits, with an inverted taper to protect the casing from frost heaving. For very shallow wells, a steel casing of less than five-feet in length may be used, as space permits. The protective steel casing shall not fully penetrate the bentonite seal.

The top of each well will be protected with the installation of three, three-inch diameter, five-foot long steel pipes for UST projects (four for IR projects) and have a concrete apron. The steel pipes shall be embedded to a minimum depth of 2.5-feet in 3,000 psi concrete. Each pipe shall also be filled with concrete. A concrete apron approximately five-feet by five-feet by 0.5-feet thick shall be placed at the same time the pipes are installed. The steel pipes shall be painted with day-glo yellow paint, or equivalent.

The second method considers flush-mounted wells, typically installed in traffic areas. The monitoring well shall be completed at the surface using a "flush" mount type cover. If the well is installed through a paved or concrete surface, the annular space shall be grouted to a depth of at least 2.5-feet and the well shall be finished with a concrete collar. If the well has not been installed through a paved or concrete surface, the well shall be completed by construction of a five-foot by five-foot by 0.5-foot thick apron made of 3,000 psi concrete. The concrete shall be crowned to meet the finished grade of the surrounding pavement, as required. If appropriate, the vault around the buried wellhead will have a water drain to the surrounding soil and a watertight cover.

All wells will have a cap vented to the atmosphere.

All monitoring wells shall be labeled by metal stamping on the exterior of the protective steel casing locking cap, and also by labeling on the exterior of the steel casing or manhole cover. For underground storage tank applications, the labeling shall consist of the letters UGW (UST Groundwater), and a number specific to each well. A sign reading "Not For Potable Use or Disposal" also shall be firmly attached to each well. Alternately, well identification information may be stamped on a metal plate and attached to the well protective steel casing or embedded in the concrete apron.

5.3 Well Development

There are two stages of well development, initial and sampling. Sampling development is described in SOP F104, Groundwater Sample Acquisition. Initial development takes place after the completion materials have stabilized, as the last part of well construction.

The purposes of the initial development are to stabilize and increase the permeability of the filter pack around the well screen, to restore the permeability of the formation which may have been reduced by the drilling operations, and to remove fine-grained materials that may have entered the well or filter pack during installation. The selection of the well development method typically is based on drilling methods, well construction and installation details, and the characteristics of the formation. Any equipment that is introduced into the well during development shall be decontaminated in accordance with the SOP F501, entitled "Decontamination of Drilling Rigs, Heavy Equipment and Monitoring Well Materials." A detailed discussion of well development is provided in Driscoll, 1986.

Well development shall not be initiated until a minimum of 24 hours has elapsed subsequent to well completion. This time period will allow the cement grout to set. Wells typically are developed using bailers, low-yield pumping, or surging with a surge block or air. The appropriate method shall be specified in the project plans.

All wells shall be developed until well water runs relatively clear of fine-grained materials. Note that the water in some wells does not clear with continued development. Typical limits placed on well development may include any one of the following:

- Clarity of water based on visual determination.
- A maximum time period (typically one hour for shallow wells 10 to 30 feet deep).
- A maximum borehole volume (typically three to five borehole volumes).
- Stability of specific conductance and temperature measurements (typically less than 10 percent change between three successive measurements).
- Clarity based on turbidity measurements (typically less than 50 NTU).

In addition, a volume equal to any water added during drilling will be removed above and beyond the requirement specified above.

Well development limits shall be specified in project-specific plans. A record of the well development (Figure A-3 in Attachment A) also shall be completed to document the development process.

Usually, a minimum period of two weeks should elapse between the end of initial development and the first sampling event for a well. This equilibration period allows groundwater unaffected by the installation of the well to occupy the vicinity of the screened interval. However, this stabilization period may be adjusted based upon project-specific requirements.

5.4 Contaminated Materials Handling

SOP F504, entitled "Handling of Site Investigation Wastes," discusses the procedures to be used for the handling of auger cuttings, decontamination water, steam pad water, and development and purge water. Specific handling procedures should be delineated in the project plans. In general, all site investigation generated wastes shall be containerized unless otherwise specified by LANTDIV. The disposition of these wastes shall be determined after receipt of the appropriate analytical results.

5.5 Well Construction Logs

Field Well Construction Logs shall be completed by the Drilling Inspector for each monitoring well installed. These logs preferably shall be completed as the well is being constructed. However, due to space limitations on this form it may be more practical to record well

installation information in the field logbook and later transfer it to the Well Construction Log. If well construction information is recorded in the field logbook, it must be transferred to the appropriate form within five days, or prior to demobilization from the field.

Field Well Construction Logs (in Attachment C), shall include not only well construction information, but also information pertaining to the amount of materials used for construction. Some of the following items shall be recorded on the Field Well Construction Log, or in the field logbook, as appropriate:

- Project name and location.
- CTO number.
- Date and weather.
- Well identification designation.
- Drilling company and driller.
- Top of casing elevation (information collected after the site survey).
- Pay items including amount of screen and riser pipe used, amounts of cement, bentonite and sand used, and other well construction items.
- Well casing and borehole diameters.
- Elevations of (or depth to) top of steel casing, bottom of well, top of filter pack, top of bentonite seal, top of screen.

The information on the Field Well Construction Log will be used to generate a final Well Construction Log which combines the Field Boring and Well Construction Logs into one package. An example of all three documents is presented in Attachment C.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

The Field Well Construction Record is the principle quality assurance record generated from well installation activities. Additionally, a Field Well Development Record shall also be completed, as well as pertinent comments in the field logbook.

7.0 REFERENCES

1. Driscoll, Fletcher, G. Groundwater and Wells , Johnson division. St. Paul, Minnesota. 2nd ed. 1986.

2. Roscoe Moss Company. Handbook of Ground Water Development. John Wiley & Sons. New York. 1990.

3. USEPA. RCRA Ground-Water Monitoring Technical Enforcement Guidance Document (use most recent version).

ATTACHMENT A

UST MONITORING WELL CONSTRUCTION AND FIELD OPERATIONS

ATTACHMENT A

UST MONITORING WELL CONSTRUCTION AND FIELD OPERATIONS

SPECIFICATIONS

Well permits required by state agencies are the responsibility of the contractor. All monitoring wells will be installed in accordance with Navy UST monitoring well specifications. The wells will be constructed of either a 2-inch or 4-inch inside diameter (I.D.) flush joint threaded PVC well screen and riser casing depending on conditions encountered during borehole completion.

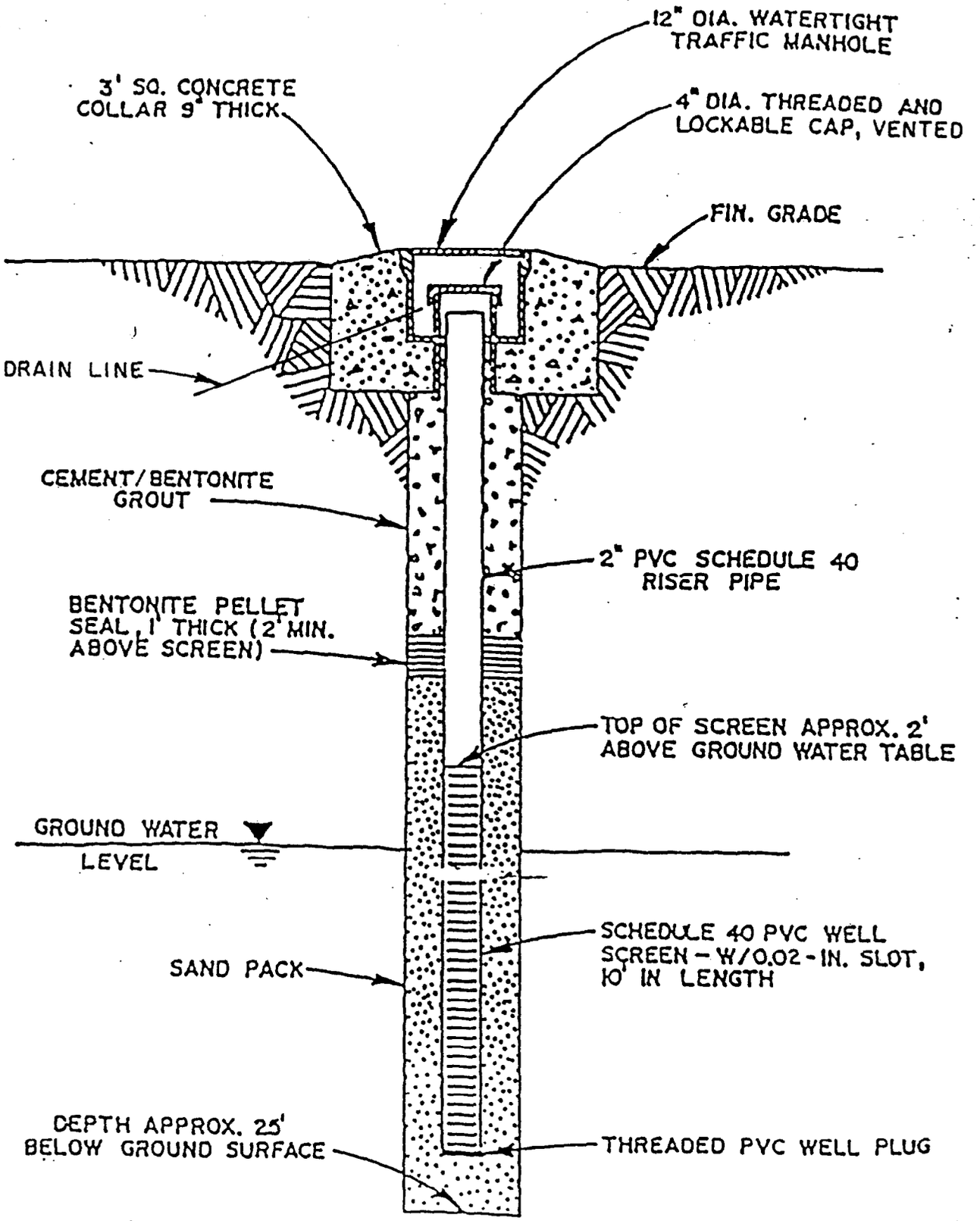
DRILLING

During the drilling program, boreholes will be advanced using conventional hollow-stem auger drilling methods. If it is the opinion of the contractor that air or mud rotary drill methods are necessary, approval must be obtained from the Engineer-in-Charge (EIC). Presentation of justification for a boring method change shall be presented prior to drilling.

Well construction details are shown in Figures A-1 and A-2. A drill mounted on an All-Terrain-Vehicle (ATV) may be required for access to remote areas. Each rig will use necessary tools, supplies and equipment supplied by the contractor to drill each site. Drill crews should consist of an experienced driller and a driller assistant for work on each rig. A geologist, experienced in hazardous waste site investigations, shall be on site to monitor the drillers efforts and for air monitoring/safety control. Additional subcontractor personnel may be needed to transport water to the rigs, clean tools, assist in the installation of the security and marker pipes, construct the concrete aprons/collars and develop the wells. A potable water source on base will be designated by the Government.

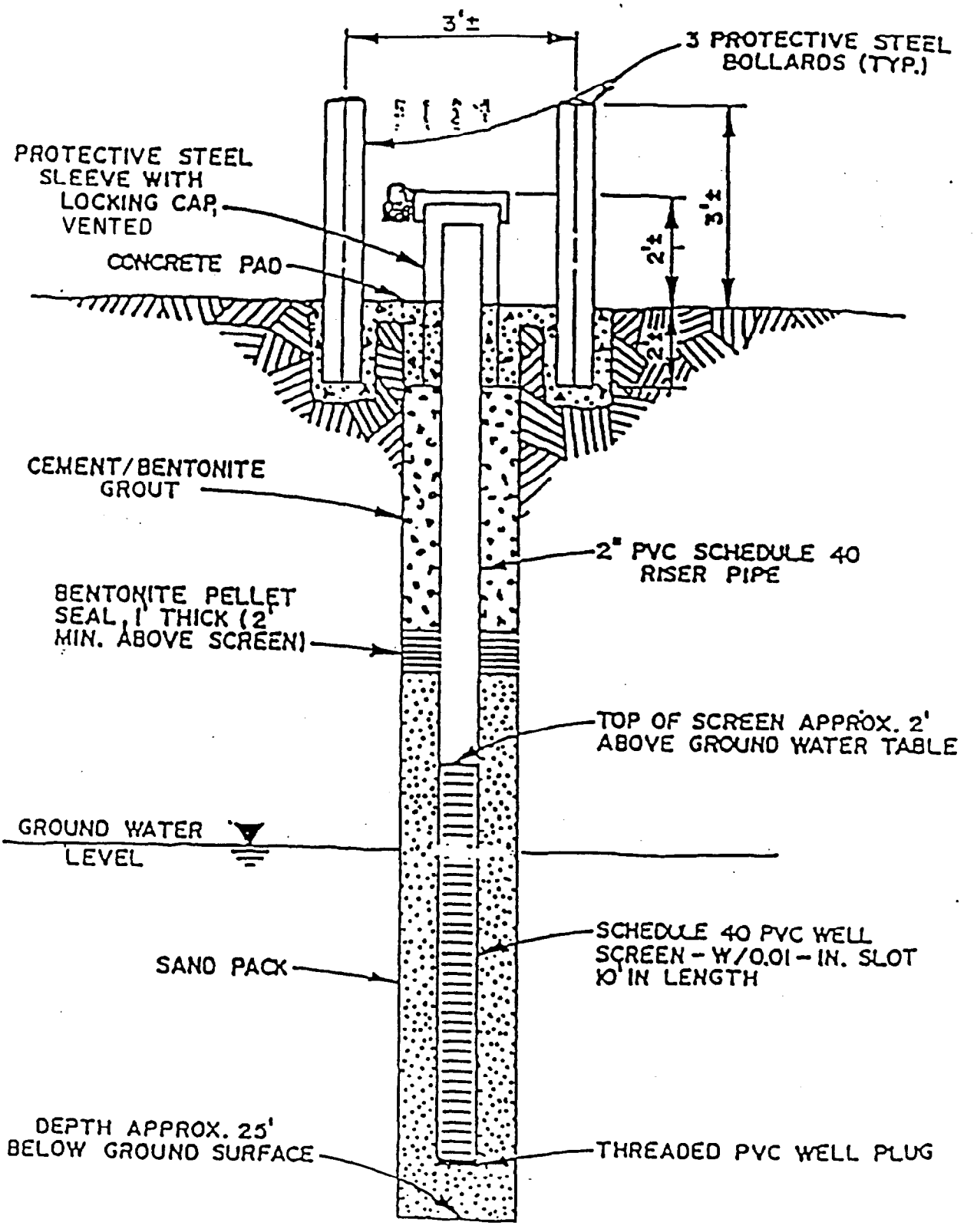
Standard Penetration Tests (SPTs) will be performed in accordance with ASTM D-1586. Standard penetration tests will be performed at the following depths: 0.0-1.5 feet; 1.5-3.0 feet; 3.0-4.5 feet; and 5-foot centers thereafter. In cases where soil sampling for environmental analytical analysis is required, 24-inch spoon barrels may be used in the SPT to obtain a sufficient amount of sample for required analysis. A boring log of the soil type, stratification, consistency, and groundwater level will be prepared.

FIGURE A-1



MONITORING WELL CONSTRUCTION DETAIL
(TRAFFIC AREA)
NOT TO SCALE

FIGURE A-2



MONITORING WELL CONSTRUCTION DETAIL
(NON TRAFFIC AREA)
NOT TO SCALE

SAMPLING

Soil samples of the subsurface materials will be collected every five feet or change in formation throughout the borehole in accordance with ASTM Method D-1586. Each soil sample will be screened in the field using an HNu photoionizer, organic vapor detector or similar type direct readout instrument to identify the presence of petroleum product within the soils. This field screening will provide a preliminary indication of the vertical and horizontal extent of contamination in order to select the optimum locations of other monitoring wells during the drilling program. Based on the field screening, two-inch or four-inch diameter monitoring wells will be installed at the locations where the most significant accumulation of fuel is encountered.

WELL INSTALLATION

After completion of soil sampling and drilling to the specified depth, two-inch and/or four-inch (as required by the EIC) inside-diameter, flush-threaded Schedule 40 PVC (Schedule 80 in traffic areas) monitoring wells with slotted screens and well casings will be installed in the borehole. A 5- to 15-foot section of 0.01-inch slotted PVC well screen shall be used in each well. A sand pack will be placed around the slotted well screen extending to 2 feet above the top of the screen. A bentonite seal (minimum thickness of 1 foot) will be placed on top of the sand pack. Finally, a grout mixture of three to four percent bentonite powder (by dry weight) and seven gallons of water per 94 pound bag of cement, thoroughly mixed, will be placed in the borehole to insure a proper seal.

WELL DEVELOPMENT

All wells will be developed not less than 24 hours following their installation to remove fine ground materials that may have entered the well during construction. Wells shall be developed until water runs relatively clear of fine-grained materials. Note that the water in some wells does not clear with continued development. Typical limits placed on well development may include any one of the following:

- Clarity of water based on visual determination.
- A maximum time period (typically one hour for shallow wells, well depth of 10 to 30 feet).
- A maximum well volume (typically three to five well volumes).

- Stability of specific conductance and temperature measurements (typically less than 10 percent change between three successive measurements).
- Clarity based on turbidity measurements (typically less than 50 NTU).

In addition, a volume equal to any water added during drilling will be removed above and beyond the requirement specified above.

Figure A-3 presents the Field Well Development Log used to document development data. This will be accomplished by either bailing or continuous, low-yield pumping. Equipment used for well installation that may have come in contact with potentially contaminated material will be decontaminated with a high pressure steam wash followed by a potable water rinse. It is assumed that all fluid generated from well development and equipment decontamination can be disposed of on the ground at each respective well site, unless otherwise specified.

The soil removed from the borehole will be piled beneath the drill rig while drilling. The drill equipment and tools will be cleaned prior to drilling each well using a portable decontamination system supplied by the contractor. Washwater at the sites will not be contained, unless otherwise directed by the Government, and may seep into the ground locally.

Supplies and equipment will be transported to the lay-down area designated on the station by the Government. Any office space, trailers, etc., required for drilling, subsequent sampling and shipping shall be arranged and provided by the contractor.

WELLHEAD COMPLETION

A four-inch diameter security pipe with a hinged locking cap will be installed over the well casing top and will be embedded approximately 2.5 feet into the grout.

There are two acceptable methods of completing the wellheads.

In traffic areas (and non-traffic areas where required), a "flush" mount type cover shall be built into a concrete pad as shown in Figure A-1. If the well is installed through a paved or concrete surface, the annular space between the casing and the borehole shall be grouted to a depth of at least 2.5 feet and finished with a concrete collar. If the well is not installed through

FIGURE A.3

FIELD WELL DEVELOPMENT RECORD

Baker

Baker Environmental, Inc

PROJECT: _____

CTO NO.: _____ WELL NO.: _____

DATE: _____

GEOLOGIST/ENGINEER: _____

	DEVELOPMENT DATA						
	TIME	CUMULATIVE VOLUME (gallons)	pH	TEMP (°C)	SPEC. COND. (µmhos/cm)	TEMP (°C)	COLOR AND TURBIDITY
TIME START							
TIME FINISH							
INITIAL WATER LEVEL (FT)							
TOTAL WELL DEPTH (TD)							
WELL DIAMETER (INCHES)							
CALCULATED WELL VOLUME							
BOREHOLE DIAMETER (INCHES)							
BOREHOLE VOLUME							
AMOUNT OF WATER ADDED DURING DRILLING							
DEVELOPMENT METHOD							
PUMP TYPE							
TOTAL TIME (A)							
AVERAGE FLOW (GPM)(B)							
TOTAL ESTIMATED WITHDRAWAL AxB =							
HNU/OVA READING							

OBSERVATIONS/NOTES

a concrete or paved medium and still finished as a high traffic area well, a concrete apron measuring 5-foot by 5-foot by 0.5 foot will be constructed around each well. This apron/collar will be constructed of 3,000 psi ready-mixed concrete. The concrete will be crowned to provide and to meet the finished grade of surrounding pavement as required. The concrete pads can be constructed within five days after all of the wells have been installed.

In non-traffic areas the acceptable method of finishing a wellhead is shown in Figure A-2. Each well will be marked with three, Schedule 40 steel pipes, three-inch I.D., embedded in a minimum of 2.5-foot of 3,000 psi concrete. (The concrete used to secure the three pipes will be poured at the same time and be an integral part of the 5-foot by 5-foot by 0.5-foot concrete apron described above.) The security pipes will extend a minimum of 2.5 feet and maximum of 4.0 feet above the ground surface. The steel marker pipes will be filled with concrete and painted day-glo yellow or an equivalent. Attachment C presents Sample Field Test Boring Records and Field Well Construction Record Forms.

In all finishing methods, the well covers will be properly labeled by metal stamping on the exterior of the security pipe locking cap and by labeling vertically on the exterior of the security pipe or manhole cover, as appropriate. The labeling shall consist of the letters UGW (UST Groundwater) (to describe the medium and the reason for the well) and a number specific to each well.

A sign reading "NOT FOR POTABLE USE OR DISPOSAL" shall be firmly attached to each well.

* The contractor or project team may supplement these requirements, but may not modify or delete them, in total or in part, without prior approval of the EIC.

If any part of the above specifications is in conflict with the regulations set forth by the State, the State regulations take precedent.

ATTACHMENT B

ALTERNATE WELL CASING MATERIAL JUSTIFICATION

ATTACHMENT B

ALTERNATE WELL CASING MATERIAL JUSTIFICATION

The following is EPA's minimum seven point information requirements to justify the use of PVC as an alternate casing material for groundwater monitoring wells. If requested by EPA (USEPA Region IV), justification of the use of PVC should be developed by addressing each of the following items.

1. The Data Quality Objectives (DQOs) for the samples to be collected from wells with PVC casing as per EPA/540/G-87/003, "Data Quality Objectives for Remedial Response Activities."

2. The anticipated compounds and their concentration ranges.

3. The anticipated residence time of the sample in the well and the aquifer's productivity.

4. The reasons for not using other casing materials.

5. Literature on the adsorption characteristics of the compounds and elements of interest for the type of PVC to be used.

6. Whether the wall thickness of the PVC casing would require a larger annular space when compared to other well construction materials.

7. The type of PVC to be used and, if available, the manufacturers specifications, and an assurance that the PVC to be used does not leach, mask, react or otherwise interfere with the contaminants being monitored within the limits of the DQOs.

ATTACHMENT C

FIELD TEST BORING RECORD AND FIELD WELL CONSTRUCTION RECORD FORMS

Baker

Baker Environmental, Inc

TEST BORING AND WELL CONSTRUCTION RECOR

PROJECT: _____

S.O. NO.: _____ BORING NO.: _____

COORDINATES: EAST: _____ NORTH: _____

ELEVATION: SURFACE: _____ TOP OF PVC CASING: _____

RIG:									
	SPLIT SPOON	CASING	AUGERS	CORE BARREL	DATE	PROGRESS (FT)	WEATHER	WATER DEPTH (FT)	TIME
SIZE (DIAM.)									
LENGTH									
TYPE									
HAMMER WT.									
FALL									
STICK UP									

REMARKS:

SAMPLE TYPE

S = Split Spoon A = Auger
T = Shelby Tube W = Wash
R = Air Rotary C = Core
D = Denison P = Piston
N = No Sample

WELL INFORMATION	DIAM	TYPE	TOP DEPTH (FT)	BOTTOM DEPTH (FT)

Depth (Ft.)	Sample Type and No.	Samp. Rec. Ft. & %	SPT or RQD	Lab. Class. or Pen. Rate	PID (ppm)	Visual Description	Well Installation Detail	Elevation Ft. MSL
1								
2								
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9								
10						Match to Sheet 2		

DRILLING CO.: _____ BAKER REP.: _____

DRILLER: _____ BORING NO.: _____ SHEET 1 OF

Baker

Baker Environmental, Inc

TEST BORING AND WELL CONSTRUCTION RECORD

PROJECT: _____

S.O. NO.: _____ BORING NO.: _____

SAMPLE TYPE

S = Split Spoon
T = Shelby Tube
R = Air Rotary
D = Denison
A = Auger
W = Wash
C = Core
P = Piston
N = No Sample

DEFINITIONS

SPT = Standard Penetration Test (ASTM D-1586) (Blows/0.5')
RQD = Rock Quality Designation (%)
Lab. Class. = USCS (ASTM D-2487) or AASHTO (ASTM D-3282)
Lab. Moist. = Moisture Content (ASTM D-2216) Dry Weight Basis

Depth (Ft.)	Sample Type and No.	Samp. Rec. (Ft. & %)	SPT or RQD	Lab. Class. or Pen. Rate	PID (ppm)	Visual Description	Well Installation Detail	Elevation Ft. MSL
11								
12								
13								
14								
15								
16								
17								
18								
19								
20								
21								
22								
23								
24								
25								
26								
27								
28								
29								
30								

DRILLING CO.: _____ BAKER REP.: _____

DRILLER: _____ BORING NO.: _____ SHEET 2 OF .

SOP F104
Groundwater Sample Acquisition

GROUNDWATER SAMPLE ACQUISITION
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Sampling, Monitoring, and Evaluation Equipment
- 5.2 Calculations of Well Volume
- 5.3 Evacuation of Static Water (Purging)
  - 5.3.1 Evacuation Devices
- 5.4 Sampling
  - 5.4.1 Sampling Methods
  - 5.4.2 Sample Containers
  - 5.4.3 Preservation of Samples and Sample Volume Requirements
  - 5.4.4 Field Filtration
  - 5.4.5 Handling and Transportation Samples
  - 5.4.6 Sample Holding Times

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

GROUNDWATER SAMPLE ACQUISITION

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this guideline is to provide general reference information on the sampling of groundwater wells. The methods and equipment described are for the collection of water samples from the saturated zone of the subsurface.

2.0 SCOPE

This guideline provides information on proper sampling equipment and techniques for groundwater sampling. Review of the information contained herein will facilitate planning of the field sampling effort by describing standard sampling techniques. The techniques described should be followed whenever applicable, noting that site-specific conditions or project-specific plans may require adjustments in methods.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

None.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - The Project Manager is responsible for ensuring that project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures, where applicable, or that other, approved procedures are developed. The Project Manager is responsible for development of documentation of procedures which deviate from those presented herein.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for selecting and detailing the specific groundwater sampling techniques and equipment to be used, and documenting these in the Sampling and Analysis Plan. It is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to ensure that these procedures are implemented in the field and that personnel performing sampling activities have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures.

Sampling Personnel - It is the responsibility of the field sampling personnel to follow these procedures, or to follow documented, project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team

Leader and the Project Manager. The sampling personnel are responsible for the proper acquisition of groundwater samples.

5.0 PROCEDURES

To be useful and accurate, a groundwater sample must be representative of the particular zone being sampled. The physical, chemical, and bacteriological integrity of the sample must be maintained from the time of sampling to the time of testing in order to minimize any changes in water quality parameters.

The groundwater sampling program should be developed with reference to ASTM D4448-85A, Standard Guide for Sampling Groundwater Monitoring Wells (Attachment A). This reference is not intended as a monitoring plan or procedure for a specific application, but rather is a review of methods. Specific methods shall be stated in the Sampling and Analysis Plan (SAP).

Methods for withdrawing samples from completed wells include the use of pumps, compressed air, bailers, and various types of samplers. The primary considerations in obtaining a representative sample of the groundwater are to avoid collection of stagnant (standing) water in the well and to avoid physical or chemical alteration of the water due to sampling techniques. In a non-pumping well, there will be little or no vertical mixing of water in the well pipe or casing, and stratification will occur. The well water in the screened section will mix with the groundwater due to normal flow patterns, but the well water above the screened section will remain largely isolated and become stagnant. To safeguard against collecting non-representative stagnant water in a sample, the following approach should be followed during sample withdrawal:

1. All monitoring wells shall be pumped or bailed prior to withdrawing a sample. Evacuation of three to five volumes is recommended for a representative sample.

2. Wells that can be pumped or bailed to dryness with the sampling equipment being used, shall be evacuated and allowed to recover prior to sample withdrawal. If the recovery rate is fairly rapid and time allows, evacuation of at least three well volumes of water is preferred; otherwise, a sample will be taken when enough water is available to fill the sample containers.

Stratification of contaminants may exist in the aquifer formation. This is from concentration gradients due to dispersion and diffusion processes in a homogeneous layer, and from

separation of flow streams by physical division (for example, around clay leases) or by contrasts in permeability (for example, between a layer of silty, fine sand and a layer of medium sand).

Pumping rates and volumes for non-production wells during sampling development should be moderate; pumping rates for production wells should be maintained at the rate normal for that well. Excessive pumping can dilute or increase the contaminant concentrations in the recovered sample compared to what is representative of the integrated water column at that point, thus result in the collection of a non-representative sample. Water produced during purging shall be collected, stored or treated and discharged as allowed. Disposition of purge water is usually site specific and must be addressed in the Sampling and Analysis Plan.

5.1 Sampling, Monitoring, and Evacuation Equipment

Sample containers shall conform with EPA regulations for the appropriate contaminants and to the specific Quality Assurance Project Plan.

The following list is an example of the type of equipment that generally must be on hand when sampling groundwater wells:

1. Sample packaging and shipping equipment - Coolers for sample shipping and cooling, chemical preservatives, and appropriate packing cartons and filler, labels and chain-of-custody documents.

2. Field tools and instrumentation - Thermometer; pH meter; specific conductivity meter; appropriate keys (for locked wells) or bolt-cutter; tape measure; water-level indicator; and, where applicable, flow meter.

3. Pumps

   a. Shallow-well pumps - Centrifugal, pitcher, suction, or peristaltic pumps with droplines, air-lift apparatus (compressor and tubing), as applicable.

   b. Deep-well pumps - Submersible pump and electrical power generating unit, bladder pump with compressed air source, or air-lift apparatus, as applicable.

4. Tubing - Sample tubing such as teflon, polyethylene, polypropylene, or PVC. Tubing type shall be selected based on specific site requirements and must be chemically inert to the groundwater being sampled.

5. Other Sampling Equipment - Bailers, teflon-coated wire, stainless steel single strand wire, and polypropylene monofilament line (not acceptable in EPA Region I) with

tripod-pulley assembly (if necessary). Bailers shall be used to obtain samples for volatile organics from shallow and deep groundwater wells.

6. Pails - Plastic, graduated.

7. Decontamination solutions - Decontamination materials are discussed in SOP F501 and F502.

Ideally, sample withdrawal equipment should be completely inert, economical, easily cleaned, sterilized, and reusable, able to operate at remote sites in the absence of power sources, and capable of delivering variable rates for well flushing and sample collection.

5.2 Calculations of Well Volume

Calculation of gallons/linear feet from a well

$$V = \pi r^2 h$$

Where: V = volume of standing water in well
r = well radius
h = feet of standing water in well

Table 5-1 lists gallons and cubic feet of water per standing foot of water for a variety of well diameter.

TABLE 5-1
WELL VOLUMES

Diameter of Casing or Hole (in.)	Gallons per Foot of Depth	Cubic Feet per Foot of Depth
1	0.041	0.0055
2	0.163	0.0218
4	0.653	0.0873
6	1.469	0.1963
8	2.611	0.3491
10	4.080	0.5454

Notes:
1. Gallons per foot of depth will be multiplied by amount of standing water to obtain well volume quantity.
2. 1 gallon = 3.785 liters
   1 meter = 3.281 feet
   1 gallon water weighs 8.33 pounds = 3.785 kilograms
   1 liter water weighs 1 kilogram = 2.205 pounds
   1 gallon per foot of depth = 12.419 liters per foot of depth
   1 gallon per meter of depth = 12.419×10^{-3} cubic meters per meter of depth

To insure that the proper volume of water has been removed from the well prior to sampling, it is first necessary to determine the volume of standing water in the well pipe or casing. The volume can be easily calculated by the following method. Calculations shall be entered in the field logbook:

1. Obtain all available information on well construction (location, casing, screens, etc.).

2. Determine well or casing diameter.

3. Measure and record static water level (depth below ground level or top of casing reference point), using one of the methods described in Section 5.1 of SOP F202.

4. Determine the depth of the well (if not known from past records) to the nearest 0.01-foot by sounding using a clean, decontaminated weighted tape measure.

5. Calculate number of linear feet of static water (total depth or length of well pipe or casing minus the depth to static water level).

6. Calculate the volume of water in the casing:

$$VW = \pi D^2 (TD - DW)$$

$$V_{gal} = VW \times 7.48 \text{ gallons/ft}^3$$

$$V_{purge} = Vgal\ (\#\ \text{Well Vol})$$

Where:

V_W	= Volume of water in well in cubic feet (i.e., one well volume)
π	= pi, 3.14
D	= Well diameter in feet (use (D/12) if D is in inches)
TD	= Total depth of well in feet (below ground surface or top of casing)
DW	= Depth to water in feet (below ground surface or top of casing)
V_{gal}	= Volume of water in well in gallons
V_{purge}	= Volume of water to be purged from well in gallons
# Well Vol.	= Number of well volumes of water to be purged from the well (typically three to five)

7. Determine the minimum number of gallons to be evacuated before sampling. (Note: V_{purge} should be rounded to the next highest whole gallon. For example, 7.2 gallons should be rounded to 8 gallons.)

5.3 Evacuation of Static Water (Purging)

The amount of flushing a well should receive prior to sample collection will depend on the intent of the monitoring program and the hydrogeologic conditions. Programs to determine overall quality of water resources may require long pumping periods to obtain a sample that is representative of a large volume of that aquifer. The pumped volume may be specified prior to sampling so that the sample can be a composite of a known volume of the aquifer.

For defining a contaminant plume, a representative sample of only a small volume of the aquifer is required. These circumstances require that the well be pumped enough to remove the stagnant water but not enough to induce significant groundwater flow from a wide area. Generally, three to five well volumes are considered effective for purging a well.

An alternative method of purging a well, and one accepted in EPA Regions I and IV, is to purge a well continuously (usually using a low volume, low flow pump) while monitoring specific conductance, pH, and water temperature until the values stabilize. The well is considered properly purged when the values have stabilized.

The Project Manager shall define the objectives of the groundwater sampling program in the Sampling and Analysis Plan, and provide appropriate criteria and guidance to the sampling personnel on the proper methods and volumes of well purging.

5.3.1 Evacuation Devices

The following discussion is limited to those devices which are commonly used at hazardous waste sites. Note that all of these techniques involve equipment which is portable and readily available.

Bailers - Bailers are the simplest evacuation devices used and have many advantages. They generally consist of a length of pipe with a sealed bottom (bucket-type bailer) or, as is more useful and favored, with a ball check-valve at the bottom. An inert line (e.g., Teflon-coated) is used to lower the bailer and retrieve the sample.

Advantages of bailers include:

- Few limitations on size and materials used for bailers.
- No external power source needed.
- Inexpensive.
- Minimal outgassing of volatile organics while the sample is in the bailer.
- Relatively easy to decontaminate.

Limitations on the use of bailers include the following:

- Potentially excessively time consuming to remove stagnant water using a bailer.
- Transfer of sample may cause aeration.
- Use of bailers is physically demanding, especially in warm temperatures at protection levels above Level D.

Suction Pumps - There are many different types of inexpensive suction pumps including centrifugal, diaphragm, peristaltic, and pitcher pumps. Centrifugal and diaphragm pumps can be used for well evacuation at a fast pumping rate and for sampling at a low pumping rate. The peristaltic pump is a low volume pump (generally not suitable for well purging) that uses rollers to squeeze a flexible tubing, thereby creating suction. This tubing can be dedicated to a well to prevent cross contamination. The pitcher pump is a common farm hand-pump.

These pumps are all portable, inexpensive and readily available. However, because they are based on suction, their use is restricted to areas with water levels within 10 to 25 feet of the ground surface. A significant limitation is that the vacuum created by these pumps will cause significant loss of dissolved gases, including volatile organics. In addition, the complex internal components of these pumps may be difficult to decontaminate.

Gas-Lift Samples - This group of samplers uses gas pressure either in the annulus of the well or in a venturi to force the water up a sampling tube. These pumps are also relatively inexpensive. Gas lift pumps are more suitable for well development than for sampling because the samples may be aerated, leading to pH changes and subsequent trace metal precipitation or loss of volatile organics. An inert gas such as nitrogen is generally used as a gas source.

Submersible Pumps - Submersible pumps take in water and push the sample up a sample tube to the surface. The power sources for these samplers may be compressed air or

electricity. The operation principles vary and the displacement of the sample can be by an inflatable bladder, sliding piston, gas bubble, or impeller. Pumps are available for two-inch diameter wells and larger. These pumps can lift water from considerable depths (several hundred feet).

Limitations of this class of pumps include:

- Potentially low delivery rates.
- Many models of these pumps are expensive.
- Compressed gas or electric power is needed.
- Sediment in water may cause clogging of the valves or eroding the impellers with some of these pumps.
- Decontamination of internal components is difficult and time-consuming.

5.4 Sampling

The sampling approach consisting of the following, should be developed as part of the Sampling and Analysis Plan prior to the field work:

1. Background and objectives of sampling.

2. Brief description of area and waste characterization.

3. Identification of sampling locations, with map or sketch, and applicable well construction data (well size, depth, screened interval, reference elevation).

4. Sampling equipment to be used.

5. Intended number, sequence volumes, and types of samples. If the relative degrees of contamination between wells is unknown or insignificant, a sampling sequence which facilitates sampling logistics may be followed. Where some wells are known or strongly suspected of being highly contaminated, these should be sampled last to reduce the risk of cross-contamination between wells as a result of the sampling procedures.

6. Sample preservation requirements.

7. Schedule.

8. List of team members.

9. Other information, such as the necessity for a warrant or permission of entry, requirement for split samples, access problems, location of keys, etc.

5.4.1 Sampling Methods

The collection of a groundwater sample includes the following steps:

1. First open the well cap and use volatile organic detection equipment (HNu or OVA) on the escaping gases at the well head to determine the need for respiratory protection. This task is usually performed by the Field Team Leader, Health and Safety Officer, or other designee.

2. When proper respiratory protection has been donned, sound the well for total depth and water level (decontaminated equipment) and record these data in the field logbook. Calculate the fluid volume in the well according to Section 5.2 of this SOP.

3. Lower purging equipment or intake into the well to a short distance below the water level and begin water removal. Collect the purged water and dispose of it in an acceptable manner (e.g., DOT-approved 55-gallon drum).

4. Measure the rate of discharge frequently. A bucket and stopwatch are most commonly used; other techniques include using pipe trajectory methods, weir boxes or flow meters.

5. Observe peristaltic pump intake for degassing "bubbles" and all pump discharge lines. If bubbles are abundant and the intake is fully submerged, this pump is not suitable for collecting samples for volatile organics. The preferred method for collecting volatile organic samples and the accepted method by EPA Regions I through IV is with a bailer.

6. Purge a minimum of three to five well volumes before sampling. In low permeability strata (i.e., if the well is pumped to dryness), one volume will suffice. Allow the well to recharge as necessary, but preferably to 70 percent of the static water level, and then sample.

7. Record measurements of specific conductance, temperature, and pH during purging to ensure the groundwater stabilizes. Generally, these measurements are made after three, four, and five well volumes.

8. If sampling using a pump, lower the pump intake to midscreen or the middle of the open section in uncased wells and collect the sample. If sampling with a bailer, lower the bailer to the sampling level before filling (this requires use of other than a "bucket-type" bailer). Purged water should be collected in a designated container and disposed of in an acceptable manner.

9. (For pump and packer assembly only). Lower assembly into well so that packer is positioned just above the screen or open section and inflate. Purge a volume equal to at least twice the screened interval or unscreened open section volume below the packer before sampling. Packers should always be tested in a casing section above ground to determine proper inflation pressures for good sealing.

10. In the event that recovery time of the well is very slow (e.g., 24 hours), sample collection can be delayed until the following day. If the well has been bailed early in

the morning, sufficient water may be standing in the well by the day's end to permit sample collection. If the well is incapable of producing a sufficient volume of sample at any time, take the largest quantity available and record in the logbook.

11. Add preservative if required (see SOP F301). Label, tag, and number the sample bottle(s).

12. Purgeable organics vials (40 ml) should be completely filled to prevent volatilization and extreme caution should be exercised when filling a vial to avoid turbulence which could also produce volatilization. The sample should be carefully poured down the side of the vial to minimize turbulence. As a rule, it is best to gently pour the last few drops into the vial so that surface tension holds the water in a "convex meniscus." The cap is then applied and some overflow is lost, but air space in the bottle is eliminated. After capping, turn the bottle over and tap it to check for bubbles; if any are present, repeat the procedure.

13. Replace the well cap. Make sure the well is readily identifiable as the source of the samples.

14. Pack the samples for shipping (see SOP F301). Attach custody seals to the shipping container. Make sure that Chain-of-Custody forms and Sample Analysis Request forms are properly filled out and enclosed or attached (see SOP F302).

15. Decontaminate all equipment.

5.4.2 Sample Containers

For most samples and analytical parameters, either glass or plastic containers are satisfactory. SOP F301 describes the required sampling containers for various analytes at various concentrations. Container requirements shall follow those given in NEESA 20.2-047B.

5.4.3 Preservation of Samples and Sample Volume Requirements

Sample preservation techniques and volume requirements depend on the type and concentration of the contaminant and on the type of analysis to be performed. SOP F301 describes the sample preservation and volume requirements for most of the chemicals that will be encountered during hazardous waste site investigations. Sample volume and preservation requirements shall follow those given in NEESA 20.2-047B.

5.4.4 Field Filtration

In general, preparation and preservation of water samples involve some form of filtration. All filtration must occur in the field immediately upon collection. The recommended method is through the use of a disposable in-line filtration module (0.45 micron filter) utilizing the pressure provided by the upstream pumping device for its operation.

In Region I, all inorganics are to be collected and preserved in the filtered form, including metals. In Region II, metals samples are to be collected and preserved unfiltered. In Regions III and IV, samples collected for metals analysis are also to be unfiltered. However, if metals analysis of monitoring wells is required, then both an unfiltered and filtered sample are to be collected, regardless of regulatory requirements. Filtration and preservation are to occur immediately in the field with the sample aliquot passing through a 0.45 micron filter. Samples for organic analyses shall never be filtered. Filters must be prerinsed with organic-free, deionized water.

5.4.5 Handling and Transporting Samples

After collection, samples should be handled as little as possible. It is preferable to use self-contained "chemical" ice (e.g., "blue ice") to reduce the risk of contamination. If water ice is used, it should be double-bagged and steps taken to ensure that the melted ice does not cause sample containers to be submerged, and thus possibly become cross-contaminated. All sample containers should be enclosed in plastic bags or cans to prevent cross-contamination. Samples should be secured in the ice chest to prevent movement of sample containers and possible breakage. Sample packing and transportation requirements are described in SOP F301.

5.4.6 Sample Holding Times

Holding times (i.e., allowed time between sample collection and analysis) for routine samples are given in NEESA 20.2-047B.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Quality assurance records will be maintained for each sample that is collected. The following information will be recorded in the Field Logbook:

- Sample identification (site name, location, project no.; sample name/number and location; sample type and matrix; time and date; sampler's identity).
- Sample source and source description.
- Field observations and measurements (appearance; volatile screening; field chemistry; sampling method; volume of water purged prior to sampling; number of well volumes purged).
- Sample disposition (preservatives added; lab sent to; date and time).
- Additional remarks, as appropriate.

Proper chain-of-custody procedures play a crucial role in data gathering. SOP F302 describes the requirements for correctly completing a chain-of-custody form. Chain-of-custody forms (and sample analysis request forms) are considered quality assurance records.

7.0 REFERENCES

American Society of Testing and Materials. 1987. Standard Guide for Sampling Groundwater Monitoring Wells. Method D4448-85A, Annual Book of Standards, ASTM, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

U. S. EPA, 1991. Standard Operating Procedures and Quality Assurance Manual. Environmental Compliance Branch, U. S. EPA, Environmental Services Division, Athens, Georgia.

ATTACHMENT A

ASTM D4448-85A

STANDARD GUIDE FOR SAMPLING GROUNDWATER MONITORING WELLS

Designation: D 4448 – 85a

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS
1916 Race St., Philadelphia, Pa. 19103
Reprinted from the Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Copyright ASTM
If not listed in the current combined index, will appear in the next edition

Standard Guide for Sampling Groundwater Monitoring Wells[1]

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 4448; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This guide covers procedures for obtaining valid, representative samples from groundwater monitoring wells. The scope is limited to sampling and "in the field" preservation and does not include well location, depth, well development, design and construction, screening, or analytical procedures.

1.2 This guide is only intended to provide a review of many of the most commonly used methods for sampling groundwater quality monitoring wells and is not intended to serve as a groundwater monitoring plan for any specific application. Because of the large and ever increasing number of options available, no single guide can be viewed as comprehensive. The practitioner must make every effort to ensure that the methods used, whether or not they are addressed in this guide, are adequate to satisfy the monitoring objectives at each site.

1.3 *This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of whoever uses this standard to consult and establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

2. Summary of Guide

2.1 The equipment and procedures used for sampling a monitoring well depend on many factors. These include, but are not limited to, the design and construction of the well, rate of groundwater flow, and the chemical species of interest. Sampling procedures will be different if analyzing for trace organics, volatiles, oxidizable species, or trace metals is needed. This guide considers all of these factors by discussing equipment and procedure options at each stage of the sampling sequence. For ease of organization, the sampling process can be divided into three steps: well flushing, sample withdrawal, and field preparation of samples.

2.2 Monitoring wells must be flushed prior to sampling so that the groundwater is sampled, not the stagnant water in the well casing. If the well casing can be emptied, this may be done although it may be necessary to avoid oxygen contact with the groundwater. If the well cannot be emptied, procedures must be established to demonstrate that the sample represents groundwater. Monitoring an indicative parameter such as pH during flushing is desirable if such a parameter can be identified.

2.3 The types of species that are to be monitored as well a the concentration levels are prime factors for selectin sampling devices (1, 2).[2] The sampling device and al materials and devices the water contacts must be constructec of materials that will not introduce contaminants or alter th analyte chemically in any way.

2.4 The method of sample withdrawal can vary with th parameters of interest. The ideal sampling scheme woulc employ a completely inert material, would not subject th sample to negative pressure and only moderate positive pressure, would not expose the sample to the atmosphere, o preferably, any other gaseous atmosphere before conveying i to the sample container or flow cell for on-site analysis.

2.5 The degree and type of effort and care that goes into a sampling program is always dependent on the chemica species of interest and the concentration levels of interest. A the concentration level of the chemical species of analytica interest decreases, the work and precautions necessary fo sampling are increased. Therefore, the sampling objective must clearly be defined ahead of time. For example, tc prepare equipment for sampling for mg/L (ppm) levels o Total Organic Carbon (TOC) in water is about an order o magnitude easier than preparing to sample for μg/L (ppb) levels of a trace organic like benzene. The specific precautions to be taken in preparing to sample for trace organics are different from those to be taken in sampling for trace metals. No final Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) protocol is available for sampling of trace organics. A short guidance manual, (3) and an EPA document (4) concerning monitoring well sampling, including considerations for trace organics are available.

2.6 Care must be taken not to cross contaminate samples or monitoring wells with sampling or pumping devices or materials. All samples, sampling devices, and containers must be protected from the environment when not in use. Water level measurements should be made before the well is flushed. Oxidation-reduction potential, pH, dissolved oxygen, and temperature measurements and filtration should all be performed on the sample in the field, if possible. All but temperature measurement must be done prior to any significant atmospheric exposure, if possible.

2.7 The sampling procedures must be well planned and all sample containers must be prepared and labeled prior to going to the field.

3. Significance and Use

3.1 The quality of groundwater has become an issue of national concern. Groundwater monitoring wells are one of

[1] This guide is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-34 on Waste Disposal and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D34.01 on Sampling and Monitoring.

Current edition approved Aug. 23 and Oct. 25, 1985. Published May 1986.

[2] The boldface numbers in parentheses refer to a list of references at the end of this guide.

TABLE 1 Typical Container and Preservation Requirements for a Ground-Water Monitoring Program

Sample and Measurement	Volume Required (mL)	Container P—Polyethylene G—Glass	Preservative	Maximum Holding Time
Metals As/Ba/Cd/Cr/Fe Pb/Se/Ag/Mn/Na	1000–2000	P/G (special acid cleaning)	high purity nitric acid to pH <2	6 months
Mercury	200–300	P/G (special acid cleaning)	high purity nitric acid to pH <2 +0.05 % $K_2Cr_2O_7$	28 days
Radioactivity alpha/beta/radium	4000	P/G (special acid cleaning)	high purity nitric acid to pH <2	6 months
Phenolics	500–1000	G	cool, 4°C H_2SO_4 to pH <2	28 days
Miscellaneous	1000–2000	P	cool, 4°C	28 days
Fluoride	300–500	P		28 days
Chloride	50–200	P/G		28 days
Sulfate	100–500	P/G		48 hours
Nitrate	100–250	P/G		6 h
Coliform	100	P/G		on site/24 h
Conductivity	100	P/G		on site/6 h
pH	100	P/G		48 h
Turbidity	100	P/G		
Total organic carbon (TOC)	25–100	P/G	cool, 4°C or cool, 4°C HCl or H_2SO_4 to pH <2	24 h 28 days
Pesticides, herbicides and total organic halogen (TOX)	1000–4000	G/TFE-fluorocarbon lined cap solvent rinsed	cool, 4°C	7 days/extraction +30 days/analysis
Extractable organics	1000–2000	G/TFE-fluorocarbon-lined cap solvent rinsed	cool, 4°C	7 days/extraction +30 days/analysis
Organic purgeables acrolein/acrylonitrile	25–120	G/vial TFE-fluorocarbon-lined septum	cool, 4°C	14 days 3 days

the more important tools for evaluating the quality of groundwater, delineating contamination plumes, and establishing the integrity of hazardous material management facilities.

3.2 The goal in sampling groundwater monitoring wells is to obtain samples that are truly representative of the aquifer or groundwater in question. This guide discusses the advantages and disadvantages of various well flushing, sample withdrawal, and sample preservation techniques. It reviews the parameters that need to be considered in developing a valid sampling plan.

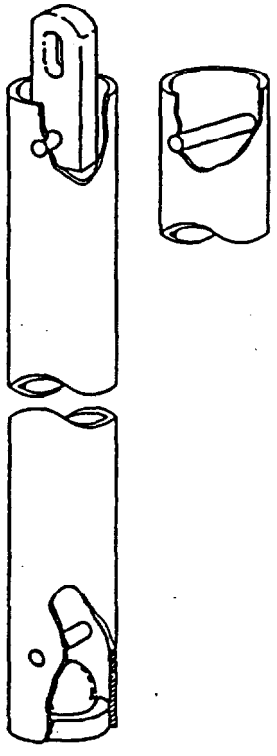
4. Well Flushing (Purging)

4.1 Water that stands within a monitoring well for a long period of time may become unrepresentative of formation water because chemical or biochemical change may cause water quality alterations and even if it is unchanged from the time it entered the well, the stored water may not be representative of formation water at the time of sampling, or both. Because the representativeness of stored water is questionable, it should be excluded from samples collected from a monitoring well.

4.2 The surest way of accomplishing this objective is to remove all stored water from the casing prior to sampling. Research with a tracer in a full scale model 2 in. PVC well (5) indicates that pumping 5 to 10 times the volume of the well via an inlet near the free water surface is sufficient to remove all the stored water in the casing. The volume of the well may be calculated to include the well screen and any gravel pack if natural flow through these is deemed insufficient to keep them flushed out.

4.3 In deep or large diameter wells having a volume of water so large as to make removal of all the water impractical, it may be feasible to lower a pump or pump inlet to some point well below the water surface, purge only the volume below that point then withdraw the sample from a deeper level. Research indicates this approach should avoid most contamination associated with stored water (5, 6, 7). Sealing the casing above the purge point with a packer may make this approach more dependable by preventing migration of stored water from above. But the packer must be above the top of the screened zone, or stagnant water from above the packer will flow into the purged zone through the well's gravel/sand pack.

4.4 In low yielding wells, the only practical way to remove all standing water may be to empty the casing. Since it is not always possible to remove all water, it may be advisable to let the well recover (refill) and empty it again at least once. If introduction of oxygen into the aquifer may be of concern, it would be best not to uncover the screen when performing the above procedures. The main disadvantage of methods designed to remove all the stored water is that large volumes may need to be pumped in certain instances. The main advantage is that the potential for contamination of samples with stored water is minimized.



NOTE—Taken from Ref (15).

FIG. 1 Single Check Valve Bailer

4.5 Another approach to well flushing is to monitor one or more indicator parameters such as pH, temperature, or conductivity and consider the well to be flushed when the indicator(s) no longer change. The advantage of this method is that pumping can be done from any location within the casing and the volume of stored water present has no direct bearing on the volume of water that must be pumped. Obviously, in a low yielding well, the well may be emptied before the parameters stabilize. A disadvantage of this approach is that there is no assurance in all situations that the stabilized parameters represent formation water. If significant drawdown has occurred, water from some distance away may be pulled into the screen causing a steady parameter reading but not a representative reading. Also, a suitable indicator parameter and means of continuously measuring it in the field must be available.

4.6 Gibb (4, 8) has described a time-drawdown approach using a knowledge of the well hydraulics to predict the percentage of stored water entering a pump inlet near the top of the screen at any time after flushing begins. Samples are taken when the percentage is acceptably low. As before, the advantage is that well volume has no direct effect in the duration of pumping. A current knowledge of the well's hydraulic characteristics is necessary to employ this approach. Downward migration of stored water due to effects other than drawdown (for example density differences) is not accounted for in this approach.

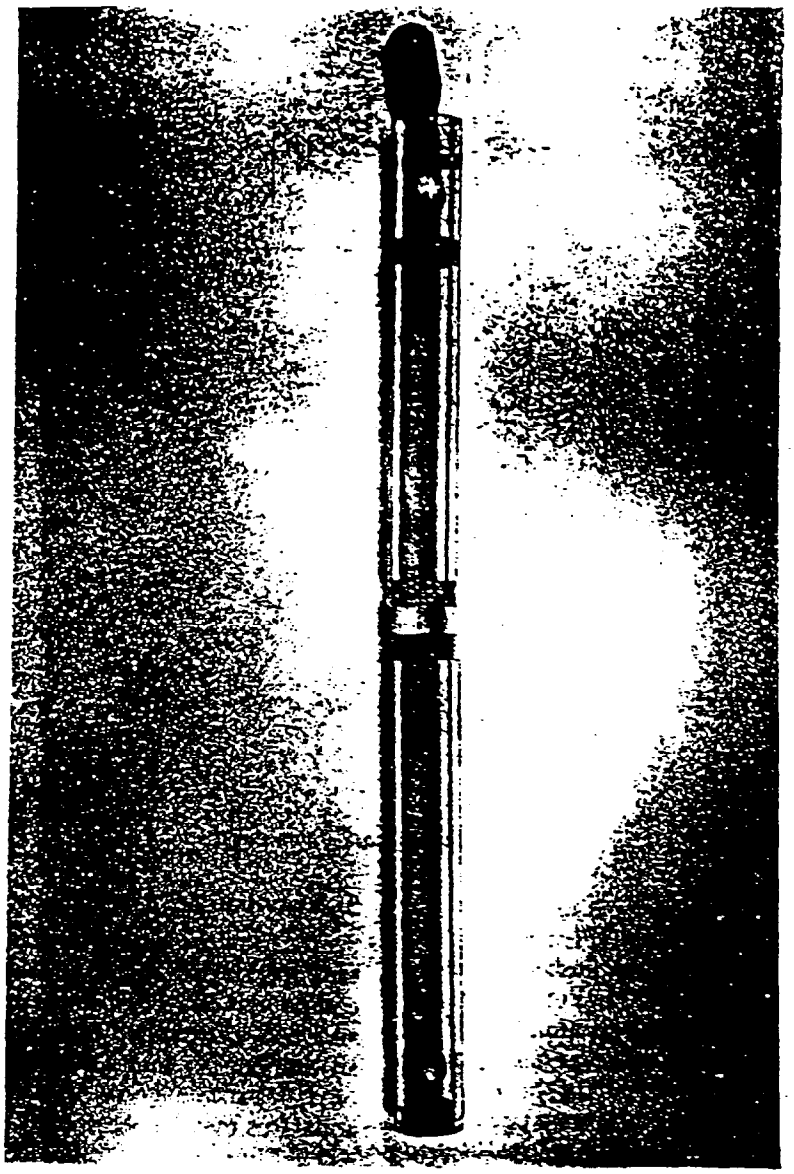
4.7 In any flushing approach, a withdrawal rate that minimizes drawdown while satisfying time constraints should be used. Excessive drawdown distorts the natural flow patterns around a well and can cause contaminants that were not present originally to be drawn into the well.

5. Materials and Manufacture

5.1 The choice of materials used in the construction of sampling devices should be based upon a knowledge of what compounds may be present in the sampling environment and how the sample materials may interact via leaching, adsorption, or catalysis. In some situations, PVC or some other plastic may be sufficient. In others, an all glass apparatus may be necessary.

5.2 Most analytical protocols suggest that the devices used in sampling and storing samples for trace organics analysis (µg/L levels) must be constructed of glass or TFE-fluorocarbon resin, or both. One suggestion advanced by the EPA is that the monitoring well be constructed so that only TFE-fluorocarbon tubing be used in that portion of the sampling well that extends from a few feet above the water table to the bottom of the borehole. (3, 5) Although this type of well casing is now commercially available, PVC well casings are currently the most popular. If adhesives are avoided, PVC well casings are acceptable in many cases although their use may still lead to some problems if trace organics are of concern. At present, the type of background presented by PVC and interactions occurring between PVC and groundwater are not well understood. Tin, in the form of an organotin stabilizer added to PVC, may enter samples taken from PVC casing. (9)

5.3 Since the most significant problem encountered in trace organics sampling, results from the use of PVC adhesives in monitoring well construction, threaded joints might avoid the problem (3, 5). Milligram per litre (parts per million) levels of compounds such as tetrahydrofuran, methyl-ethyl-ketone, and toluene are found to leach into



NOTE—Taken from Ref (17).

FIG. 2 Acrylic Point Source Bailer

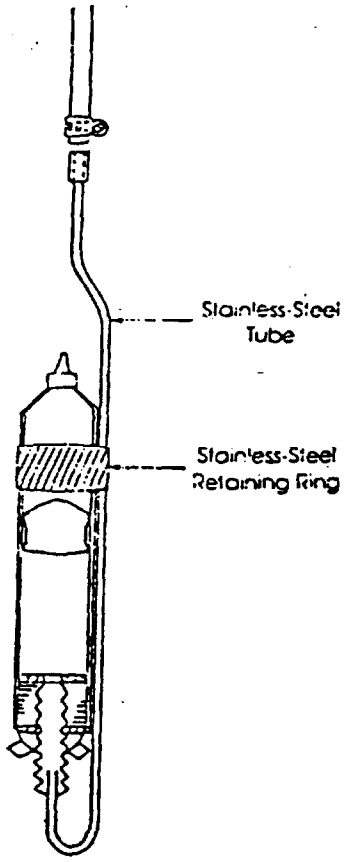
groundwater samples from monitoring well casings sealed with PVC solvent cement. Pollutant phthalate esters (8, 10) are often found in water samples at ppb levels; the EPA has found them on occasion at ppm levels in their samples. The ubiquitous presence of these phthalate esters is unexplained, except to say that they may be leached from plastic pipes, sampling devices, and containers.

5.4 TFE-fluorocarbon resins are highly inert and have sufficient mechanical strength to permit fabrication of sampling devices and well casings. Molded parts are exposed to high temperature during fabrication which destroys any organic contaminants. The evolution of fluorinated compounds can occur during fabrication, will cease rapidly, and does not occur afterwards unless the resin is heated to its melting point.

5.5 Extruded tubing of TFE-fluorocarbon for sampling may contain surface traces of an organic solvent extrusion aid. This can be removed easily by the fabricator and, once removed by flushing, should not affect the sample. TFE-fluorocarbon FEP and TFE-fluorocarbon PFA resins do not require this extrusion aid and may be suitable for sample tubing as well. Unsintered thread-sealant tape of TFE-fluorocarbon is available in an "oxygen service" grade and contains no extrusion aid and lubricant.

5.6 Louneman, et al. (11) alludes to problems caused by a lubricating oil used during TFE-fluorocarbon tubing extrusion. This reference also presents evidence that a fluorinated ethylene-propylene copolymer adsorbed acetone to a degree that later caused contamination of a gas sample.

5.7 Glass and stainless steel are two other materials generally considered inert in aqueous environments. Glass is probably among the best choices though it is not inconceivable it could adsorb some constituents as well as release other contaminants (for example, Na, silicate, and Fe). Of course, glass sampling equipment must be handled carefully in the field. Stainless steel is strongly and easily machined to



NOTE—Taken from Ref (21).

FIG. 3 Schematic of the Inverted Syringe Sampler

fabricate equipment. Unfortunately, it is not totally immune to corrosion that could release metallic contaminants. Stainless steel contains various alloying metals, some of these (for example Ni) are commonly used as catalysts for various reactions. The alloyed constituents of some stainless steels can be solubilized by the pitting action of nonoxidizing anions such as chloride, fluoride, and in some instances sulfate, over a range of pH conditions. Aluminum, titanium, polyethylene, and other corrosion resistant materials have been proposed by some as acceptable materials, depending on groundwater quality and the constituents of interest.

5.8 Where temporarily installed sampling equipment is used, the sampling device that is chosen should be nonplastic (unless TFE-fluorocarbon), cleanable of trace organics, and must be cleaned between each monitoring well use in order to avoid cross-contamination of wells and samples. The only way to ensure that the device is indeed "clean" and acceptable is to analyze laboratory water blanks and field water blanks that have been soaked in and passed through the sampling device to check for the background levels that may result from the sampling materials or from field conditions. Thus, all samplings for trace materials should be accompanied by samples which represent the field background (if possible), the sampling equipment background, and the laboratory background.

5.9 Additional samples are often taken in the field and spiked (spiked-field samples) in order to verify that the sample handling procedures are valid. The American Chemical Society's committee on environmental improvement l published guidelines for data acquisition and data evaluati which should be useful in such environmental evaluati (10, 12).

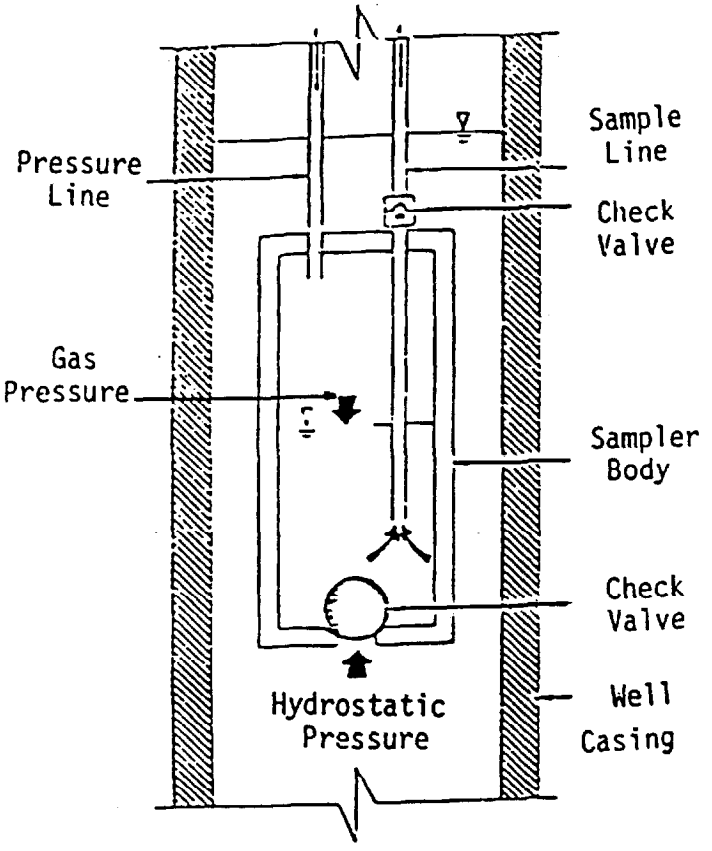
6. Sampling Equipment

6.1 There is a fairly large choice of equipment presen available for groundwater sampling from single screen wells and well clusters. The sampling devices can be cate rized into the following eight basic types.

6.1.1 *Down-Hole Collection Devices:*

6.1.1.1 Bailers, messenger bailers, or thief samplers (14) are examples of down-hole devices that probably provi valid samples once the well has been flushed. They are r practical for removal of large volumes of water. The devices can be constructed in various shapes and sizes from variety of materials. They do not subject the sample pressure extremes.

6.1.1.2 Bailers do expose part of the sample to t atmosphere during withdrawal. Bailers used for sampling volatile organic compounds should have a sample cock draft valve in or near the bottom of the sampler allowi withdrawal of a sample from the well below the expos surface of the water or the first few inches of the samp should be discarded. Suspension lines for bailers and oth samplers should be kept off the ground and free of oth contaminating materials that could be carried into the we Down-hole devices are not very practical for use in de



NOTE—Taken from Ref (5).

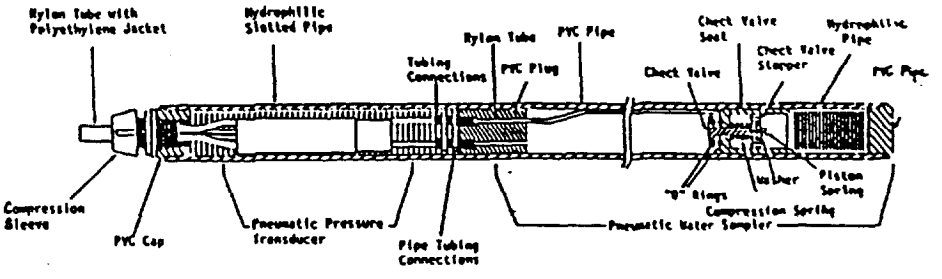
FIG. 4 The Principal of Gas Displacement Pumping

wells. However, potential sample oxidation during transfer of the sample into a collection vessel and time constraints for lowering and retrieval for deep sampling are the primary disadvantages.

6.1.1.3 Three down-hole devices are the single and double check valve bailers and thief samplers. A schematic of a single check valve unit is illustrated in Fig. 1. The bailer may be threaded in the middle so that additional lengths of blank casing may be added to increase the sampling volume. TFE-fluorocarbon or PVC are the most common materials used for construction (15).

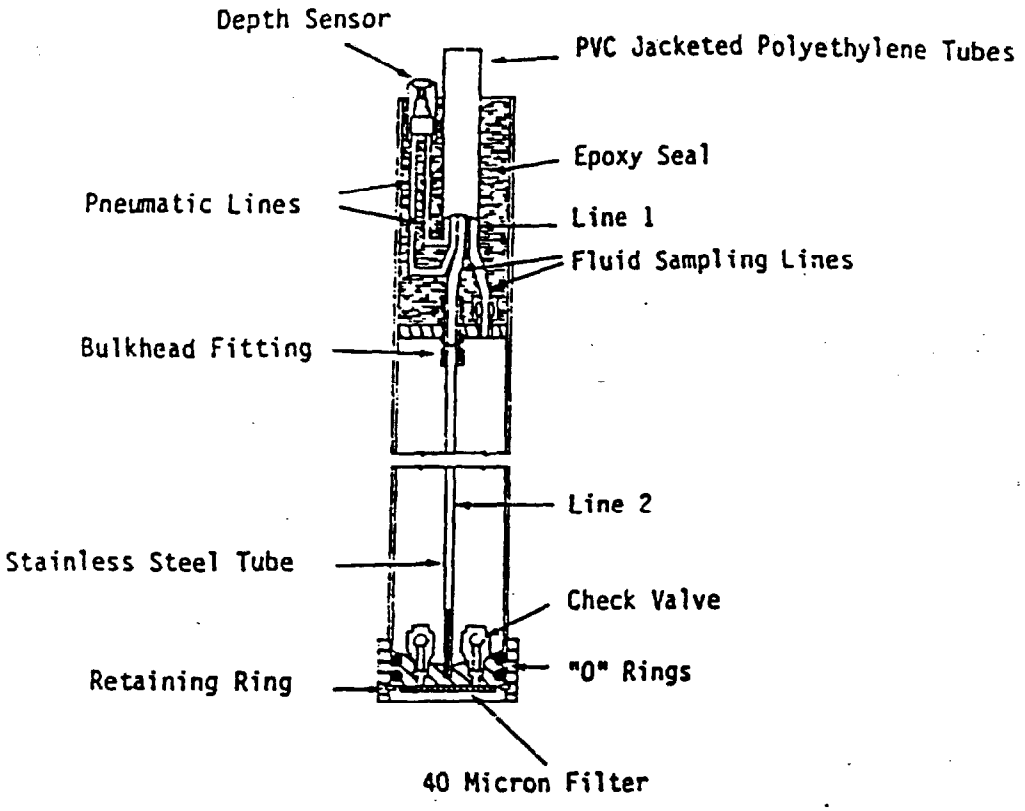
6.1.1.4 In operation, the single check valve bailer is lowered into the well, water enters the chamber through the bottom, and the weight of the water column closes the check valve upon bailer retrieval. The specific gravity of the ball should be about 1.4 to 2.0 so that the ball almost sits on the check valve seat during chamber filling. Upon bailer withdrawal, the ball will immediately seat without any samples loss through the check valve. A similar technique involves lowering a sealed sample container within a weighted bottle into the well. The stopper is then pulled from the bottle via a line and the entire assembly is retrieved upon filling of the container (14, 16).

6.1.1.5 A double check valve bailer allows point source sampling at a specific depth (15, 17). An example is shown in Fig. 2. In this double check valve design, water flows through the sample chamber as the unit is lowered. A venturi tapered inlet and outlet ensures that water passes freely through the



NOTE—Taken from Ref (41).

FIG. 5 Pneumatic Water Sampler With Internal Transducer



NOTE—Taken from Ref (42).

FIG. 6 Pneumatic Sampler With Externally Mounted Transducer

unit. When a depth where the sample is to be collected is reached, the unit is retrieved. Because the difference between each ball and check valve seat is maintained by a pin that blocks vertical movement of the check ball, both check valves close simultaneously upon retrieval. A drainage pin is placed into the bottom of the bailer to drain the sample directly into a collection vessel to reduce the possibility of air oxidation. The acrylic model in Fig. 2 is threaded at the midsection allowing the addition of threaded casing to increase the sampling volume.

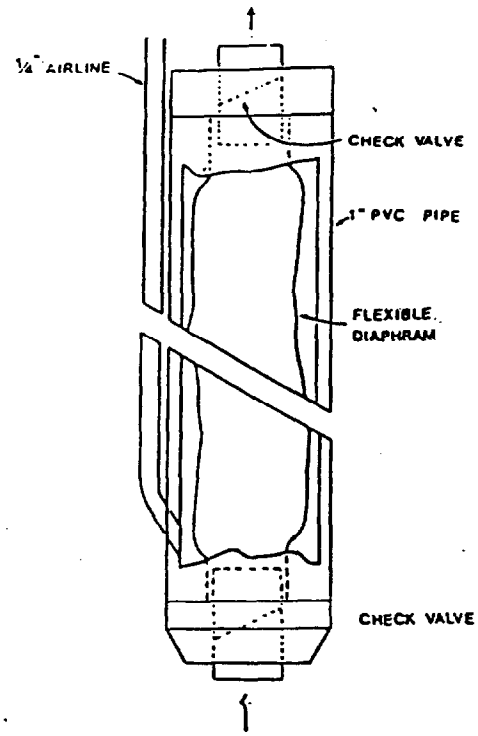
6.1.1.6 Another approach for obtaining point source samples employs a weighted messenger or pneumatic change to "trip" plugs at either end of an open tube (for example, tube water sampler or thief sampler) to close the chamber (18). Foerst, Kemmerer, and Bacon samplers are of this variety (14, 17, 19). A simple and inexpensive pneumatic sampler was recently described by Gillham (20). The device (Fig. 3) consists of a disposable 50 mL plastic syringe modified by sawing off the plunger and the finger grips. The syringe is then attached to a gas-line by means of a rubber stopper assembly. The gas-line extends to the surface, and is used to drive the stem-less plunger, and to raise and lower the syringe into the hole. When the gas-line is pressurized, the rubber plunger is held at the tip of the syringe. The sampler is then lowered into the installation, and when the desired depth is reached, the pressure in the gas-line is reduced to atmospheric (or slightly less) and water enters the syringe. The sampler is then retrieved from the installation and the syringe detached from the gas-line. After the tip is sealed, the syringe is used as a short-term storage container. A number of thief or messenger devices are available in vario materials and shapes.

6.1.2 *Suction Lift Pumps:*

6.1.2.1 Three types of suction lift pumps are the dire line, centrifugal, and peristaltic. A major disadvantage of a suction pump is that it is limited in its ability to raise wat by the head available from atmospheric pressure. Thus, if t surface of the water is more than about 25 ft below t pump, water may not be withdrawn. The theoretical suctio limit is about 34 ft, but most suction pumps are capable maintaining a water lift of only 25 ft or less.

6.1.2.2 Many suction pumps draw the water throug some sort of volute in which impellers, pistons, or oth devices operate to induce a vacuum. Such pumps a probably unacceptable for most sampling purposes becau they are usually constructed of common materials such brass or mild steel and may expose samples to lubricant They often induce very low pressures around rotating van or other such parts such that degassing or even cavitatio may occur. They can mix air with the sample via small lea in the casing, and they are difficult to adequately clea between uses. Such pumps are acceptable for purging wells, but should not generally be used for sampling.

6.1.2.3 One exception to the above statements is a per staltic pump. A peristaltic pump is a self-priming, lo volume suction pump which consists of a rotor with ba bearing rollers (21). Flexible tubing is inserted around th pump rotor and squeezed by heads as they revolve in circular pattern around the rotor. One end of the tubing placed into the well while the other end can be connecte



NOTE—Taken from Ref (4).

FIG. 7 Bladder Pump

directly to a receiving vessel. As the rotor moves, a reduced pressure is created in the well tubing and an increased pressure (<40 psi) on the tube leaving the rotor head. A drive shaft connected to the rotor head can be extended so that multiple rotor heads can be attached to a single drive shaft.

6.1.2.4 The peristaltic pump moves the liquid totally within the sample tube. No part of the pump contacts the liquid. The sample may still be degassed (cavitation is unlikely) but the problems due to contact with the pump mechanism are eliminated. Peristaltic pumps do require a fairly flexible section of tubing within the pumphead itself. A section of silicone tubing is commonly used within the peristaltic pumphead, but other types of tubing can be used particularly for the sections extending into the well or from the pump to the receiving container. The National Council of the Paper Industry for Air and Stream Improvement (22) recommends using medical grade silicone tubing for organic sampling purposes as the standard grade uses an organic vulcanizing agent which has been shown to leach into samples. Medical grade silicone tube is, however, limited to use over a restricted range of ambient temperatures. Various manufacturers offer tubing lined with TFE-fluorocarbon or Viton[3] for use with their pumps. Gibb (1, 8) found little difference between samples withdrawn by a peristaltic pump and those taken by a bailer.

6.1.2.5 A direct method of collecting a sample by suction consists of lowering one end of a length of plastic tubing into the well or piezometer. The opposite end of the tubing is connected to a two way stopper bottle and a hand held or mechanical vacuum pump is attached to a second tubing leaving the bottle. A check valve is attached between the two lines to maintain a constant vacuum control. A sample can then be drawn directly into the collection vessel without contacting the pump mechanism (5, 23, 24).

6.1.2.6 A centrifugal pump can be attached to a length of plastic tubing that is lowered into the well. A foot valve is usually attached to the end of the well tubing to assist in priming the tube. The maximum lift is about 4.6 m (15 ft) for such an arrangement (23, 25, 26).

6.1.2.7 Suction pump approaches offer a simple sample retrieval method for shallow monitoring. The direct line method is extremely portable though considerable oxidation and mixing may occur during collection. A centrifugal pump will agitate the sample to an even greater degree although pumping rates of 19 to 151 Lpm (5 to 40 gpm) can be attained. A peristaltic pump provides a lower sampling rate with less agitation than the other two pumps. The withdrawal rate of peristaltic pumps can be carefully regulated by adjustment of the rotor head revolution.

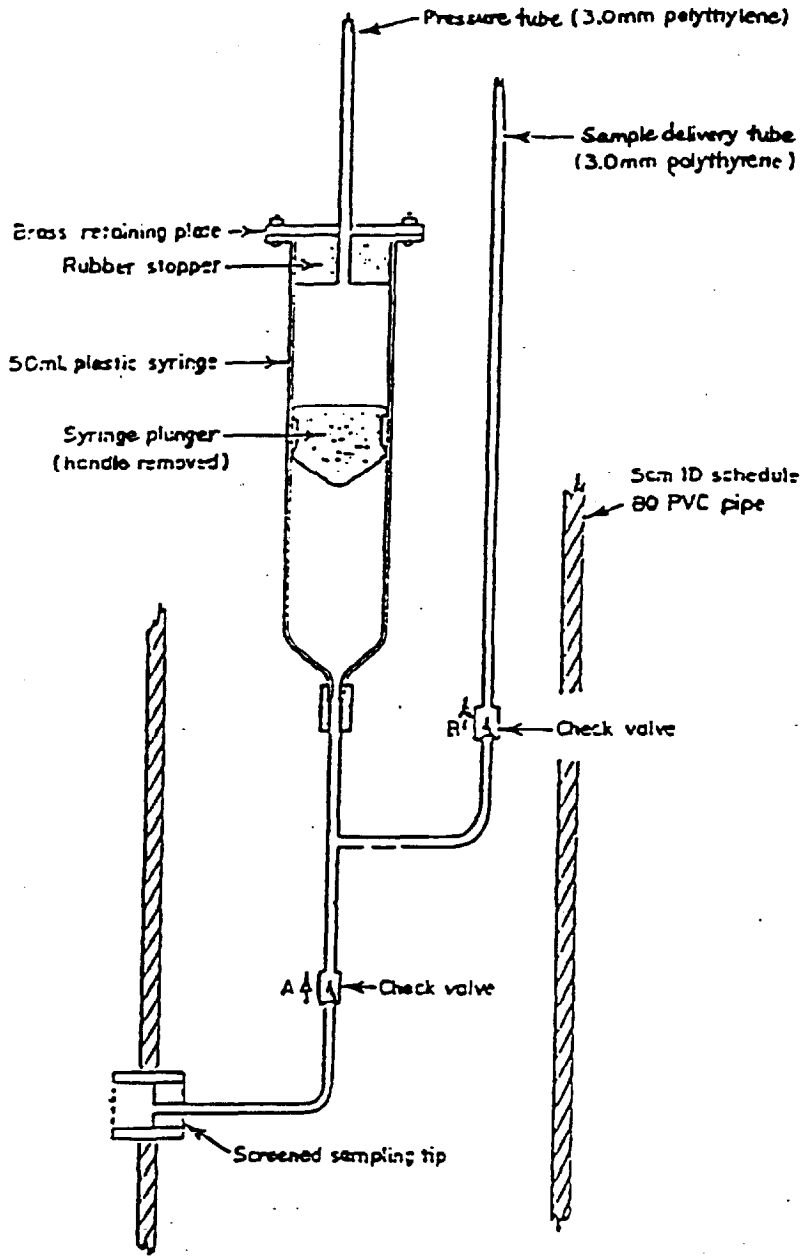
6.1.2.8 All three systems can be specially designed so that the water sample contacts only the TFE flourocarbon or silicone tubing prior to sample bottle entry. Separate tubing is recommended for each well or piezometer sampled.

6.1.3 *Electric Submersible Pumps:*

6.1.3.1 A submersible pump consists of a sealed electric motor that powers a piston or helical single thread worm at a high rpm. Water is brought to the surface through an access tube. Such pumps have been used in the water well industry for years and many designs exist (5, 26).

6.1.3.2 Submersible pumps provide relatively high discharge rates for water withdrawal at depths beyond suction

[3] Viton is a trademark of E. I. du Pont de Nemours & Co., Wilmington, DE 19898 and has been found suitable for this purpose.



NOTE—Taken from Ref (48).

FIG. 8 Positive Displacement Syringe Pump

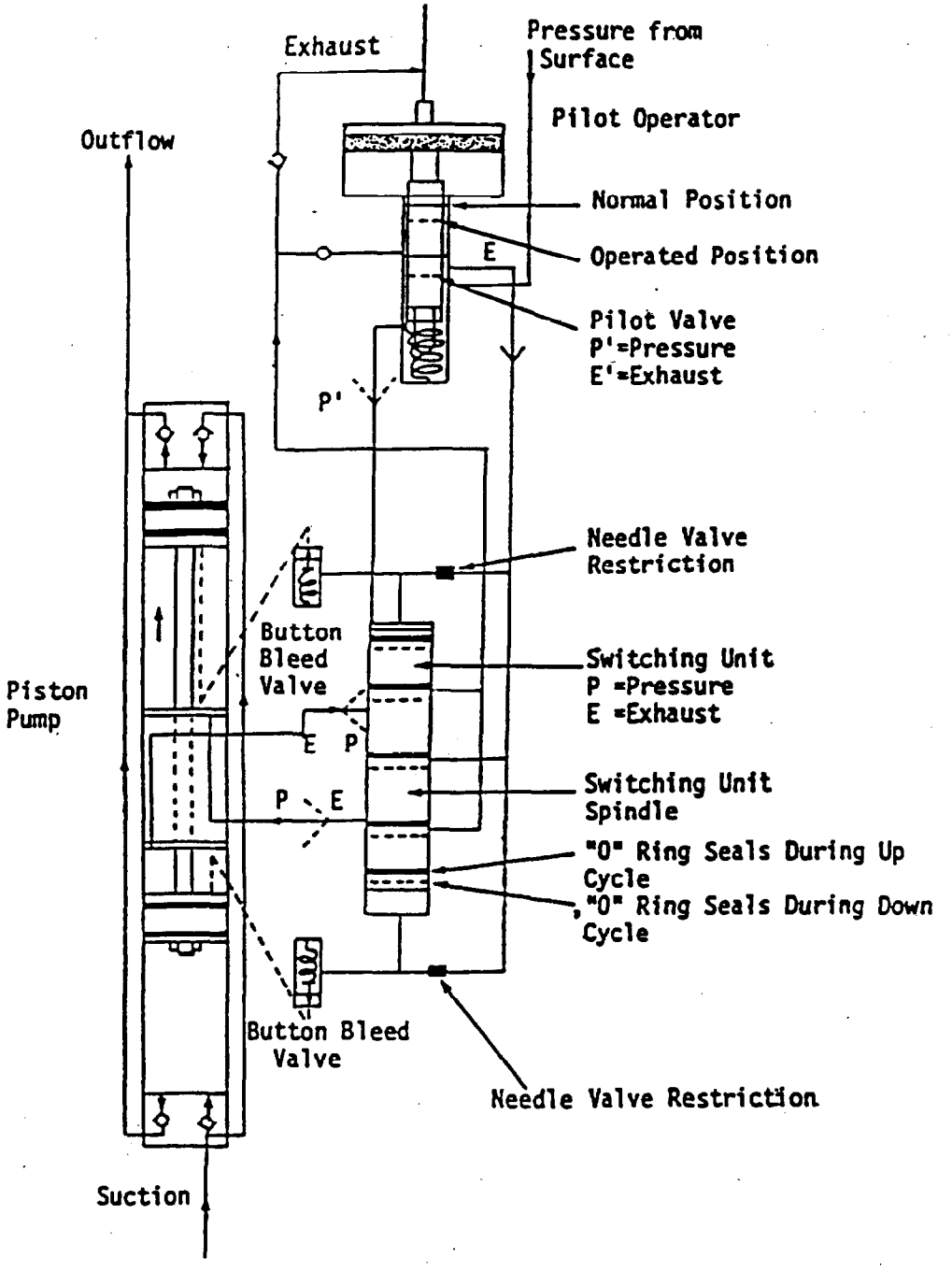
lift capabilities. A battery operated unit 3.6 cm (1.4 in.) in diameter and with a 4.5 Lpm (1.2 gpm) flow rate at 33.5 m (110 ft) has been developed (27). Another submersible pump has an outer diameter of 11.4 cm (4.5 in.) and can pump water from 91 m (300 ft). Pumping rates vary up to 53.0 Lpm (14 gpm) depending upon the depth of the pump (28).

6.1.3.3 A submersible pump provides higher extraction rates than many other methods. Considerable sample agitation results, however, in the well and in the collection tube during transport. The possibility of introducing trace metals into the sample from pump materials also exists. Steam cleaning of the unit followed by rinsing with unchlorinated, deionized water is suggested between sampling when analysis for organics in the parts per million (ppm) or parts per billion (ppb) range is required (29).

6.1.4 *Gas-Lift Pumps:*

6.1.4.1 Gas-lift pumps use compressed air to bring a wate sample to the surface. Water is forced up an eductor pip that may be the outer casing or a smaller diameter pip inserted into the well annulus below the water level (30, 31)

6.1.4.2 A similar principle is used for a unit that consist of a small diameter plastic tube perforated in the lower end This tube is placed within another tube of slightly large diameter. Compressed air is injected into the inner tube; th air bubbles through the perforations, thereby lifting the wate sample via the annulus between the outer and inner tubin (32). In practice, the eductor line should be submerged to depth equal to 60 % of the total submerged eductor lengt during pumping (26). A 60 % ratio is considered optima although a 30 % submergence ratio is adequate.



NOTE—Taken from Ref (49).

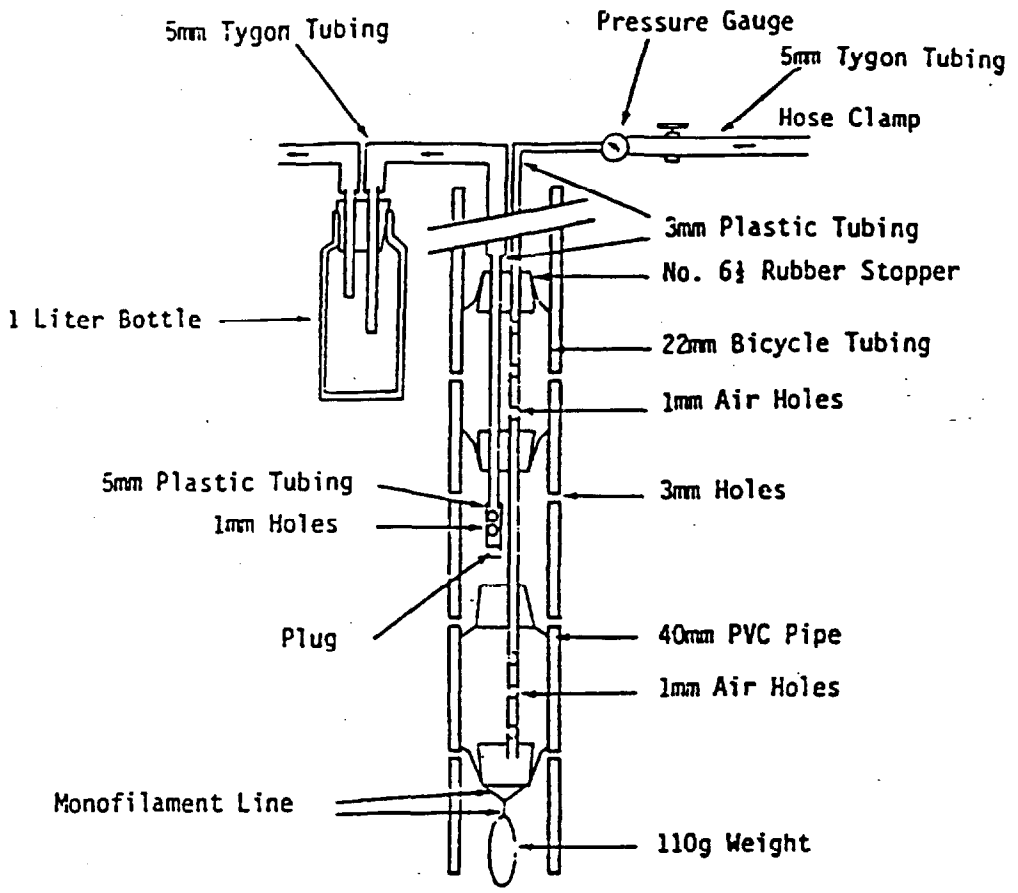
FIG. 9 Gas Driven Piston Pump

6.1.4.3 The source of compressed gas may be a hand pump for depths generally less than 7.6 m (25 ft). For greater depths, air compressors, pressurized air bottles, and air compressed from an automobile engine have been used.

6.1.4.4 As already mentioned, gas-lift methods result in considerable sample agitation and mixing within the well, and cannot be used for samples which will be tested for volatile organics. The eductor pipe or weighted plastic tubing is a potential source of sample contamination. In addition, Gibb (8) uncovered difficulties in sampling for inorganics. These difficulties were attributed to changes in redox, pH, and species transformation due to solubility constant changes resulting from stripping, oxidation, and pressure changes.

6.1.5 *Gas Displacement Pumps:*

6.1.5.1 Gas displacement or gas drive pumps are distinguished from gas-lift pumps by the method of sample transport. Gas displacement pumps force a discrete column of water to the surface via mechanical lift without extensive mixing of the pressurized gas and water as occurs with air-lift equipment. The principle is shown schematically in Fig. 4. Water fills the chamber. A positive pressure is applied to the



NOTE—Taken from Ref (53).

FIG. 10 Packer Pump Arrangement

gas line closing the sampler check valve and forcing water up the sample line. By removing the pressure the cycle can be repeated. Vacuum can also be used in conjunction with the gas (30). The device can be permanently installed in the well (33, 34, 35) or lowered into the well (36, 37).

6.1.5.2 A more complicated two stage design constructed of glass with check valves made of TFE-fluorocarbon has been constructed (38, 39). The unit was designed specifically for sample testing for trace level organics. Continuous flow rates up to 2.3 Lpm (0.6 gpm) are possible with a 5.1 cm (2 in.) diameter unit.

6.1.5.3 Gas displacement pumps have also been developed with multiple functions. The water sample in Fig. 5 provides piezometric data measurements with an internally mounted transducer (40). A sample with its transducer exposed externally for piezometric measurements is illustrated in Fig. 6 (41). The sensor can activate the gas source at the surface to cause sample chamber pressurization at the predetermined depth. Another design can be used as a water sampler or as a tool for injecting brine or other tracers into a well (42).

6.1.5.4 Gas displacement pumps offer reasonable potential for preserving sample integrity because little of the driving gas comes in contact with the sample as the sample is conveyed to the surface by a positive pressure. There is, however, a potential loss of dissolved gasses or contamination from the driving gas and the housing materials.

6.1.6 *Bladder Pumps:*

6.1.6.1 Bladder pumps, also referred to as gas-operatec squeeze pumps, consist of a flexible membrane enclosed by a rigid housing. Water enters the membrane through a checl valve in the vessel bottom; compressed gas injected into th cavity between the housing and bladder forces the sampl through a check valve at the top of the membrane and into discharge line (Fig. 7). Water is prevented from re-enterin the bladder by the top check valve. The process is repeated t cycle the water to the surface. Samples taken from depths o 30.5 m (100 ft) have been reported.

6.1.6.2 A variety of design modifications and material are available (43, 44). Bladder materials include neopren rubber, ethylene propylene terpolymer (E.P.T.), nitrile, an the fluorocarbon Viton.[3] A bladder made of TFE-fluor carbon is also under development (45). Automated samplin systems have been developed to control the time betwee pressurization cycles (46).

6.1.6.3 Bladder pumps provide an adaptable samplir tool due primarily to the number of bladder shapes that a feasible. These devices have a distinct advantage over g displacement pumps in that there is no contact with t driving gas. Disadvantages include the large gas volum required, low pumping rates, and potential contaminatic from many of the bladder materials, the rigid housing, both.

6.1.7 *Gas Driven Piston Pumps:*

6.1.7.1 A simple and inexpensive example of a gas driven piston pump is a syringe pump (47). The pump (Fig. 8) is constructed from a 50 mL plastic syringe with plunger stem removed. The device is connected to a gas line to the surface and the sample passes through a check valve arrangement to a sampling container at the surface. By successively applying positive and negative pressure to the gas-line, the plunger is activated driving water to the surface.

6.1.7.2 A double piston pump powered by compressed air is illustrated in Fig. 9. Pressurized gas enters the chamber between the pistons; the alternating chamber pressurization activates the piston which allows water entry during the suction stroke of the piston and forces the sample to the surface during the pressure stroke (48). Pumping rates between 9.5 and 30.3 L/hr (2.5 to 8 gal/hr) have been reported from 30.5 m (100 ft). Depths in excess of 457 m (1500 ft) are possible.

6.1.7.3 The gas piston pump provides continuous sample withdrawal at depths greater than is possible with most other approaches. Nevertheless, contribution of trace elements from the stainless steel and brass is a potential problem and the quantity of gas used is significant.

6.1.8 *Packer Pump Arrangement:*

6.1.8.1 A packer pump arrangement provides a means by which two expandable "packers" isolate a sampling unit between two packers within a well. Since the hydraulic or pneumatic activated packers are wedged against the casing wall or screen, the sampling unit will obtain water samples only from the isolated well portion. The packers are deflated for vertical movement within the well and inflated when the desired depth is attained. Submersible, gas lift, and suction pumps can be used for sampling. The packers are usually constructed from some type of rubber or rubber compound (48, 49, 50, 51). A packer pump unit consisting of a vacuum sampler positioned between two packers is illustrated in Fig. 10 (52).

6.1.8.2 A packer assembly allows the isolation of discrete sampling points within a well. A number of different samplers can be situated between the packers depending upon the analytical specifications for sample testing. Vertical movement of water outside the well casing during sampling is possible with packer pumps but depends upon the pumping rate and subsequent disturbance. Deterioration of the expandable materials will occur with time with the increased possibility of undesirable organic contaminants contributing to the water sample.

7. Sample Containers and Preservation

7.1 Complete and unequivocal preservation of samples, whether domestic wastewater, industrial wastes, or natural waters, is practically impossible. At best, preservation techniques only retard the chemical and biological changes that inevitably continue after the sample is removed from the source. Therefore, insuring the timely analysis of a sample should be one of the forrmost considerations in the sampling plan schedule. Methods of preservation are somewhat limited and are intended to retard biological action, retard hydrolysis of chemical compounds and complexes, and reduce the volatility of constituents. Preservation methods are generally limited to pH control, chemical addition, refrigeration and freezing. For water samples, immediate refrigeration just above freezing (4°C in wet ice) is often the best preservation technique available, but it is not the only measure nor is it applicable in all cases. There may be special cases where it might be prudent to include a recording thermometer in the sample shipment to verify the maximum and minimum temperature to which the samples were exposed. Inexpensive devices for this purpose are available.

7.2 All bottles and containers must be specially precleaned, pre-labelled, and organized in ice-chests (isolating samples and sampling equipment from the environment) before one goes into the field. Otherwise, in any comprehensive program utter chaos usually develops in the field or laboratory. The time in the field is very valuable and should be spent on taking field notes, measurements, and in documenting samples, not on labelling and organizing samples. Therefore, the sampling plan should include clear instructions to the sampling personnel concerning the information required in the field data record logbook (notebook), the information needed on container labels for identification, the chain-of-custody protocols, and the methods for preparing field blanks and spiked samples. Example of detailed plans and documentation procedures have been published (14, 53).

7.3 The exact requirements for the volumes of sample needed and the number of containers to use may vary from laboratory to laboratory. This will depend on the specific analyses to be performed, the concentration levels of interest, and the individual laboratory protocols. The manager of the sampling program should make no assumptions about the laboratory analyses. He should discuss the analytical requirements of the sampling program in detail with the laboratory coordinator beforehand. This is especially the case since some analyses and preservation measures must be performed at the laboratory as soon as possible after the samples arrive. Thus, appropriate arrangements must be made.

7.4 There are a number of excellent references available which list the containers and preservation techniques appropriate for water and soils (13, 14, 50, 54, 55, 56). The "Handbook for Sampling and Sample Preservation of Water and Wastewater" is an excellent reference and perhaps the most comprehensive one (14). Some of this information is summarized in Table 1.

7.5 Sample containers for trace organic samples require special cleaning and handling considerations (57). The sample container for purgeable organics consist of a screw-cap vial (25 to 125 mL) fitted with a TFE-flourocarbon faced silicone septum. The vial is sealed in the laboratory immediately after cleaning and is only opened in the field just prior to pouring sample into it. The water sample then must be sealed into the vial headspace free (no air bubbles) and immediately cooled (4°C) for shipment. Multiple samples (usually about four taken from one large sample container) are taken because leakage of containers may cause losses, may allow air to enter the containers, and may cause erroneous analysis of some constituents. Also, some analyses are best conducted on independent protected samples.

7.6 The purgeable samples must be analyzed by the laboratory within 14 days after collection, unless they are to be analyzed for acrolein or acrylonitrile (in which case they are to be analyzed within 3 days). For samples for solvent extractions (extractable organics-base neutrals, acids and

pesticides), the sample bottles are narrow mouth, screw cap quart bottles or half-gallon bottles that have been precleaned, rinsed with the extracting organic solvent and oven dried at 105°C for at least 1 h. These bottles must be sealed with TFE-fluorocarbon lined caps (Note). Samples for organic extraction must be extracted within 7 days and analyzed within 30 days after extraction. Special pre-cleaned, solvent rinsed and oven-dried stainless steel beakers (one for each monitoring well) may be used for transferring samples from the sampling device to the sample containers.

NOTE—When collecting samples, the bottles should not be overfilled or prerinsed with sample before filling because oil and other materials may remain in the bottle. This can cause erroneously high results.

7.7 For a number of groundwater parameters, the most meaningful measurements are those made in the field at the time of sample collection or at least at an on-site laboratory. These include the water level in the well and parameters that sometimes can change rapidly with storage. A discussion of the various techniques for measuring the water level in the well is contained in a NCASI publication (5) and detailed procedures are outlined in a U.S. Geological Survey publication (58). Although a discussion of these techniques is beyond the scope of this guide, it is important to point out that accurate measurements must be made before a well is flushed or only after it has had sufficient time to recover. Parameters that can change rapidly with storage include specific conductance, pH, turbidity, redox potential, dissolved oxygen, and temperature. For some of the other parameters, the emphasis in groundwater monitoring is on the concentration of each specific dissolved component, not the total concentration of each. Samples for these types of measurements should be filtered through 0.45 μm membrane filters ideally in the field or possibly at an on-site laboratory as soon as possible. Analyses often requiring filtered samples include all metals, radioactivity parameters, total organic carbon, dissolved orthophosphate (if needed) and total dissolved phosphorous (if needed) (13, 14). If metals are to be analyzed, filter the sample prior to acid preservation. For TOC organics, the filter material should be tested to assure that it does not contribute to the TOC. The type or size of the filter to be used is not well understood. However, if results of metal, TOC or other parameters that could be effected by solids are to be compared, the same filtering procedure must be used in each case. Repeated analytical results should state whether the samples were filtered and how they were filtered.

7.8 Shipment and receipt of samples must be coordinated with the laboratory to minimize time in transit. All samples for organic analysis (and many other parameters), should arrive at the laboratory within one day after it is shipped and be maintained at about 4°C with wet ice. The best way to get them to the laboratory in good condition is to send them in sturdy insulated ice chests (coolers) equipped with bottle dividers. 24-h courier service is recommended, if personal delivery service is not practical.

REFERENCES

(1) Gibb, J. P., Schuller, R. M., Griffin, R. A., *Monitoring Well Sampling and Preservation Techniques*, EPA-600/9-80-101, 1980.

(2) Pettyjohn, W. A., Dunlap, W. J., Cosby, R. L., Keeley, J. W., "Sampling Ground Water for Organic Contaminants," *Ground Water*, Vol 19, (2), March/April 1981, pp. 180–189.

(3) Dunlap, W. J., McNabb, J. F., Scalf, M. R., Cosby, R. L., *Sampling for Organic Chemicals and Microorganisms in the Subsurface*, EPA-600/2-77-176, NTIS PB 276 679, August 1977, 35 pp.

(4) Scalf, M. R., McNabb, J. F., Dunlap, W. J., and Cosby, R. L., *Manual of Ground Water Quality Sampling Procedures*, National Water Well Association, NTIS PB-82 103 045, 1981.

(5) "A Guide to Groundwater Sampling," *NCASI Technical Bulletin*, No. 362, January 1982.

(6) Humenick, M. J., Turk, L. J., Coldrin, M., "Methodology for Monitoring Ground Water at Uranium Solution Mines," *Ground Water*, Vol 18 (3), May–June 1980, p. 262.

(7) Marsh, J. M., and Lloyd, J. W., "Details of Hydrochemical Variations in Flowing Wells," *Ground Water*, Volume 18 (4), July–August 1980, p. 366.

(8) Gibb, J. P., Schuller, R. M., Griffin, R. A., "Collection of Representative Water Quality Data from Monitoring Wells," *Proceeding of the Municipal Solid Waste Resource Recovery Symposium*, EPA-600/9-81-002A, March 1981.

(9) Boettner, E. A., Gwendolyn, L. B., Zand, H., Aquino, R., *Organic and Organotin Compounds Leached from PVC and CPVC Pipe*, NTIS P8 82-108 333, 1982.

(10) Junk, G. A., Svec, H. J., Vick, R. D., Avery, M. J., "Contamination of Water by Synthetic Polymer Tubes," *Environmental Science and Technology*, Vol 8 (13) 1100, December 1974.

(11) Louneman, W. A., Bufalini, J. J., Kuntz, R. L., and Meeks, S. A., "Contamination from Fluorocarbon Films," *Environmental Science and Technology*, Vol 15 (1), January 1981.

(12) ASC Committee on Environmental Improvement, "Guidelines for Data Acquisition and Data Quality Evaluation in Environmental Chemistry," *Analytical Chemistry*, Vol 52, 1980, pp. 2242–2249.

(13) *Procedures Manual for Ground Water Monitoring at Solid Waste Disposal Facilities*, EPA/530/SW-611, August 1977.

(14) *Handbook for Sampling and Sample Preservation of Water and Wastewater*, U.S. Dept. of Commerce NTIS PB-259 946, September 1976.

(15) Timco Manufacturing Co., Inc., "Variable Capacity Bailer," *Timco Geotechnical Catalogue*, Prairie du Sac, WI, 1982.

(16) deVera, E., Simmons, B., Stephens, R., Storm, D., *Samplers and Sampling Procedures for Hazardous Waste Streams*, Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/2-80-018, 1980, p. 51.

(17) Morrison, R., *Ground Water Monitoring Technology*, Timco Manufacturing Co., 1982, p. 276.

(18) Eijelkamp, "Equipment for Soil Research," *General Catalogue*, Geisbeek, The Netherlands, 1979, pp. 82–83.

(19) Wood, W., "Guidelines for Collection and Field Analysis of Ground-Water Samples for Selected Unstable Constituents," *Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations of the United States Geological Survey*, Chapter D2, 1976, p. 24.

(20) Gilham, R. W., "Syringe Devices for Groundwater Monitoring," *Ground Water Monitoring Review*, Vol 2 (2), Spring 1982, p. 36.

(21) Masterflex, *Masterflex Pump Catalogue*, Barnant Corp., Barrington, IL, 1981.

(22) "Guidelines for Contracting Sampling and Analyses for Priority Pollutants in Pulp and Paper Industry Effluents," *NCASI Stream Improvement Technical Bulletin*, No. 335, August 1980.

(23) Allison, L., "A Simple Device for Sampling Ground Water in Auger Holes," *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings* 35: 844–45, 1971.

(24) Willardson, L., Meek, B., Huber, M., "A Flow Path Ground Water

Sampler," *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings* 36: 965–66, 1972.

(25) Wilson, L., *Monitoring in the Vadose Zone: A Review of Technical Elements and Methods*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-60017-80-134, 1980, p. 180.

(26) *Ground Water and Wells*, Johnson, E. E., Inc., St. Paul, MN, 1980, p. 440.

(27) Keck, W. G. and Associates, *New "Keck" Submersible Water Sampling Pump for Groundwater Monitoring*, Keck, W. G. and Associates, East Lansing, MI, 1981.

(28) McMillion, L., and Keeley, J. W., "Sampling Equipment for Ground-Water Investigation," *Ground Water*, Vol 6, 1968, pp. 9–11.

(29) Industrial and Environmental Analysts, Inc., *Procedures and Equipment for Groundwater Monitoring*, Industrial and Environmental Analysts, Inc., Essex Junction, VT, 1981.

(30) Trescott, P., and Pinder, G., "Air Pump for Small-Diameter Piezometers," *Ground Water*, Vol 8, 1970, pp. 10–15.

(31) Sommerfeldt, T., and Campbell, D., "A Pneumatic System to Pump Water From Piezometers," *Ground Water*, Vol 13, p. 293.

(32) Smith, A., "Water Sampling Made Easier with New Device," *The Johnson Drillers Journal*, July–August 1976, pp. 1–2.

(33) Morrison, R., and Ross, D., "Monitoring for Groundwater Contamination at Hazardous Waste Disposal Sites," *Proceedings of 1978 National Conference on Control of Hazardous Material Spills*, April 13, Miami Beach, FL, 1968, pp. 281–286.

(34) Morrison, R., and Brewer, P. "Air-Lift Samplers for Zone-of-Saturation Monitoring," *Ground Water Monitoring Review*, Spring 1981, pp. 52–54.

(35) Morrison, R., and Timmons, R., "Groundwater Monitoring II," *Groundwater Digest*, Vol 4, 1981, pp. 21–24.

(36) Bianchi, W. C., Johnson, C., Haskell, E., "A Positive Action Pump for Sampling Small Bore Holes," *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings*, Vol 26, 1961, pp. 86–87.

(37) Timmons, R., Discussion of "An All-Teflon Bailer and An Air-Driven Pump for Evacuating Small-Diameter Ground-Water Wells" by D. Buss and K. Bandt, *Ground Water*, Vol 19, 1981, pp. 666–667.

(38) Timco Manufacturing Co., Inc., "Gas Lift Teflon Pump," *Timco Geotechnical Catalogue*, Prairie du Sac, WI, 1982.

(39) Tomson, M., King, K., Ward, C., "A Nitrogen Powered Continuous Delivery, All Glass Teflon Pumping System for Groundwater Sampling from Below 10 Meters," *Ground Water*, Vol 18, 1980, pp. 444–446.

(40) *Pneumatic Water Sampler*, Slope Indicator Co., Seattle, WA, 1982.

(41) Petur Instrument Co., Inc., *Petur Liquid Sampler*, Petur Instrument Co., Inc., Seattle, WA, 1982.

(42) Idler, G., "Modification of an Electronic Downhole Water Sampler," *Ground Water*, Vol 18, 1980, pp. 532–535.

(43) *Remote Sampler Model 200*, Markland Specialty Engineering, Ltd., Etobicoke, Ontario, Bulletin 200/78, 1978.

(44) Middleburg, R., "Methods for Sampling Small Diameter Wells for Chemical Quality Analysis," *Presented at the National Conference on Quality Assurance of Environmental Measurements*, Nov. 27–29, Denver, CO, 1978.

(45) *Air Squeeze Pump*, Leonard Mold and Die Works, Denver, CO, 1982.

(46) *Automatic Sampler Controller: Markland Model 105 and 2105*, Markland Specialty Engineering, Ltd., Etobicoke, Ontario, Bulletin 105/78, 1981.

(47) Gillham, R. W., and Johnson, P. E., "A Positive Displacement Ground-Water Sampling Device," *Ground Water Monitoring Review*, Vol 1 (2), Summer 1981, p. 33.

(48) Signor, D., "Gas-Driven Pump for Ground-Water Samples," *U.S. Geological Survey, Water Resources Investigation 78–72*, Open File Report, 1978.

(49) *Tigre Tierra HX Pneumatic Packer*, Tigre Tierra, Inc., Puyallup, WA, 1981.

(50) Cherry, R., "A Portable Sampler for Collecting Water Samples from Specific Zones in Uncased or Screened Wells," *U.S. Geological Survey*, Prof. Paper 25-C, 1965, pp. 214–216.

(51) Grisak, G., Merritt, W., Williams, D., "Fluoride Borehole Dilution Apparatus for Groundwater Velocity Measurements," *Canadian Geotechnical Journal*, Vol 14, 1977, pp. 554–561.

(52) Galgowski, C., Wright, W., "A Variable-Depth Ground-Water Sampler," *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings*, Vol 44, 1980, pp. 1120–1121.

(53) *Samplers and Sampling Procedures for Hazardous Waste Streams*, USEPA MERL Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH, EPA-600/2-80-018, January 1980.

(54) *Methods for Chemical Analysis of Water and Wastes*, EPA-600/4-79-020, USEPA EMSL Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH, March 1979.

(55) *Federal Register*, Vol 44, No. 244, Dec. 18, 1979, pp. 75050–75052.

(56) *Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater*, APAA, 14th ed., Washington, DC, 1976, pp. 38–45.

(57) *Handbook for Analytical Quality Control in Water and Wastewater Laboratories*, EPA-600/4-79-019, USEPA EMSL Laboratory, Cincinnati, OH, March 1979.

(58) U.S. Department of Interior, "Groundwater," Chapter II, *National Handbook of Recommended Methods for Water Data Acquisition*, 1980.

The American Society for Testing and Materials takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either for revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103.

SOP F106
Test Pit and Trench Excavation

TEST PIT AND TRENCH EXCAVATION
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Test Pit Sizes
- 5.2 Health and Safety Considerations
- 5.3 Logging and Sampling
- 5.4 Backfilling
- 5.5 Test Pit Excavation Procedures

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

TEST PIT AND TRENCH EXCAVATION

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this procedure is to provide general reference information and technical guidance on the excavation of exploratory test pits and trenches.

2.0 SCOPE

These procedures provide overall technical guidance and may be modified by site-specific requirements for field exploratory trenches and test pits. Conditions which would make trench excavation difficult (such as a shallow water table), dangerous (presence of explosive materials or underground utilities) or likely to cause environmental problems (such as potential rupture of buried containerized wastes), will require modifications to the procedures presented herein and may prevent implementation of the exploratory excavation program. Furthermore, the costs and difficulties in disposing of potentially hazardous materials removed from the test pits may constrain their use to areas where contamination potential is low. Consequently, the techniques described herein are most applicable in areas of low apparent contamination and where potentially explosive materials are not expected to be present.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Trench - Trench means a narrow excavation (in relation to its length) made below the surface of the ground. In general, the depth is greater than the width, but the width of a trench (measured at the bottom) is not greater than 15 feet. If forms or other structures are installed or constructed in an excavation so as to reduce the dimension measured from the forms or structure to the side of the excavation to 15 feet or less (measured at the bottom of the excavation), the excavation is also considered to be a trench (definition from Federal Register, Vol. 54 No. 209, Tuesday, October 31, 1989, 29 CFR Part 1926 Occupational Safety and Health Standards - Excavations; Final Rule) (see Attachment A).

Test Pit - A test pit is a small excavation made below ground surface to characterize soil type and quality as well as determine the types of wastes buried. In general, a test pit is dug using a backhoe with dimensions measured as follows:

Width - Typically two to three backhoe buckets wide
Length - Typically five to 10 feet long
Depth - Typically to top of water table or one to two feet below base of fill material

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - It is the responsibility of the Project Manager to ensure that field personnel responsible for trench and test pit excavation are familiar with these procedures. It also is the responsibility of the Project Manager to ensure that all appropriate documents (i.e., Test Pit Logs) have been completely and correctly filled out by the field inspector.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for the overall supervision of all test pit and trenching activities, and for ensuring that each test pit is properly and completely logged by the field inspector. It also is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to ensure that all field inspectors have been briefed on these procedures.

Field Inspector - The Field Inspector is responsible for the direct supervision of test pit and trenching activities. It is the Field Inspector's responsibility to log each test pit, document subsurface conditions, complete appropriate forms, and to direct the test pit or trenching activities.

5.0 PROCEDURES

The procedures for test pit sizes, health and safety considerations, sampling, and backfilling are discussed in the following sections. Regulation for trench excavation, including trench sizes are given in the Tuesday October 31, 1989 edition of the Federal Register, 29 CFR Part 1926, "Occupation Safety and Health Standards - Excavations; Final Rule" (see Attachment A).

5.1 Test Pit Sizes

Test pits and trenches permit detailed exploration of the nature and contamination of in-situ materials, and the characteristics and stratification of near surface materials. The size of the excavation will depend on:

- Purpose and extent of the exploration.
- Space limitations imposed by site conditions (i.e., proximity to buildings, utilities, etc.).
- Contaminants present and the potential for release to the environment.
- Stability of the materials being excavated.
- Capabilities and limitations of the excavating equipment.

Test pits normally have a width ranging from two to ten feet or greater, depending on the objectives of the excavation and the equipment used. Test trenches are elongated test pits, usually three- to six-feet wide and extending for any desired length.

Standard equipment (i.e., backhoe) is readily available to excavate to depths of up to about 15 feet. However, larger and deeper excavations may be required. Standard equipment can be used to excavate deeper than their nominal limits by stepping or benching the excavation.

5.2 Health and Safety Considerations

Care must be taken by all on-site personnel during every phase of the test pit or trench excavation operation to avoid possible chemical and physical hazards. Chemical hazards may occur from direct exposure to excavated wastes or inhalation of volatilized materials. Physical hazards include the possible collapse of the trench or test pit, possible injury through violent contact with excavation equipment, or explosion or other forceful reaction upon contact with exposed drums or other wastes.

All test pit and trench excavation activities must be carefully detailed in the site-specific Health and Safety Plan which will specify all precautions to be observed relative to possible chemical or physical hazards associated with these operations. Respiratory and personal protective equipment to be worn by all on-site personnel involved in excavation operations also will be specified in this document.

At locations where access is not restricted, a safety zone shall be established around the excavation. Additionally, personnel should, NOT under any circumstances, enter the excavation. Prior written approval and procedures documented in the Sampling and Analysis Plan and Health and Safety Plan, and approved by LANTDIV are required if entry into the excavation is to be considered. Additionally, a site Health and Safety Officer familiar with excavations shall be on site and shall direct the entry procedures.

5.3 Logging and Sampling

Test pits and/or trenches shall be logged and sampled by the Field Inspector. Soils shall be classified and described in accordance with the procedures given in SOP F100. Test Pit Records (see Figure 1) shall be legibly completed for all test pits. Samples shall only be collected from material in the equipment bucket, or from the pile of excavated materials. The excavation shall NOT be entered for the purpose of collecting samples.

5.4 Backfilling

Backfilling of trenches and test pits is a normally accepted practice to reduce immediate site hazards and minimize the potential for rainwater accumulation and subsequent contaminant migration.

After inspection and completion of the appropriate test pit logs, backfill material should be returned to the pit under the direction of the field inspector. Any hazardous and/or waste materials which are not returned to the excavation as backfill must be collected and properly disposed. If a low permeability layer is accidentally penetrated, or if a soil layer containing substantial quantities of contaminants is encountered, backfill material must consist of a soil-bentonite mix. The mix should be prepared in a proportion specified by the field inspector and should be covered by "clean" soil and graded to the original land contour. Where it is safe to do so, the backhoe bucket should be used to compact each one to two-foot layer of backfill as it is placed, to reduce settling and compaction. The test pit cover should be inspected and further regraded, if necessary after settling has occurred.

Baker
Baker Environmental, Inc

Figure 1

TEST PIT RECORD

PROJECT: _____
CTO NO.: _____ TEST PIT NO.: _____
COORDINATES: EAST _____ NORTH: _____
SURFACE ELEVATION: _____ WATER LEVEL: _____
WEATHER: _____ DATE: _____

REMARKS: _____

DEFINITIONS

HNU = Photo Ionization Detector Reading
OVA = Organic Vapor Analyzer Reading

Lab Class. = USCS (ASTM D-2487) or AASHTO (ASTM D-3282)
Lab Moist. = Moisture Content (ASTM D-2216) Dry Weight Basis

Depth (Ft.)	Sample Type and No.	HNU (OVA) or ppm		Lab. Class.	Lab. Moist %	Soil Strat	Visual Description (Principal Constituents, Gradation, Color, Moisture Content, Organic Content, Plasticity, and Other Observations)	Elevation (MSL)
		Field	Head Space					
1								
2								
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9								
10								
11								
12								
13								
14								
15								
16								
17								
18								
19								
20								

CONTRACTOR: _____ BAKER REP.: _____
EQUIPMENT: _____ TEST PIT NO.: _____

5.5 Test Pit Excavation Procedures

The following procedures apply to the excavation and backfilling of a typical test pit. Note that if a subcontractor is procured to perform the test pit operations, the subcontractor must provide both an equipment operator and a supervisor:

- The positions of the test pits shall be located in the field by the field team leader.
- Utility clearance shall be obtained for all test pit locations prior to excavation. Contact appropriate Base personnel as well as MISS Utility (VA, MD, DC) or ULOCO (NC).

MISS Utility (1-800-552-7001)
ULOCO (1-800-632-4949)

- Excavation equipment shall be thoroughly decontaminated prior to and after each test pit excavation.
- A safety zone shall be established around the test pit location prior to initiation of excavation activities.
- Excavation shall commence by removing lifts of no more than approximately 6 to 12 inches of soil.
- The field inspector shall log the test pit soils and record observations on a Test Pit Record (Figure 1). Additionally, the test pit cross-section shall be sketched in the Field Logbook with notable features identified.
- If applicable, soil or waste samples shall be collected either from the backhoe bucket or from the pile of excavated materials following all appropriate SOPs (i.e., F002, F201).
- Test pit depths (and water levels) may be measured using an engineers rule (six foot) or a weighted measuring tape. Depths shall be measured from the ground surface.
- Upon completion, test pits shall be immediately backfilled as described in Section 5.4.
- Test pit locations shall be marked with five wooden stakes; one at each corner and one in the center. The test pit number shall be recorded on the centrally located stake.
- If applicable, the test pit will be surveyed by a registered land surveyor or measured and referenced to nearby permanent site structures (i.e., buildings, curbs, fences, etc.).

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

The Quality Assurance Records that should be prepared include Test Pit Records and the Field Logbook.

7.0 REFERENCES

OSHA , 1989. Occupational Safety and Health Standards - Excavations; Final Rule. 29 CFR Part 1926.

ATTACHMENT A

OSHA - EXCAVATIONS, FINAL RULE
29 CFR PART 1926

federal register

Tuesday
October 31, 1989

Part II

Department of Labor

Occupational Safety and Health Administration

29 CFR Part 1926

Occupational Safety and Health Standards—Excavations; Final Rule

PART 1926—[AMENDED]

Subpart M—[Amended]

1. By revising the authority citation for subpart M of part 1926 to read as follows:

Authority: Sec. 107, Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (Construction Safety Act) (40 U.S.C. 333); Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059), or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable, and 29 CFR part 1911.

2. By revising subpart P of part 1926 to read as follows:

Subpart P—Excavations

Sec.
1926.650 Scope, application, and definitions applicable to this subpart.
1926.651 General requirements.
1926.652 Requirements for protective systems.

Appendix A to Subpart P—Soil Classification

Appendix B to Subpart P—Sloping and Benching

Appendix C to Subpart P—Timber Shoring for Trenches

Appendix D to Subpart P—Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring for Trenches

Appendix E to Subpart P—Alternatives to Timber Shoring

Appendix F to Subpart P—Selection of Protective Systems

Subpart P—Excavations

Authority: Sec. 107, Contract Worker Hours and Safety Standards Act (Construction Safety Act) (40 U.S.C. 333); Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059), or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable, and 29 CFR part 1911.

§ 1926.650 Scope, application, and definitions applicable to this subpart.

(a) *Scope and application.* This subpart applies to all open excavations made in the earth's surface. Excavations are defined to include trenches.

(b) *Definitions applicable to this subpart.*

Accepted engineering practices means those requirements which are compatible with standards of practice required by a registered professional engineer.

Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring means a pre-engineered shoring system comprised of aluminum hydraulic cylinders (crossbraces) used in conjunction with vertical rails (uprights) or horizontal rails (walers). Such system is designed, specifically to support the sidewalls of an excavation and prevent cave-ins.

Bell-bottom pier hole means a type of shaft or footing excavation, the bottom of which is made larger than the cross section above to form a belled shape.

Benching (Benching system) means a method of protecting employees from cave-ins by excavating the sides of an excavation to form one or a series of horizontal levels or steps, usually with vertical or near-vertical surfaces between levels.

Cave-in means the separation of a mass of soil or rock material from the side of an excavation, or the loss of soil from under a trench shield or support system, and its sudden movement into the excavation, either by falling or sliding, in sufficient quantity so that it could entrap, bury, or otherwise injure and immobilize a person.

Competent person means one who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings, or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees, and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them.

Cross braces mean the horizontal members of a shoring system installed perpendicular to the sides of the excavation, the ends of which bear against either uprights or wales.

Excavation means any man-made cut, cavity, trench, or depression in an earth surface, formed by earth removal.

Faces or *sides* means the vertical or inclined earth surfaces formed as a result of excavation work.

Failure means the breakage, displacement, or permanent deformation of a structural member or connection so as to reduce its structural integrity and its supportive capabilities.

Hazardous atmosphere means an atmosphere which by reason of being explosive, flammable, poisonous, corrosive, oxidizing, irritating, oxygen deficient, toxic, or otherwise harmful, may cause death, illness, or injury.

Kickout means the accidental release or failure of a cross brace.

Protective system means a method of protecting employees from cave-ins, from material that could fall or roll from an excavation face or into an excavation, or from the collapse of adjacent structures. Protective systems include support systems, sloping and benching systems, shield systems, and other systems that provide the necessary protection.

Ramp means an inclined walking or working surface that is used to gain access to one point from another, and is constructed from earth or from structural materials such as steel or wood.

Registered Professional Engineer means a person who is registered as a professional engineer in the state where the work is to be performed. However, a professional engineer, registered in any state is deemed to be a "registered professional engineer" within the meaning of this standard when approving designs for "manufactured protective systems" or "tabulated data" to be used in interstate commerce.

Sheeting means the members of a shoring system that retain the earth in position and in turn are supported by other members of the shoring system.

Shield (Shield system) means a structure that is able to withstand the forces imposed on it by a cave-in and thereby protect employees within the structure. Shields can be permanent structures or can be designed to be portable and moved along as work progresses. Additionally, shields can be either premanufactured or job-built in accordance with § 1926.652 (c)(3) or (c)(4). Shields used in trenches are usually referred to as "trench boxes" or "trench shields."

Shoring (Shoring system) means a structure such as a metal hydraulic, mechanical or timber shoring system that supports the sides of an excavation and which is designed to prevent cave-ins.

Sides. See "Faces."

Sloping (Sloping system) means a method of protecting employees from cave-ins by excavating to form sides of an excavation that are inclined away from the excavation so as to prevent cave-ins. The angle of incline required to prevent a cave-in varies with differences in such factors as the soil type, environmental conditions of exposure, and application of surcharge loads.

Stable rock means natural solid mineral material that can be excavated with vertical sides and will remain intact while exposed. Unstable rock is considered to be stable when the rock material on the side or sides of the excavation is secured against caving-in or movement by rock bolts or by another protective system that has been designed by a registered professional engineer.

Structural ramp means a ramp built of steel or wood, usually used for vehicle access. Ramps made of soil or rock are not considered structural ramps.

Support system means a structure such as underpinning, bracing, or shoring, which provides support to an adjacent structure, underground

installation, or the sides of an excavation.

Tabulated data means tables and charts approved by a registered professional engineer and used to design and construct a protective system.

Trench (Trench excavation) means a narrow excavation (in relation to its length) made below the surface of the ground. In general, the depth is greater than the width, but the width of a trench (measured at the bottom) is not greater than 15 feet (4.6 m). If forms or other structures are installed or constructed in an excavation so as to reduce the dimension measured from the forms or structure to the side of the excavation to 15 feet (4.6 m) or less (measured at the bottom of the excavation), the excavation is also considered to be a trench.

Trench box. See "Shield."

Trench shield. See "Shield."

Uprights means the vertical members of a trench shoring system placed in contact with the earth and usually positioned so that individual members do not contact each other. Uprights placed so that individual members are closely spaced, in contact with or interconnected to each other, are often called "sheeting."

Wales means horizontal members of a shoring system placed parallel to the excavation face whose sides bear against the vertical members of the shoring system or earth.

§ 1926.651 General requirements.

(a) *Surface encumbrances.* All surface encumbrances that are located so as to create a hazard to employees shall be removed or supported, as necessary, to safeguard employees.

(b) *Underground installations.* (1) The estimated location of utility installations, such as sewer, telephone, fuel, electric, water lines, or any other underground installations that reasonably may be expected to be encountered during excavation work, shall be determined prior to opening an excavation.

(2) Utility companies or owners shall be contacted within established or customary local response times, advised of the proposed work, and asked to establish the location of the utility underground installations prior to the start of actual excavation. When utility companies or owners cannot respond to a request to locate underground utility installations within 24 hours (unless a longer period is required by state or local law), or cannot establish the exact location of these installations, the employer may proceed, provided the employer does so with caution, and provided detection equipment or other acceptable means to locate utility installations are used.

(3) When excavation operations approach the estimated location of underground installations, the exact location of the installations shall be determined by safe and acceptable means.

(4) While the excavation is open, underground installations shall be protected, supported or removed as necessary to safeguard employees.

(c) *Access and egress*—(1) *Structural ramps.* (i) Structural ramps that are used solely by employees as a means of access or egress from excavations shall be designed by a competent person. Structural ramps used for access or egress of equipment shall be designed by a competent person qualified in structural design, and shall be constructed in accordance with the design.

(ii) Ramps and runways constructed of two or more structural members shall have the structural members connected together to prevent displacement.

(iii) Structural members used for ramps and runways shall be of uniform thickness.

(iv) Cleats or other appropriate means used to connect runway structural members shall be attached to the bottom of the runway or shall be attached in a manner to prevent tripping.

(v) Structural ramps used in lieu of steps shall be provided with cleats or other surface treatments on the top surface to prevent slipping.

(2) *Means of egress from trench excavations.* A stairway, ladder, ramp or other safe means of egress shall be located in trench excavations that are 4 feet (1.22 m) or more in depth so as to require no more than 25 feet (7.62 m) of lateral travel for employees.

(d) *Exposure to vehicular traffic.* Employees exposed to public vehicular traffic shall be provided with, and shall wear, warning vests or other suitable garments marked with or made of reflectorized or high-visibility material.

(e) *Exposure to falling loads.* No employee shall be permitted underneath loads handled by lifting or digging equipment. Employees shall be required to stand away from any vehicle being loaded or unloaded to avoid being struck by any spillage or falling materials. Operators may remain in the cabs of vehicles being loaded or unloaded when the vehicles are equipped, in accordance with § 1926.601(b)(6), to provide adequate protection for the operator during loading and unloading operations.

(f) *Warning system for mobile equipment.* When mobile equipment is operated adjacent to an excavation, or when such equipment is required to approach the edge of an excavation, and the operator does not have a clear and direct view of the edge of the excavation, a warning system shall be utilized such as barricades, hand or mechanical signals, or stop logs. If possible, the grade should be away from the excavation.

(g) *Hazardous atmospheres*—(1) *Testing and controls.* In addition to the requirements set forth in subparts D and E of this part (29 CFR 1926.50–1926.107) to prevent exposure to harmful levels of atmospheric contaminants and to assure acceptable atmospheric conditions, the following requirements shall apply:

(i) Where oxygen deficiency (atmospheres containing less than 19.5 percent oxygen) or a hazardous atmosphere exists or could reasonably be expected to exist, such as in excavations in landfill areas or excavations in areas where hazardous substances are stored nearby, the atmospheres in the excavation shall be tested before employees enter excavations greater than 4 feet (1.22 m) in depth.

(ii) Adequate precautions shall be taken to prevent employee exposure to atmospheres containing less than 19.5 percent oxygen and other hazardous atmospheres. These precautions include providing proper respiratory protection or ventilation in accordance with subparts D and E of this part respectively.

(iii) Adequate precaution shall be taken such as providing ventilation, to prevent employee exposure to an atmosphere containing a concentration of a flammable gas in excess of 20 percent of the lower flammable limit of the gas.

(iv) When controls are used that are intended to reduce the level of atmospheric contaminants to acceptable levels, testing shall be conducted as often as necessary to ensure that the atmosphere remains safe.

(2) *Emergency rescue equipment.* (i) Emergency rescue equipment, such as breathing apparatus, a safety harness and line, or a basket stretcher, shall be readily available where hazardous atmospheric conditions exist or may reasonably be expected to develop during work in an excavation. This equipment shall be attended when in use.

(ii) Employees entering bell-bottom pier holes, or other similar deep and confined footing excavations, shall wear a harness with a life-line securely attached to it. The lifeline shall be separate from any line used to handle materials, and shall be individually

attended at all times while the employee wearing the lifeline is in the excavation.

(h) *Protection from hazards associated with water accumulation.* (1) Employees shall not work in excavations in which there is accumulated water, or in excavations in which water is accumulating, unless adequate precautions have been taken to protect employees against the hazards posed by water accumulation. The precautions necessary to protect employees adequately vary with each situation, but could include special support or shield systems to protect from cave-ins, water removal to control the level of accumulating water, or use of a safety harness and lifeline.

(2) If water is controlled or prevented from accumulating by the use of water removal equipment, the water removal equipment and operations shall be monitored by a competent person to ensure proper operation.

(3) If excavation work interrupts the natural drainage of surface water (such as streams), diversion ditches, dikes, or other suitable means shall be used to prevent surface water from entering the excavation and to provide adequate drainage of the area adjacent to the excavation. Excavations subject to runoff from heavy rains will require an inspection by a competent person and compliance with paragraphs (h)(1) and (h)(2) of this section.

(i) *Stability of adjacent structures.* (1) Where the stability of adjoining buildings, walls, or other structures is endangered by excavation operations, support systems such as shoring, bracing, or underpinning shall be provided to ensure the stability of such structures for the protection of employees.

(2) Excavation below the level of the base or footing of any foundation or retaining wall that could be reasonably expected to pose a hazard to employees shall not be permitted except when:

(i) A support system, such as underpinning, is provided to ensure the safety of employees and the stability of the structure; or

(ii) The excavation is in stable rock; or

(iii) A registered professional engineer has approved the determination that the structure is sufficently removed from the excavation so as to be unaffected by the excavation activity; or

(iv) A registered professional engineer has approved the determination that such excavation work will not pose a hazard to employees.

(3) Sidewalks, pavements, and ppurtenant structure shall not be undermined unless a support system or another method of protection is provided to protect employees from the possible collapse of such structures.

(j) *Protection of employees from loose rock or soil.* (1) Adequate protection shall be provided to protect employees from loose rock or soil that could pose a hazard by falling or rolling from an excavation face. Such protection shall consist of scaling to remove loose material; installation of protective barricades at intervals as necessary on the face to stop and contain falling material; or other means that provide equivalent protection.

(2) Employees shall be protected from excavated or other materials or equipment that could pose a hazard by falling or rolling into excavations. Protection shall be provided by placing and keeping such materials or equipment at least 2 feet (.61 m) from the edge of excavations, or by the use of retaining devices that are sufficient to prevent materials or equipment from falling or rolling into excavations, or by a combination of both if necessary.

(k) *Inspections.* (1) Daily inspections of excavations, the adjacent areas, and protective systems shall be made by a competent person for evidence of a situation that could result in possible cave-ins, indications of failure of protective systems, hazardous atmospheres, or other hazardous conditions. An inspection shall be conducted by the competent person prior to the start of work and as needed throughout the shift. Inspections shall also be made after every rainstorm or other hazard increasing occurrence. These inspections are only required when employee exposure can be reasonably anticipated.

(2) Where the competent person finds evidence of a situation that could result in a possible cave-in, indications of failure of protective systems, hazardous atmospheres, or other hazardous conditions, exposed employees shall be removed from the hazardous area until the necessary precautions have been taken to ensure their safety.

(l) *Fall protection.* (1) Where employees or equipment are required or permitted to cross over excavations, walkways or bridges with standard guardrails shall be provided.

(2) Adequate barrier physical protection shall be provided at all remotely located excavations. All wells, pits, shafts, etc., shall be barricaded or covered. Upon completion of exploration and similar operations, temporary wells, pits, shafts, etc., shall be backfilled.

§ 1926.652 Requirements for protective systems.

(a) *Protection of employees in excavations.* (1) Each employee in an excavation shall be protected from cave-ins by an adequate protective system designed in accordance with paragraph (b) or (c) of this section except when:

(i) Excavations are made entirely in stable rock; or

(ii) Excavations are less than 5 feet (1.52m) in depth and examination of the ground by a competent person provides no indication of a potential cave-in.

(2) Protective systems shall have the capacity to resist without failure all loads that are intended or could reasonably be expected to be applied or transmitted to the system.

(b) *Design of sloping and benching systems.* The slopes and configurations of sloping and benching systems shall be selected and constructed by the employer or his designee and shall be in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (b)(1); or, in the alternative, paragraph (b)(2); or, in the alternative, paragraph (b)(3), or, in the alternative, paragraph (b)(4), as follows:

(1) *Option (1)—Allowable configurations and slopes.* (i) Excavations shall be sloped at an angle not steeper than one and one-half horizontal to one vertical (34 degrees measured from the horizontal), unless the employer uses one of the other options listed below.

(ii) Slopes specified in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section, shall be excavated to form configurations that are in accordance with the slopes shown for Type C soil in Appendix B to this subpart.

(2) *Option (2)—Determination of slopes and configurations using Appendices A and B.* Maximum allowable slopes, and allowable configurations for sloping and benching systems, shall be determined in accordance with the conditions and requirements set forth in appendices A and B to this subpart.

(3) *Option (3)—Designs using other tabulated data.* (i) Designs of sloping or benching systems shall be selected from and be in accordance with tabulated data, such as tables and charts.

(ii) The tabulated data shall be in written form and shall include all of the following:

(A) Identification of the parameters that affect the selection of a sloping or benching system drawn from such data;

(B) Identification of the limits of use of the data, to include the magnitude and configuration of slopes determined to be safe;

(C) Explanatory information as may be necessary to aid the user in making a correct selection of a protective system from the data.

(iii) At least one copy of the tabulated data which identifies the registered professional engineer who approved the data, shall be maintained at the jobsite during construction of the protective system. After that time the data may be stored off the jobsite, but a copy of the data shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(4) *Option (4)—Design by a registered professional engineer.* (i) Sloping and benching systems not utilizing Option (1) or Option (2) or Option (3) under paragraph (b) of this section shall be approved by a registered professional engineer.

(ii) Designs shall be in written form and shall include at least the following:

(A) The magnitude of the slopes that were determined to be safe for the particular project;

(B) The configurations that were determined to be safe for the particular project; and

(C) The identity of the registered professional engineer approving the design.

(iii) At least one copy of the design shall be maintained at the jobsite while the slope is being constructed. After that time the design need not be at the jobsite, but a copy shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(c) *Design of support systems, shield systems, and other protective systems.* Designs of support systems shield systems, and other protective systems shall be selected and constructed by the employer or his designee and shall be in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (c)(1); or, in the alternative, paragraph (c)(2); or, in the alternative, paragraph (c)(3); or, in the alternative, paragraph (c)(4) as follows:

(1) *Option (1)—Designs using appendices A, C and D.* Designs for timber shoring in trenches shall be determined in accordance with the conditions and requirements set forth in appendices A and C to this subpart. Designs for aluminum hydraulic shoring shall be in accordance with paragraph (c)(2) of this section, but if manufacturer's tabulated data cannot be utilized, designs shall be in accordance with appendix D.

(2) *Option (2)—Designs Using Manufacturer's Tabulated Data.* (i) Design of support systems, shield systems, or other protective systems that are drawn from manufacturer's tabulated data shall be in accordance with all specifications, recommendations, and limitations issued or made by the manufacturer.

(ii) Deviation from the specifications, recommendations, and limitations issued or made by the manufacturer shall only be allowed after the manufacturer issues specific written approval.

(iii) Manufacturer's specifications, recommendations, and limitations, and manufacturer's approval to deviate from the specifications, recommendations, and limitations shall be in written form at the jobsite during construction of the protective system. After that time this data may be stored off the jobsite, but a copy shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(3) *Option (3)—Designs using other tabulated data.* (i) Designs of support systems, shield systems, or other protective systems shall be selected from and be in accordance with tabulated data, such as tables and charts.

(ii) The tabulated data shall be in written form and include all of the following:

(A) Identification of the parameters that affect the selection of a protective system drawn from such data;

(B) Identification of the limits of use of the data;

(C) Explanatory information as may be necessary to aid the user in making a correct selection of a protective system from the data.

(iii) At least one copy of the tabulated data, which identifies the registered professional engineer who approved the data, shall be maintained at the jobsite during construction of the protective system. After that time the data may be stored off the jobsite, but a copy of the data shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(4) *Option (4)—Design by a registered professional engineer.* (i) Support systems, shield systems, and other protective systems not utilizing Option 1, Option 2 or Option 3, above, shall be approved by a registered professional engineer.

(ii) Designs shall be in written form and shall include the following:

(A) A plan indicating the sizes, types, and configurations of the materials to be used in the protective system; and

(B) The identity of the registered professional engineer approving the design.

(iii) At least one copy of the design shall be maintained at the jobsite during construction of the protective system. After that time, the design may be stored off the jobsite, but a copy of the design shall be made available to the Secretary upon request.

(d) *Materials and equipment.* (1) Materials and equipment used for protective systems shall be free from damage or defects that might impair their proper function.

(2) Manufactured materials and equipment used for protective systems shall be used and maintained in a manner that is consistent with the recommendations of the manufacturer, and in a manner that will prevent employee exposure to hazards.

(3) When material or equipment that is used for protective systems is damaged, a competent person shall examine the material or equipment and evaluate its suitability for continued use. If the competent person cannot assure the material or equipment is able to support the intended loads or is otherwise suitable for safe use, then such material or equipment shall be removed from service, and shall be evaluated and approved by a registered professional engineer before being returned to service.

(e) *Installation and removal of support*—(1) *General.* (i) Members of support systems shall be securely connected together to prevent sliding, falling, kickouts, or other predictable failure.

(ii) Support systems shall be installed and removed in a manner that protects employees from cave-ins, structural collapses, or from being struck by members of the support system.

(iii) Individual members of support systems shall not be subjected to loads exceeding those which those members were designed to withstand.

(iv) Before temporary removal of individual members begins, additional precautions shall be taken to ensure the safety of employees, such as installing other structural members to carry the loads imposed on the support system.

(v) Removal shall begin at, and progress from, the bottom of the excavation. Members shall be released slowly so as to note any indication of possible failure of the remaining members of the structure or possible cave-in of the sides of the excavation.

(vi) Backfilling shall progress together with the removal of support systems from excavations.

(2) *Additional requirements for support systems for trench excavations.* (i) Excavation of material to a level no greater than 2 feet (.61 m) below the bottom of the members of a support system shall be permitted, but only if the system is designed to resist the forces calculated for the full depth of the trench, and there are no indications while the trench is open of a possible loss of soil from behind or below the bottom of the support system.

(ii) Installation of a support system shall be closely coordinated with the excavation of trenches.

(f) *Sloping and benching systems.* Employees shall not be permitted to work on the faces of sloped or benched excavations at levels above other employees except when employees at the lower levels are adequately protected from the hazard of falling, rolling, or sliding material or equipment.

(g) *Shield systems*—(1) *General.* (i) Shield systems shall not be subjected to loads exceeding those which the system was designed to withstand.

(ii) Shields shall be installed in a manner to restrict lateral or other hazardous movement of the shield in the event of the application of sudden lateral loads.

(iii) Employees shall be protected from the hazard of cave-ins when entering or exiting the areas protected by shields.

(iv) Employees shall not be allowed in shields when shields are being installed, removed, or moved vertically.

(2) *Additional requirement for shield systems used in trench excavations.* Excavations of earth material to a level not greater than 2 feet (.61 m) below the bottom of a shield shall be permitted, but only if the shield is designed to resist the forces calculated for the full depth of the trench, and there are no indications while the trench is open of a possible loss of soil from behind or below the bottom of the shield.

Appendix A to Subpart P

Soil Classification

(a) *Scope and application*—(1) *Scope.* This appendix describes a method of classifying soil and rock deposits based on site and environmental conditions, and on the structure and composition of the earth deposits. The appendix contains definitions, sets forth requirements, and describes acceptable visual and manual tests for use in classifying soils.

(2) *Application.* This appendix applies when a sloping or benching system is designed in accordance with the requirements set forth in § 1926.652(b)(2) as a method of protection for employees from cave-ins. This appendix also applies when timber shoring for excavations is designed as a method of protection from cave-ins in accordance with appendix C to subpart P of part 1926, and when aluminum hydraulic shoring is designed in accordance with appendix D. This Appendix also applies if other protective systems are designed and selected for use from data prepared in accordance with the requirements set forth in § 1926.652(c), and the use of the data is predicated on the use of the soil classification system set forth in this appendix.

(b) *Definitions.* The definitions and examples given below are based on, in whole or in part, the following: American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM) Standards D653-85 and D2488: The Unified Soils Classification System, The U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Textural Classification Scheme; and The National Bureau of Standards Report BSS-121.

Cemented soil means a soil in which the particles are held together by a chemical agent, such as calcium carbonate, such that a hand-size sample cannot be crushed into powder or individual soil particles by finger pressure.

Cohesive soil means clay (fine grained soil), or soil with a high clay content, which has cohesive strength. Cohesive soil does not crumble, can be excavated with vertical sideslopes, and is plastic when moist. Cohesive soil is hard to break up when dry, and exhibits significant cohesion when submerged. Cohesive soils include clayey silt, sandy clay, silty clay, clay and organic clay.

Dry soil means soil that does not exhibit visible signs of moisture content.

Fissured means a soil material that has a tendency to break along definite planes of fracture with little resistance, or a material that exhibits open cracks, such as tension cracks, in an exposed surface.

Granular soil means gravel, sand, or silt. (coarse grained soil) with little or no clay content. Granular soil has no cohesive strength. Some moist granular soils exhibit apparent cohesion. Granular soil cannot be molded when moist and crumbles easily when dry.

Layered system means two or more distinctly different soil or rock types arranged in layers. Micaceous seams or weakened planes in rock or shale are considered layered.

Moist soil means a condition in which a soil looks and feels damp. Moist cohesive soil can easily be shaped into a ball and rolled into small diameter threads before crumbling. Moist granular soil that contains some cohesive material will exhibit signs of cohesion between particles.

Plastic means a property of a soil which allows the soil to be deformed or molded without cracking, or appreciable volume change.

Saturated soil means a soil in which the voids are filled with water. Saturation does not require flow. Saturation, or near saturation, is necessary for the proper use of instruments such as a pocket penetrometer or sheer vane.

Soil classification system means, for the purpose of this subpart, a method of categorizing soil and rock deposits in a hierarchy of Stable Rock, Type A, Type B, and Type C, in decreasing order of stability. The categories are determined based on an analysis of the properties and performance characteristics of the deposits and the environmental conditions of exposure.

Stable rock means natural solid mineral matter that can be excavated with vertical sides and remain intact while exposed.

Submerged soil means soil which is underwater or is free seeping.

Type A means cohesive soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 1.5 ton per square foot (tsf) (144 kPa) or greater. Examples of cohesive soils are: clay, silty clay, sandy clay, clay loam and, in some cases, silty clay loam and sandy clay loam. Cemented soils such as caliche and hardpan are also considered Type A. However, no soil is Type A if:

(i) The soil is fissured; or

(ii) The soil is subject to vibration from heavy traffic, pile driving, or similar effects; or

(iii) The soil has been previously disturbed; or

(iv) The soil is part of a sloped, layered system where the layers dip into the excavation on a slope of four horizontal to one vertical (4H:1V) or greater; or

(v) The material is subject to other factors that would require it to be classified as a less stable material.

Type B means:

(i) Cohesive soil with an unconfined compressive strength greater than 0.5 tsf (48 kPa) but less than 1.5 tsf (144 kPa); or

(ii) Granular cohesionless soils including: angular gravel (similar to crushed rock), silt, silt loam, sandy loam and, in some cases, silty clay loam and sandy clay loam.

(iii) Previously disturbed soils except those which would otherwise be classed as Type C soil.

(iv) Soil that meets the unconfined compressive strength or cementation requirements for Type A, but is fissured or subject to vibration; or

(v) Dry rock that is not stable; or

(vi) Material that is part of a sloped, layered system where the layers dip into the excavation on a slope less steep than four horizontal to one vertical (4H:1V), but only if the material would otherwise be classified as Type B.

Type C means:

(i) Cohesive soil with an unconfined compressive strength of 0.5 tsf (48 kPa) or less; or

(ii) Granular soils including gravel, sand, and loamy sand; or

(iii) Submerged soil or soil from which water is freely seeping; or

(iv) Submerged rock that is not stable, or

(v) Material in a sloped, layered system where the layers dip into the excavation or a slope of four horizontal to one vertical (4H:1V) or steeper.

Unconfined compressive strength means the load per unit area at which a soil will fail in compression. It can be determined by laboratory testing, or estimated in the field using a pocket penetrometer, by thumb penetration tests, and other methods.

Wet soil means soil that contains significantly more moisture than moist soil, but in such a range of values that cohesive material will slump or begin to flow when vibrated. Granular material that would exhibit cohesive properties when moist will lose those cohesive properties when wet.

(c) *Requirements*—(1) *Classification of soil and rock deposits.* Each soil and rock deposit shall be classified by a competent person as Stable Rock, Type A, Type B, or Type C in accordance with the definitions set forth in paragraph (b) of this appendix.

(2) *Basis of classification.* The classification of the deposits shall be made based on the results of at least one visual and at least one manual analysis. Such analyses

shall be conducted by a competent person using tests described in paragraph (d) below, or in other recognized methods of soil classification and testing such as those adopted by the American Society for Testing Materials, or the U.S. Department of Agriculture textural classification system.

(3) *Visual and manual analyses.* The visual and manual analyses, such as those methods being acceptable in paragraph (d) of this appendix, shall be designed and conducted to provide sufficient quantitative and qualitative information as may be necessary to identify properly the properties, factors, and conditions affecting the classification of the deposits.

(4) *Layered systems.* In a layered system, the system shall be classified in accordance with its weakest layer. However, each layer may be classified individually where a more stable layer lies under a less stable layer.

(5) *Reclassification.* If, after classifying a deposit, the properties, factors, or conditions affecting its classification change in any way, the changes shall be evaluated by a competent person. The deposit shall be reclassified as necessary to reflect the changed circumstances.

(d) *Acceptable visual and manual tests.*—(1) *Visual tests.* Visual analysis is conducted to determine qualitative information regarding the excavation site in general, the soil adjacent to the excavation, the soil forming the sides of the open excavation, and the soil taken as samples from excavated material.

(i) Observe samples of soil that are excavated and soil in the sides of the excavation. Estimate the range of particle sizes and the relative amounts of the particle sizes. Soil that is primarily composed of fine-grained material is cohesive material. Soil composed primarily of coarse-grained sand or gravel is granular material.

(ii) Observe soil as it is excavated. Soil that remains in clumps when excavated is cohesive. Soil that breaks up easily and does not stay in clumps is granular.

(iii) Observe the side of the opened excavation and the surface area adjacent to the excavation. Crack-like openings such as tension cracks could indicate fissured material. If chunks of soil spall off a vertical side, the soil could be fissured. Small spalls are evidence of moving ground and are indications of potentially hazardous situations.

(iv) Observe the area adjacent to the excavation and the excavation itself for evidence of existing utility and other underground structures, and to identify previously disturbed soil.

(v) Observe the opened side of the excavation to identify layered systems. Examine layered systems to identify if the layers slope toward the excavation. Estimate the degree of slope of the layers.

(vi) Observe the area adjacent to the excavation and the sides of the opened excavation for evidence of surface water, water seeping from the sides of the excavation, or the location of the level of the water table.

(vii) Observe the area adjacent to the excavation and the area within the excavation for sources of vibration that may affect the stability of the excavation face.

(2) *Manual tests.* Manual analysis of soil samples is conducted to determine quantitative as well as qualitative properties of soil and to provide more information in order to classify soil properly.

(i) *Plasticity.* Mold a moist or wet sample of soil into a ball and attempt to roll it into threads as thin as ⅛-inch in diameter. Cohesive material can be successfully rolled into threads without crumbling. For example, if at least a two inch (50 mm) length of ⅛-inch thread can be held on one end without tearing, the soil is cohesive.

(ii) *Dry strength.* If the soil is dry and crumbles on its own or with moderate pressure into individual grains or fine powder, it is granular (any combination of gravel, sand, or silt). If the soil is dry and falls into clumps which break up into smaller clumps, but the smaller clumps can only be broken up with difficulty, it may be clay in any combination with gravel, sand or silt. If the dry soil breaks into clumps which do not break up into small clumps and which can only be broken with difficulty, and there is no visual indication the soil is fissured, the soil may be considered unfissured.

(iii) *Thumb penetration.* The thumb penetration test can be used to estimate the unconfined compressive strength of cohesive soils. (This test is based on the thumb penetration test described in American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Standard designation D2488—"Standard Recommended Practice for Description of Soils (Visual—Manual Procedure).") Type A soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 1.5 tsf can be readily indented by the thumb; however, they can be penetrated by the thumb only with very great effort. Type C soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 0.5 tsf can be easily penetrated several inches by the thumb, and can be molded by light finger pressure. This test should be conducted on an undisturbed soil sample, such as a large clump of spoil, as soon as practicable after excavation to keep to a minimum the effects of exposure to drying influences. If the excavation is later exposed to wetting influences (rain, flooding), the classification of the soil must be changed accordingly.

(iv) *Other strength tests.* Estimates of unconfined compressive strength of soils can also be obtained by use of a pocket penetrometer or by using a hand-operated shearvane.

(v) *Drying test.* The basic purpose of the drying test is to differentiate between cohesive material with fissures, unfissured cohesive material, and granular material. The procedure for the drying test involves drying a sample of soil that is approximately one inch thick (2.54 cm) and six inches (15.24 cm) in diameter until it is thoroughly dry:

(A) If the sample develops cracks as it dries, significant fissures are indicated.

(B) Samples that dry without cracking are to be broken by hand. If considerable force is necessary to break a sample, the soil has significant cohesive material content. The soil can be classified as a unfissured cohesive material and the unconfined compressive strength should be determined.

(C) If a sample breaks easily by hand, it is either a fissured cohesive material or a granular material. To distinguish between the two, pulverize the dried clumps of the sample by hand or by stepping on them. If the clumps do not pulverize easily, the material is cohesive with fissures. If they pulverize easily into very small fragments, the material is granular.

Appendix B to Subpart P

Sloping and Benching

(a) *Scope and application.* This appendix contains specifications for sloping and benching when used as methods of protecting employees working in excavations from cave-ins. The requirements of this appendix apply when the design of sloping and benching protective systems is to be performed in accordance with the requirements set forth in § 1926.652(b)(2).

(b) *Definitions.*

Actual slope means the slope to which an excavation face is excavated.

Distress means that the soil is in a condition where a cave-in is imminent or is likely to occur. Distress is evidenced by such phenomena as the development of fissures in the face of or adjacent to an open excavation; the subsidence of the edge of an excavation; the slumping of material from the face or the bulging or heaving of material from the bottom of an excavation; the spalling of material from the face of an excavation; and ravelling, i.e., small amounts of material such as pebbles or little clumps of material suddenly separating from the face of an excavation and trickling or rolling down into the excavation.

Maximum allowable slope means the steepest incline of an excavation face that is acceptable for the most favorable site conditions as protection against cave-ins, and is expressed as the ratio of horizontal distance to vertical rise (H:V).

Short term exposure means a period of time less than or equal to 24 hours that an excavation is open.

(c) *Requirements*—(1) *Soil classification.* Soil and rock deposits shall be classified in accordance with appendix A to subpart P of part 1926.

(2) *Maximum allowable slope.* The maximum allowable slope for a soil or rock deposit shall be determined from Table B-1 of this appendix.

(3) *Actual slope.* (i) The actual slope shall not be steeper than the maximum allowable slope.

(ii) The actual slope shall be less steep than the maximum allowable slope, when there are signs of distress. If that situation occurs, the slope shall be cut back to an actual slope which is at least ½ horizontal to one vertical (½H:1V) less steep than the maximum allowable slope.

(iii) When surcharge loads from stored material or equipment, operating equipment, or traffic are present, a competent person shall determine the degree to which the actual slope must be reduced below the maximum allowable slope, and shall assure that such reduction is achieved. Surcharge loads from adjacent structures shall be evaluated in accordance with § 1926.651(i).

(4) *Configurations.* Configurations of sloping and benching systems shall be in accordance with Figure B-1.

TABLE B-1

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SLOPES

SOIL OR ROCK TYPE	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SLOPES (H:V) [1] FOR EXCAVATIONS LESS THAN 20 FEET DEEP [3]
STABLE ROCK TYPE A [2] TYPE B TYPE C	VERTICAL (90°) 3/4 : 1 (53°) 1:1 (45°) 1½: 1 (34°)

NOTES:

1. Numbers shown in parentheses next to maximum allowable slopes are angles expressed in degrees from the horizontal. Angles have been rounded off.
2. A short-term maximum allowable slope of 1/2H:1V (63°) is allowed in excavations in Type A soil that are 12 feet (3.67 m) or less in depth. Short-term maximum allowable slopes for excavations greater than 12 feet (3.67 m) in depth shall be 3/4H:1V (53°).
3. Sloping or benching for excavations greater than 20 feet deep shall be designed by a registered professional engineer.

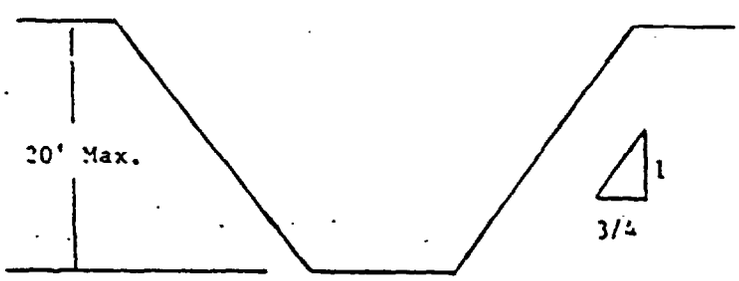
Figure B-1

Slope Configurations

(All slopes stated below are in the horizontal to vertical ratio)

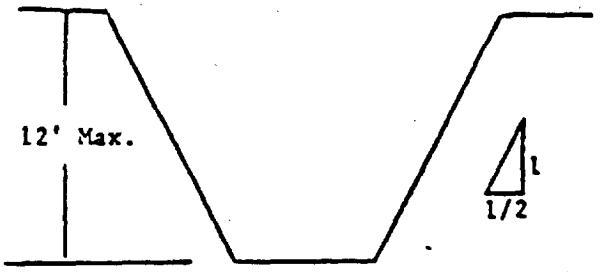
B-1.1 Excavations made in Type A soil.

1. All simple slope excavation 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of ¾:1.



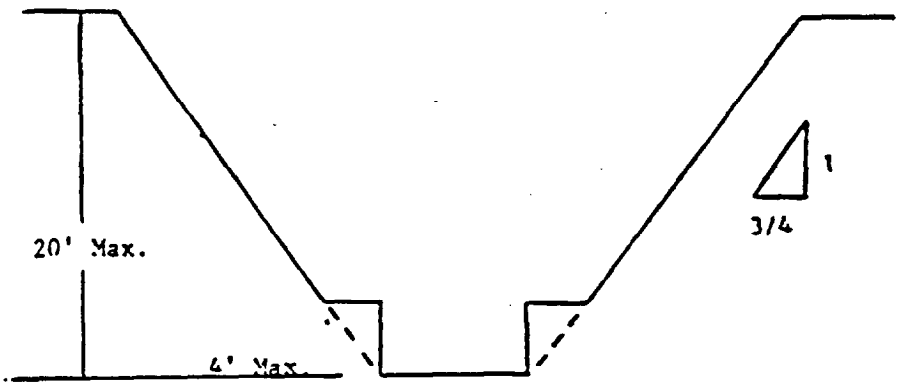
Simple Slope—General

Exception: Simple slope excavations which are open 24 hours or less (short term) and which are 12 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of ½:1.

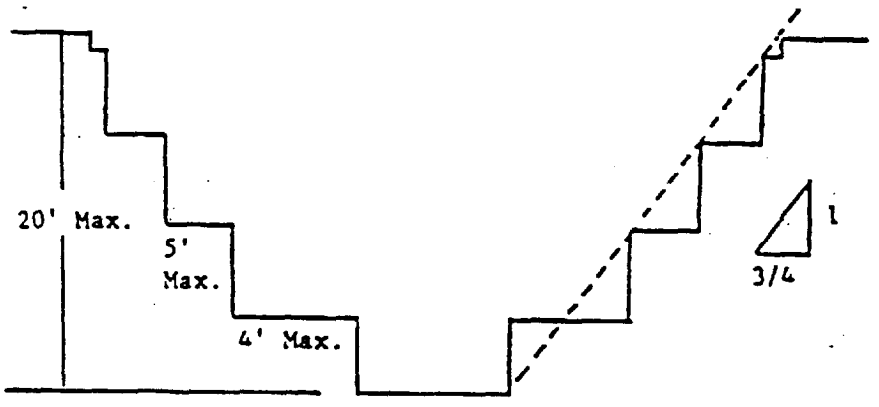


Simple Slope—Short Term

2. All benched excavations 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of ¾ to 1 and maximum bench dimensions as follows:

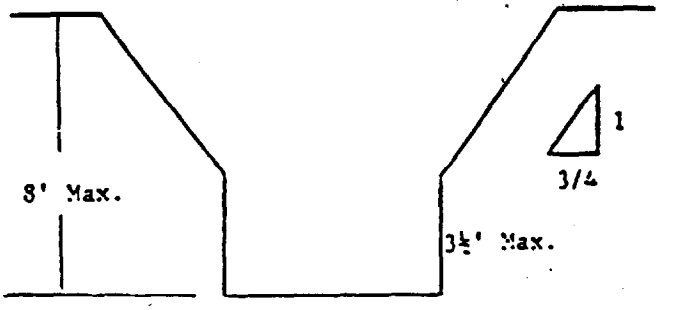


Simple Bench



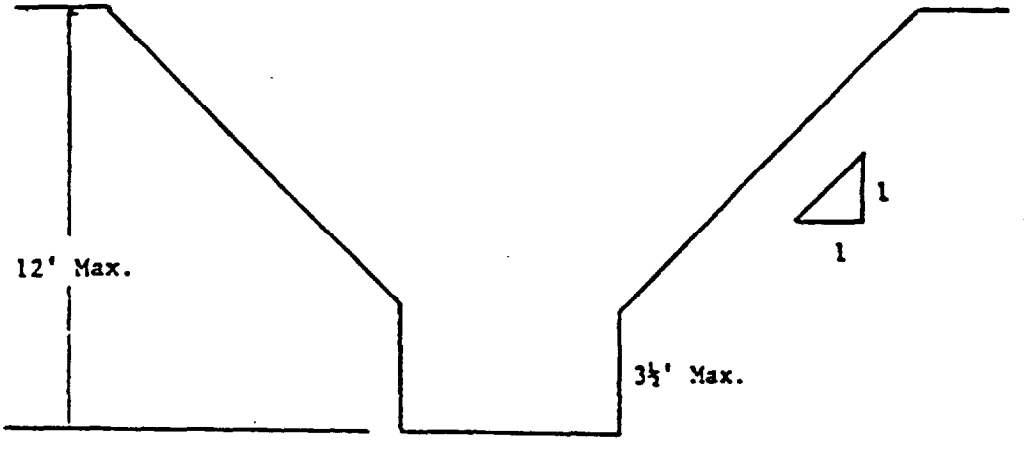
Multiple Bench

3. All excavations 8 feet or less in depth which have unsupported vertically sided lower portions shall have a maximum vertical side of 3½ feet.



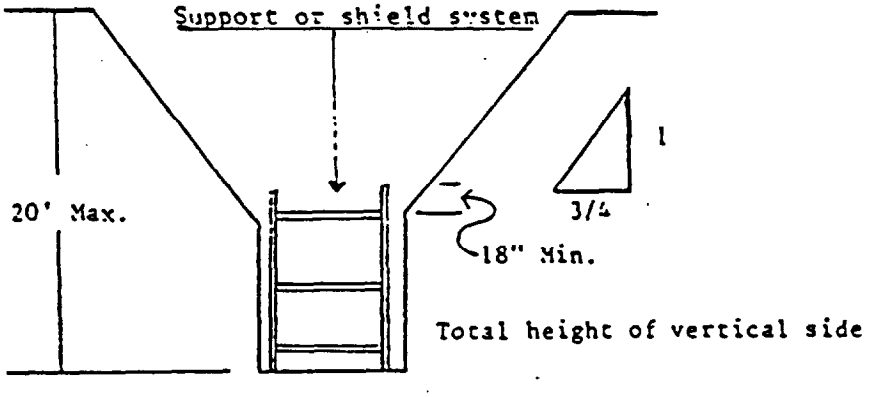
Unsupported Vertically Sided Lower Portion—Maximum 8 Feet in Depth

All excavations more than 8 feet but not more than 12 feet in depth which unsupported vertically sided lower portions shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1:1 and a maximum vertical side of 3½ feet.



Unsupported Vertically Sided Lower Portion—Maximum 12 Feet in Depth

All excavations 20 feet or less in depth which have vertically sided lower portions that are supported or shielded shall have a maximum allowable slope of ¾:1. The support or shield system must extend at least 18 inches above the top of the vertical side.

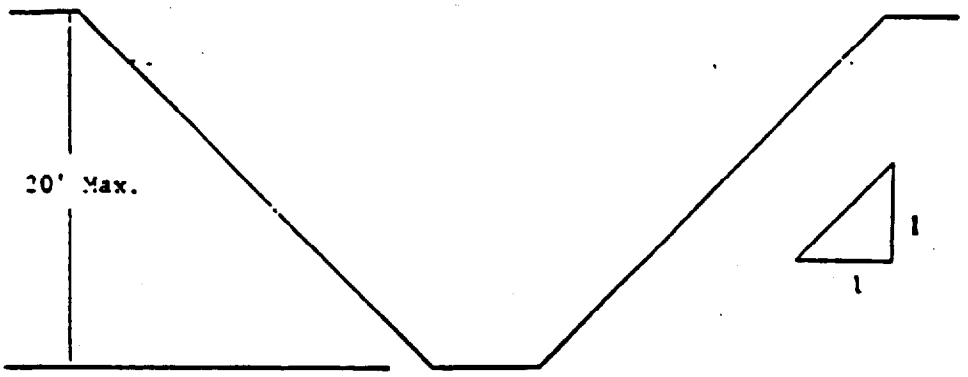


Suported or Shielded Vertically Sided Lower Portion

4. All other simple slope, compound slope, and vertically sided lower portion excavations shall be in accordance with the other options permitted under § 1926.652(b).

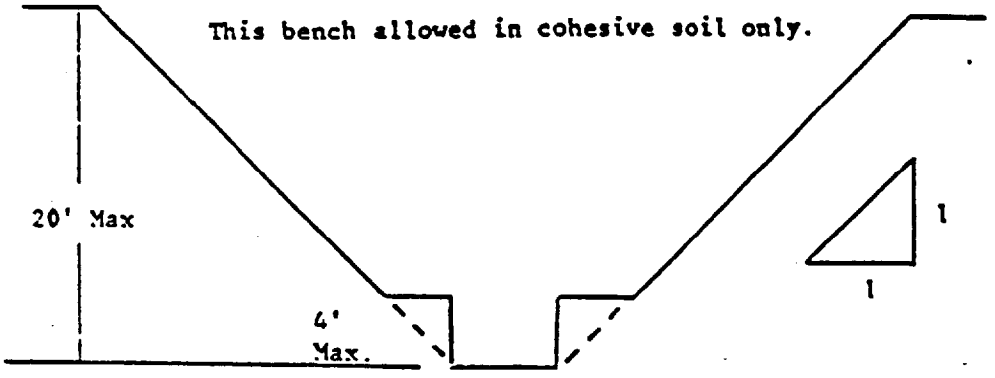
B-1.2 Excavations Made in Type B Soil

1. All simple slope excavations 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1:1.

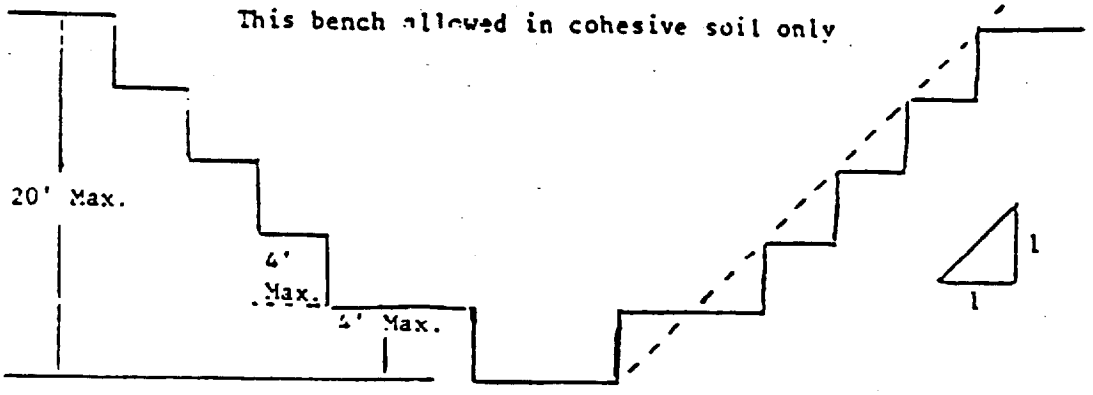


Simple Slope

2. All benched excavations 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1:1 and maximum bench dimensions as follows:

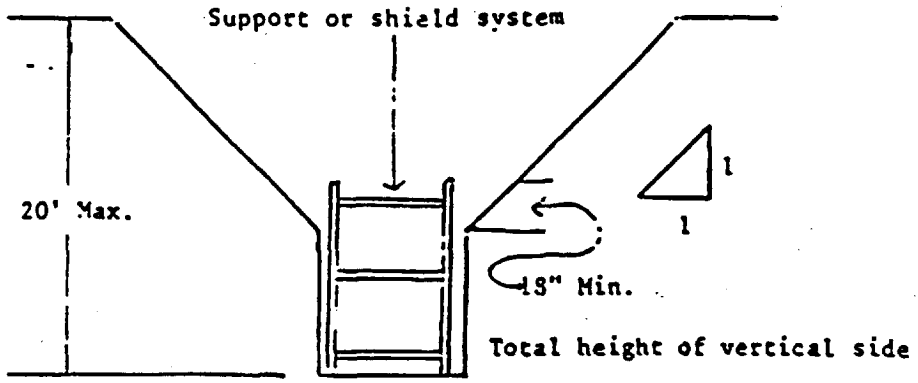


Single Bench



Multiple Bench

3. All excavations 20 feet or less in depth which have vertically sided lower portions shall be shielded or supported to a height at least 18 inches above the top of the vertical side. All such excavations shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1:1.

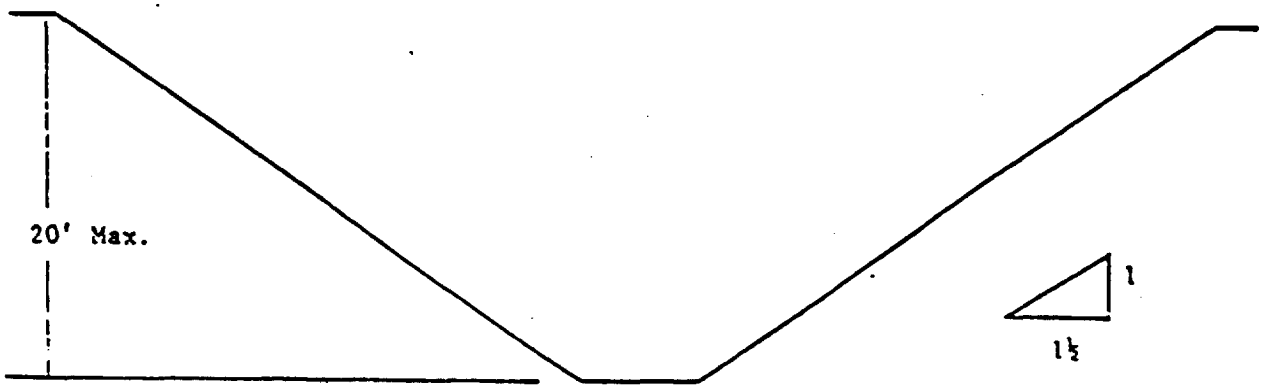


Vertically Sided Lower Portion

4. All other sloped excavations shall be in accordance with the other options permitted in § 1926.652(b).

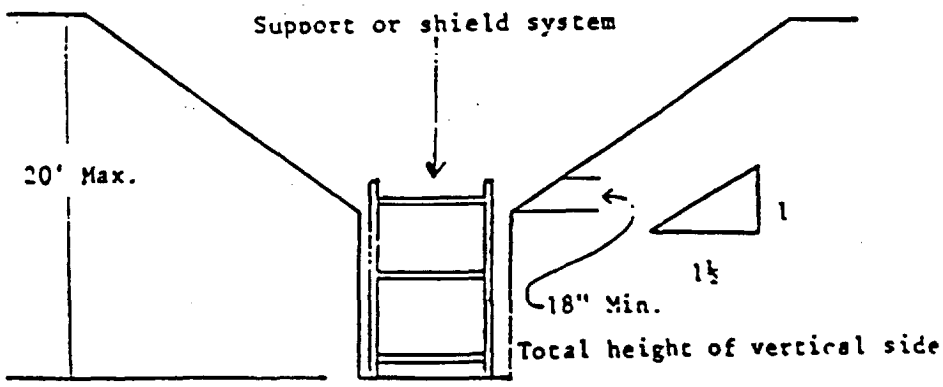
B-1.3 Excavations Made in Type C Soil

1. All simple slope excavations 20 feet or less in depth shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1½:1.



Simple Slope

2. All excavations 20 feet or less in depth which have vertically sided lower portions shall be shielded or supported to a height at least 18 inches above the top of the vertical side. All such excavations shall have a maximum allowable slope of 1½:1.

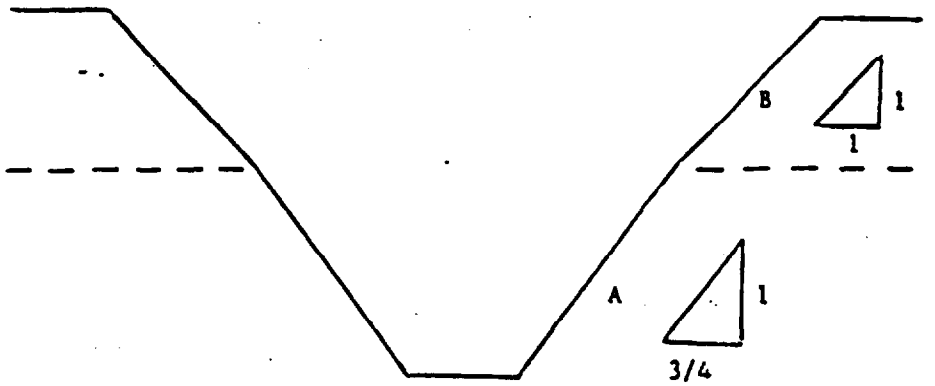


Vertical Sided Lower Portion

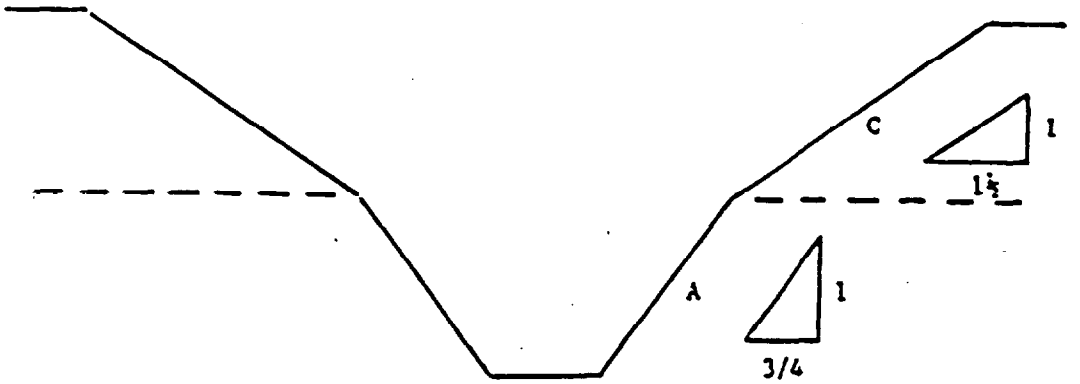
3. All other sloped excavations shall be in accordance with the other options permitted in § 1926.652(b).

B-1.4 Excavations Made in Layered Soils

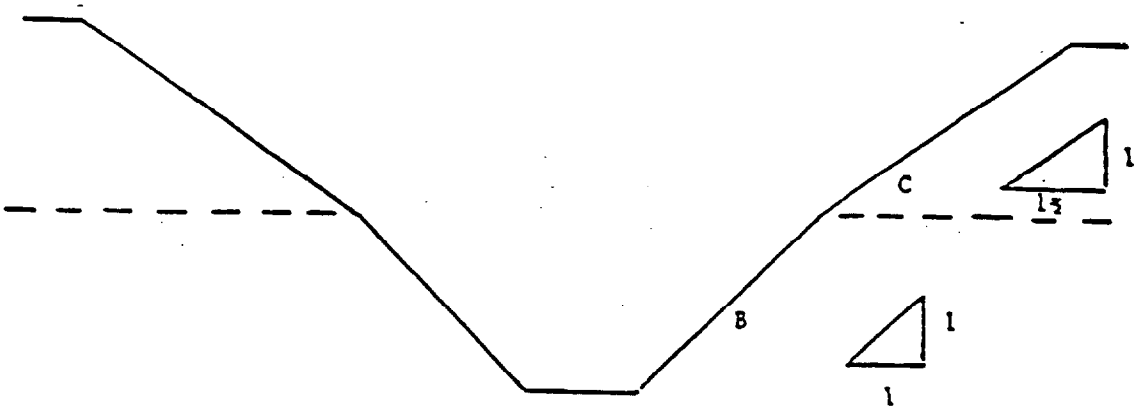
1. All excavations 20 feet or less in depth made in layered soils shall have a maximum allowable slope for each layer as set forth below.



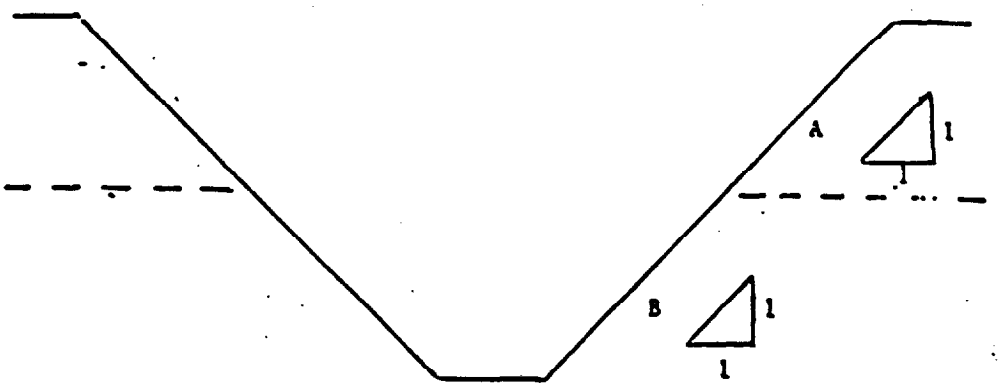
B OVER A



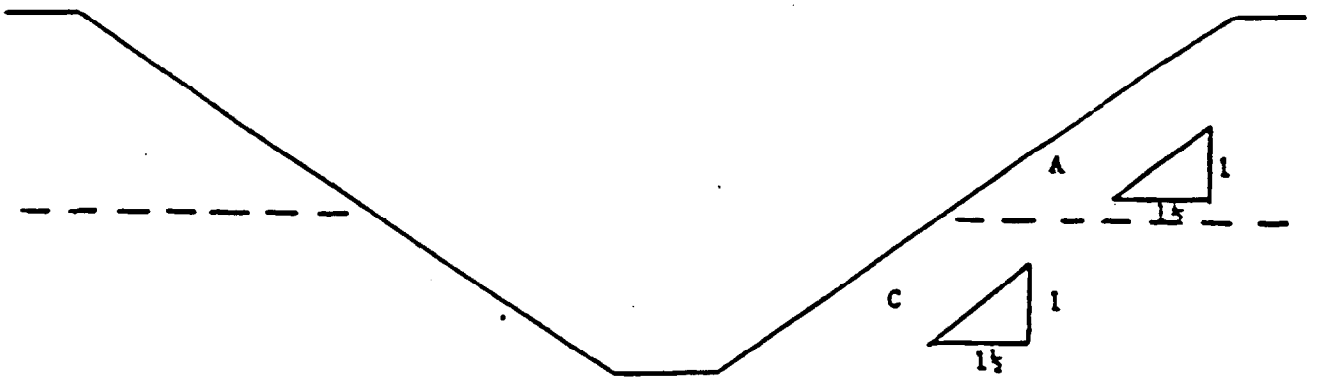
C OVER A



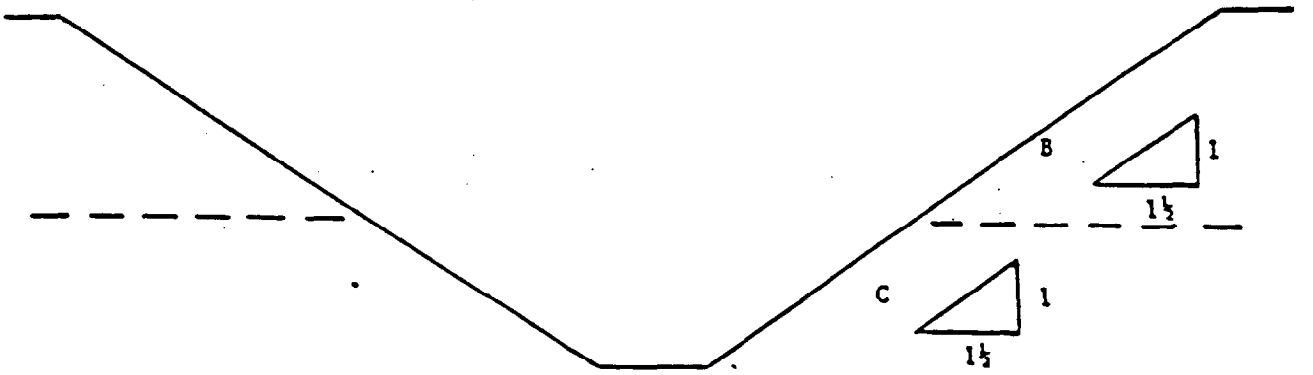
C OVER B



A OVER B



A OVER C



B OVER C

2. All other sloped excavations shall be in accordance with the other options permitted in § 1926.652(b).

Appendix C to Subpart P

Timber Shoring for Trenches

(a) *Scope.* This appendix contains information that can be used timber shoring is provided as a method of protection from cave-ins in trenches that do not exceed 20 feet (6.1 m) in depth. This appendix must be used when design of timber shoring protective systems is to be performed in accordance with § 1926.652(c)(1). Other timber shoring configurations; other systems of support such as hydraulic and pneumatic systems; and other protective systems such as sloping, benching, shielding, and freezing systems must be designed in accordance with the requirements set forth in § 1926.652(b) and § 1926.652(c).

(b) *Soil Classification.* In order to use the data presented in this appendix, the soil type or types in which the excavation is made must first be determined using the soil

classification method set forth in appendix A of subpart P of this part.

(c) *Presentation of Information.* Information is presented in several forms as follows:

(1) Information is presented in tabular form in Tables C-1.1, C-1.2, and C-1.3, and Tables C-2.1, C-2.2 and C-2.3 following paragraph (g) of the appendix. Each table presents the minimum sizes of timber members to use in a shoring system, and each table contains data only for the particular soil type in which the excavation or portion of the excavation is made. The data are arranged to allow the user the flexibility to select from among several acceptable configurations of members based on varying the horizontal spacing of the crossbraces. Stable rock is exempt from shoring requirements and therefore, no data are presented for this condition.

(2) Information concerning the basis of the tabular data and the limitations of the data is presented in paragraph (d) of this appendix, and on the tables themselves.

(3) Information explaining the use of the tabular data is presented in paragraph (e) of this appendix.

(4) Information illustrating the use of the tabular data is presented in paragraph (f) of this appendix.

(5) Miscellaneous notations regarding Tables C-1.1 through C-1.3 and Tables C-2.1 through C-2.3 are presented in paragraph (g) of this Appendix.

(d) *Basis and limitations of the data.*—(1) *Dimensions of timber members.* (i) The sizes of the timber members listed in Tables C-1.1 through C-1.3 are taken from the National Bureau of Standards (NBS) report, "Recommended Technical Provisions for Construction Practice in Shoring and Sloping of Trenches and Excavations." In addition, where NBS did not recommend specific sizes of members, member sizes are based on an analysis of the sizes required for use by existing codes and on empirical practice.

(ii) The required dimensions of the members listed in Tables C-1.1 through C-1.3 refer to actual dimensions and not nominal dimensions of the timber. Employers wanting to use nominal size shoring are directed to Tables C-2.1 through C-2.3, or have this choice under § 1926.652(c)(3), and are referred to The Corps of Engineers, The Bureau of Reclamation or data from other acceptable sources.

(2) *Limitation of application.* (i) It is not intended that the timber shoring specification apply to every situation that may be experienced in the field. These data were developed to apply to the situations that are most commonly experienced in current trenching practice. Shoring systems for use in situations that are not covered by the data in this appendix must be designed as specified in § 1926.652(c).

(ii) When any of the following conditions are present, the members specified in the tables are not considered adequate. Either an alternate timber shoring system must be designed or another type of protective system designed in accordance with § 1926.652.

(A) When loads imposed by structures or by stored material adjacent to the trench weigh in excess of the load imposed by a two-foot soil surcharge. The term "adjacent" as used here means the area within a horizontal distance from the edge of the trench equal to the depth of the trench.

(B) When vertical loads imposed on cross braces exceed a 240-pound gravity load distributed on a one-foot section of the center of the crossbrace.

(C) When surcharge loads are present from equipment weighing in excess of 20,000 pounds.

(D) When only the lower portion of a trench is shored and the remaining portion of the trench is sloped or benched unless: The sloped portion is sloped at an angle less steep than three horizontal to one vertical; or the members are selected from the tables for use at a depth which is determined from the top of the overall trench, and not from the toe of the sloped portion.

(e) *Use of Tables.* The members of the shoring system that are to be selected using this information are the cross braces, the uprights, and the wales, where wales are required. Minimum sizes of members are specified for use in different types of soil. There are six tables of information, two for each soil type. The soil type must first be determined in accordance with the soil classification system described in appendix A to subpart P of part 1926. Using the appropriate table, the selection of the size and spacing of the members is then made. The selection is based on the depth and width of the trench where the members are to be installed and, in most instances, the selection is also based on the horizontal spacing of the crossbraces. Instances where a choice of horizontal spacing of crossbracing is available, the horizontal spacing of the crossbraces must be chosen by the user before the size of any member can be determined. When the soil type, the width and depth of the trench, and the horizontal spacing of the crossbraces are known, the size and vertical spacing of the crossbraces, the size and vertical spacing of the wales, and the size and horizontal spacing of the uprights can be read from the appropriate table.

(f) *Examples to Illustrate the Use of Tables C-1.1 through C-1.3.*

(1) *Example 1.*

A trench dug in Type A soil is 13 feet deep and five feet wide.

From *Table C-1.1*, for acceptable arrangements of timber can be used.

Arrangement #1

Space 4×4 crossbraces at six feet horizontally and four feet vertically.

Wales are not required.

Space 3×8 uprights at six feet horizontally. This arrangement is commonly called "skip shoring."

Arrangement #2

Space 4×6 crossbraces at eight feet horizontally and four feet vertically.

Space 8×8 wales at four feet vertically.

Space 2×6 uprights at four feet horizontally.

Arrangement #3

Space 6×6 crossbraces at 10 feet horizontally and four feet vertically.

Space 8×10 wales at four feet vertically.

Space 2×6 uprights at five feet horizontally.

Arrangement #4

Space 6×6 crossbraces at 12 feet horizontally and four feet vertically.

Space 10×10 wales at four feet vertically.

Spaces 3×8 uprights at six feet horizontally.

(2) *Example 2.*

A trench dug in Type B soil in 13 feet deep and five feet wide. From Table C-1.2 three acceptable arrangements of members are listed.

Arrangement #1.

Space 6×6 crossbraces at six feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 8×8 wales at five feet vertically.

Space 2×6 uprights at two feet horizontally.

Arrangement #2

Space 6×8 crossbraces at eight feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 10×10 wales at five feet vertically.

Space 2×6 uprights at two feet horizontally.

Arrangement #3

Space 8×8 crossbraces at 10 feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 10×12 wales at five feet vertically.

Space 2×6 uprights at two feet vertically.

(3) *Example 3.*

A trench dug in Type C soil is 13 feet deep and five feet wide.

From Table C-1.3 two acceptable arrangements of members can be used.

Arrangement #1

Space 8×8 crossbraces at six feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 10×12 wales at five feet vertically.

Position 2×6 uprights as closely together as possible.

If water must be retained use special tongue and groove uprights to form tight sheeting.

Arrangement #2

Space 8×10 crossbraces at eight feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 12×12 wales at five feet vertically.

Position 2×6 uprights in a close sheeting configuration unless water pressure must be resisted. Tight sheeting must be used where water must be retained.

(4) *Example 4.*

A trench dug in Type C soil is 20 feet deep and 11 feet wide. The size and spacing of members for the section of trench that is over 15 feet in depth is determined using Table C-1.3. Only one arrangement of members is provided.

Space 8×10 crossbraces at six feet horizontally and five feet vertically.

Space 12×12 wales at five feet vertically.

Use 3×6 tight sheeting.

Use of Tables C-2.1 through C-2.3 would follow the same procedures.

(g) *Notes for all Tables.*

1. Member sizes at spacings other than indicated are to be determined as specified in § 1926.652(c), "Design of Protective Systems."

2. When conditions are saturated or submerged use Tight Sheeting. Tight Sheeting refers to the use of specially-edged timber planks (e.g., tongue and groove) at least three inches thick, steel sheet piling, or similar construction that when driven or placed in position provide a tight wall to resist the lateral pressure of water and to prevent the loss of backfill material. Close Sheeting refers to the placement of planks side-by-side allowing as little space as possible between them.

3. All spacing indicated is measured center to center.

4. Wales to be installed with greater dimension horizontal.

5. If the vertical distance from the center of the lowest crossbrace to the bottom of the trench exceeds two and one-half feet, uprights shall be firmly embedded or a mudsill shall be used. Where uprights are embedded, the vertical distance from the center of the lowest crossbrace to the bottom of the trench shall not exceed 36 inches. When mudsills are used, the vertical distance shall not exceed 42 inches. Mudsills are wales that are installed at the toe of the trench side.

6. Trench jacks may be used in lieu of or in combination with timber crossbraces.

7. Placement of crossbraces. When the vertical spacing of crossbraces is four feet, place the top crossbrace no more than two feet below the top of the trench. When the vertical spacing of crossbraces is five feet, place the top crossbrace no more than 2.5 feet below the top of the trench.

BILLING CODE 4510-26-M

TABLE C-1.1

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS *

SOIL TYPE A $P_a = 25 \times H + 72$ psf (2 ft Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (ACTUAL) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS **													
	CROSS BRACES							WALES		UPRIGHTS				
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)					VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)				
		UP TO 4	UP TO 6	UP TO 9	UP TO 12	UP TO 15				CLOSE	4	5	6	8
5 TO 10	UP TO 6	4X4	4X4	4X6	6X6	6X6	4	Not Req'd	---				2X6	
	UP TO 8	4X4	4X4	4X6	6X6	6X6	4	Not Req'd	---					2X8
	UP TO 10	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4			2X6		
	UP TO 12	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4				2X6	
10 TO 15	UP TO 6	4X4	4X4	4X6	6X6	6X6	4	Not Req'd	---				3X8	
	UP TO 8	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4		2X6			
	UP TO 10	6X6	6X5	6X6	6X8	6X8	4	8X10	4			2X6		
	UP TO 12	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	4	10X10	4				3X8	
15 TO 20	UP TO 6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	4	6X8	4	3X6				
	UP TO 8	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	4	8X8	4	3X6				
	UP TO 10	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	4	8X10	4	3X6				
	UP TO 12	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	4	10X10	4	3X6				
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1													

* Mixed oak or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 850 psi.

** Manufactured members of equivalent strength may by substituted for wood.

TABLE C-1.2

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS *

SOIL TYPE B $P_a = 45 \times H + 72$ psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (ACTUAL) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS**													
	CROSS BRACES							WALES		UPRIGHTS				
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)					VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)				
		UP TO 4	UP TO 6	UP TO 9	UP TO 12	UP TO 15				CLOSE	2	3		
5 TO 10	UP TO 6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	5	6X8	5			2X6		
	UP TO 8	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	5	8X10	5			2X6		
	UP TO 10	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	5	10X10	5			2X6		
	See Note 1													
10 TO 15	UP TO 6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	5	8X8	5		2X6			
	UP TO 8	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X10	5		2X6			
	UP TO 10	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	5	10X12	5		2X6			
	See Note 1													
15 TO 20	UP TO 6	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	8X10	5	3X6				
	UP TO 8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	5	10X12	5	3X6				
	UP TO 10	8X10	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10	5	12X12	5	3X6				
	See Note 1													
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1													

* Mixed oak or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 850 psi.
** Manufactured members of equivalent strength may by substituted for wood.

TABLE C-1.3

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS *

SOIL TYPE C $P_a = 80 \times H + 72$ psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (ACTUAL) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS**														
	CROSS BRACES									UPRIGHTS					
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)					VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN.)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET) (See Note 2)					
		UP TO 4	UP TO 6	UP TO 9	UP TO 12	UP TO 15				CLOSE					
5 TO 10	UP TO 6	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	8X10	5	2X6					
	UP TO 8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	5	10X12	5	2X6					
	UP TO 10	8X10	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10	5	12X12	5	2X6					
	See Note 1														
10 TO 15	UP TO 6	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	5	10X12	5	2X6					
	UP TO 8	8X10	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10	5	12X12	5	2X6					
	See Note 1														
	See Note 1														
15 TO 20	UP TO 6	8X10	8X10	8X10	8X10	10X10	5	12X12	5	3X6					
	See Note 1														
	See Note 1														
	See Note 1														
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1														

* Mixed Oak or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 850 psi.

** Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.

TABLE C-2.1

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS *

SOIL TYPE A P_a = 25 X H + 72 psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (S4S) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS **														
	CROSS BRACES							WALES		UPRIGHTS					
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)					VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)					
		UP TO 4	UP TO 6	UP TO 9	UP TO 12	UP TO 15				CLOSE	4	5	6	8
5 TO 10	UP TO 6	4X4	4X4	4X4	4X4	4X6	4	Not Req'd	Not Req'd				4X6	
	UP TO 8	4X4	4X4	4X4	4X6	4X6	4	Not Req'd	Not Req'd					4X8
	UP TO 10	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4			4X6		
	UP TO 12	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4				4X6	
10 TO 15	UP TO 6	4X4	4X4	4X4	6X6	6X6	4	Not Req'd	Not Req'd				4X10	
	UP TO 8	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	4	6X8	4		4X6			
	UP TO 10	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4			4X8		
	UP TO 12	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X10	4		4X6		4X10	
15 TO 20	UP TO 6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	6X8	4	3X6				
	UP TO 8	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	4	8X8	4	3X6	4X12			
	UP TO 10	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	4	8X10	4	3X6				
	UP TO 12	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	4	8X12	4	3X6	4X12			
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1													

* Douglas fir or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 1500 psi.

** Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.

TABLE C-2.2

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS *

SOIL TYPE B P_a = 45 X H + 72 psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (S4S) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS **													
	CROSS BRACES							WALES		UPRIGHTS				
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)					VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)				
		UP TO 4	UP TO 6	UP TO 9	UP TO 12	UP TO 15				CLOSE	2	3	4	6
5 TO 10	UP TO 6	4X6	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	5	6X8	5			3X12 .4X8		4X12
	UP TO 8	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	5	8X8	5		3X8		4X8	
	UP TO 10	4X6	4X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	5	8X10	5			4X8		
	See Note 1													
10 TO 15	UP TO 6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X8	6X8	5	8X8	5	3X6	4X10			
	UP TO 8	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X10	5	3X6	4X10			
	UP TO 10	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X12	5	3X6	4X10			
	See Note 1													
15 TO 20	UP TO 6	6X8	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	5	8X10	5	4X6				
	UP TO 8	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X12	5	4X6				
	UP TO 10	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	12X12	5	4X6				
	See Note 1													
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1													

* Douglas fir or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 1500 psi.

** Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.

TABLE C-2.3

TIMBER TRENCH SHORING -- MINIMUM TIMBER REQUIREMENTS *

SOIL TYPE C $P_a = 80 \times H + 72$ psf (2 ft. Surcharge)

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	SIZE (S4S) AND SPACING OF MEMBERS **														
	CROSS BRACES							WALES		UPRIGHTS					
	HORIZ. SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)					VERT. SPACING (FEET)	SIZE (IN)	VERT. SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)					
		UP TO 4	UP TO 6	UP TO 9	UP TO 12	UP TO 15				CLOSE					
5 TO 10	UP TO 6	6X6	6X6	6X6	6X6	8X8	5	8X8	5	3X6					
	UP TO 8	6X6	6X6	6X6	8X8	8X8	5	10X10	5	3X6					
	UP TO 10	6X6	6X6	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X12	5	3X6					
	See Note 1														
10 TO 15	UP TO 6	6X8	6X8	6X8	8X8	8X8	5	10X10	5	4X6					
	UP TO 8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X8	5	12X12	5	4X6					
	See Note 1														
	See Note 1														
15 TO 20	UP TO 6	8X8	8X8	8X8	8X10	8X10	5	10X12	5	4X6					
	See Note 1														
	See Note 1														
	See Note 1														
OVER 20	SEE NOTE 1														

* Douglas fir or equivalent with a bending strength not less than 1500 psi.
** Manufactured members of equivalent strength may be substituted for wood.

BILLING CODE 4510-26-C

Appendix D to Subpart P

Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring for Trenches

(a) *Scope.* This appendix contains information that can be used when aluminum hydraulic shoring is provided as a method of protection against cave-ins in trenches that do not exceed 20 feet (6.1m) in depth. This appendix must be used when design of the aluminum hydraulic protective system cannot be performed in accordance with § 1926.652(c)(2).

(b) *Soil Classification.* In order to use data presented in this appendix, the soil type or types in which the excavation is made must first be determined using the soil classification method set forth in appendix A of subpart P of part 1926.

(c) *Presentation of Information.* Information is presented in several forms as follows:

(1) Information is presented in tabular form in Tables D–1.1, D–1.2, D–1.3 and E–1.4. Each table presents the maximum vertical and horizontal spacings that may be used with various aluminum member sizes and various hydraulic cylinder sizes. Each table contains data only for the particular soil type in which the excavation or portion of the excavation is made. Tables D–1.1 and D–1.2 are for vertical shores in Types A and B soil. Tables D–1.3 and D1.4 are for horizontal waler systems in Types B and C soil.

(2) Information concerning the basis of the tabular data and the limitations of the data is presented in paragraph (d) of this appendix.

(3) Information explaining the use of the tabular data is presented in paragraph (e) of this appendix.

(4) Information illustrating the use of the tabular data is presented in paragraph (f) of this appendix.

(5) Miscellaneous notations (footnotes) regarding Table D–1.1 through D–1.4 are presented in paragraph (g) of this appendix.

(6) Figures, illustrating typical installations of hydraulic shoring, are included just prior to the Tables. The illustrations page is entitled "Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring: Typical Installations."

(d) *Basis and limitations of the data.*

(1) Vertical shore rails and horizontal wales are those that meet the Section Modulus requirements in the D–1 Tables. Aluminum material is 6061–T6 or material of equivalent strength and properties.

(2) Hydraulic cylinders specifications. (i) 2-inch cylinders shall be a minimum 2-inch inside diameter with a minimum safe working capacity of no less than 18,000 pounds axial compressive load at maximum extension. Maximum extension is to include full range of cylinder extensions as recommended by product manufaturer.

(ii) 3-inch cylinders shall be a minimum 3-inch inside diameter with a safe working capacity of not less than 30,000 pounds axial compressive load at extensions as recommended by product manufacturer.

(3) Limitation of application.

(i) It is not intended that the aluminum hydraulic specification apply to every situation that may be experienced in the field. These data were developed to apply to the situations that are most commonly experienced in current trenching practice. Shoring systems for use in situations that are not covered by the data in this appendix must be otherwise designed as specified in § 1926.652(c).

(ii) When any of the following conditions are present, the members specified in the Tables are not considered adequate. In this case, an alternative aluminum hydraulic shoring system or other type of protective system must be designed in accordance with § 1926.652.

(A) When vertical loads imposed on cross braces exceed a 100 Pound gravity load distributed on a one foot section of the center of the hydraulic cylinder.

(B) When surcharge loads are present from equipment weighing in excess of 20,000 pounds.

(C) When only the lower portion or a trench is shored and the remaining portion of the trench is sloped or benched unless: The sloped portion is sloped at an angle less steep than three horizontal to one vertical; or the members are selected from the tables for use at a depth which is determined from the top of the overall trench, and not from the toe of the sloped portion.

(e) *Use of Tables D–1.1, D–1.2, D–1.3 and D–1.4.* The members of the shoring system that are to be selected using this information are the hydraulic cylinders, and either the vertical shores or the horizontal wales. When a waler system is used the vertical timber sheeting to be used is also selected from these tables. The Tables D–1.1 and D–1.2 for vertical shores are used in Type A and B soils that do not require sheeting. Type B soils that may require sheeting, and Type C soils that always require sheeting are found in the horizontal wale Tables D–1.3 and D–1.4. The soil type must first be determined in accordance with the soil classification system described in appendix A to subpart P of part 1926. Using the appropriate table, the selection of the size and spacing of the members is made. The selection is based on the depth and width of the trench where the members are to be installed. In these tables the vertical spacing is held constant at four feet on center. The tables show the maximum horizontal spacing of cylinders allowed for each size of wale in the waler system tables, and in the vertical shore tables, the hydraulic cylinder horizontal spacing is the same as the vertical shore spacing.

(f) *Example to Illustrate the Use of the Tables:*

(1) Example 1:

A trench dug in Type A soil is 6 feet deep and 3 feet wide. From Table D–1.1: Find vertical shores and 2 inch diameter cylinders spaced 8 feet on center (o.c.) horizontally and 4 feet on center (o.c.) vertically. (See Figures 1 & 3 for typical installations.)

(2) Example 2:

A trench is dug in Type B soil that does not require sheeting, 13 feet deep and 5 feet wide. From Table D–1.2: Find vertical shores and 2 inch diameter cylinders spaced 6.5 feet o.c. horizontally and 4 feet o.c. vertically. (See Figures 1 & 3 for typical installations.)

(3) A trench is dug in Type B soil that does not require sheeting, but does experience some minor raveling of the trench face. The trench is 16 feet deep and 9 feet wide. From Table D–1.2: Find vertical shores and 2 inch diameter cylinder (with special oversleeves as designated by footnote #2) spaced 5.5 feet o.c. horizontally and 4 feet o.c. vertically, plywood (per footnote (g)(7) to the D–1 Table) should be used behind the shores. (See Figures 2 & 3 for typical installations.)

(4) Example 4: A trench is dug in previously disturbed Type B soil, with characteristics of a Type C soil, and will require sheeting. The trench is 18 feet deep and 12 feet wide. 8 foot horizontal spacing between cylinders is desired for working space. From Table D–1.3: Find horizontal wale with a section modulus of 14.0 spaced at 4 feet o.c. vertically and 3 inch diameter cylinder spaced at 9 feet maximum o.c. horizontally. 3×12 timber sheeting is required at close spacing vertically. (See Figure 4 for typical installation.)

(5) Example 5: A trench is dug in Type C soil, 9 feet deep and 4 feet wide. Horizontal cylinder spacing in excess of 6 feet is desired for working space. From Table D–1.4: Find horizontal wale with a section modulus of 7.0 and 2 inch diameter cylinders spaced at 6.5 feet o.c. horizontally. Or, find horizontal wale with a 14.0 section modulus and 3 inch diameter cylinder spaced at 10 feet o.c. horizontally. Both wales are spaced 4 feet o.c. vertically. 3×12 timber sheeting is required at close spacing vertically. (See Figure 4 for typical installation.)

(g) *Footnotes, and general notes, for Tables D–1.1, D–1.2, D–1.3, and D–1.4.*

(1) For applications other than those listed in the tables, refer to § 1926.652(c)(2) for use of manufacturer's tabulated data. For trench depths in excess of 20 feet, refer to § 1926.652(c)(2) and § 1926.652(c)(3).

(2) 2 inch diameter cylinders, at this width, shall have structural steel tube (3.5×3.5×0.1875) oversleeves, or structural oversleeves of manufacturer's specification, extending the full, collapsed length.

(3) Hydraulic cylinders capacities. (i) 2 inch cylinders shall be a minimum 2-inch inside diameter with a safe working capacity of not less than 18,000 pounds axial compressive load at maximum extension. Maximum extension is to include full range of cylinder extensions as recommended by product manufacturer.

(ii) 3-inch cylinders shall be a minimum 3-inch inside diameter with a safe work capacity of not less than 30,000 pounds axial compressive load at maximum extension. Maximum extension is to include full range of cylinder extensions as recommended by product manufacturer.

(4) All spacing indicated is measured center to center.

(5) Vertical shoring rails shall have a minimum section modulus of 0.40 inch.

(6) When vertical shores are used, there must be a minimum of three shores spaced equally, horizontally, in a group.

(7) Plywood shall be 1.125 in. thick softwood or 0.75 inch. thick, 14 ply, arctic white birch (Finland form). Please note that plywood is not intended as a structural member, but only for prevention of local raveling (sloughing of the trench face) between shores.

(8) See appendix C for timber specifications.

(9) Wales are calculated for simple span conditions.

(10) See appendix D, item (d), for basis and limitations of the data.

BILLING CODE 4510-29-M

ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING
TYPICAL INSTALLATIONS

FIGURE NO. 1
VERTICAL ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING (SPOT BRACING)

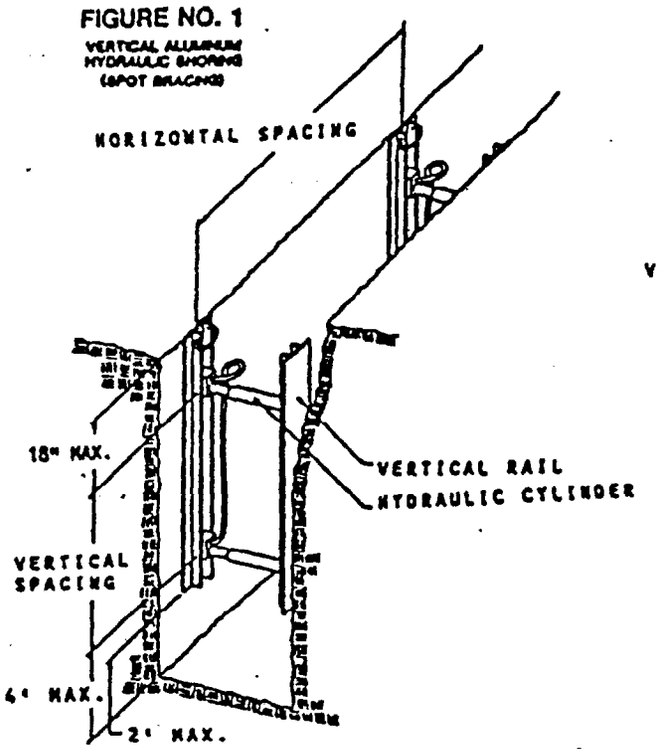


FIGURE NO. 2
VERTICAL ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING (WITH PLYWOOD)

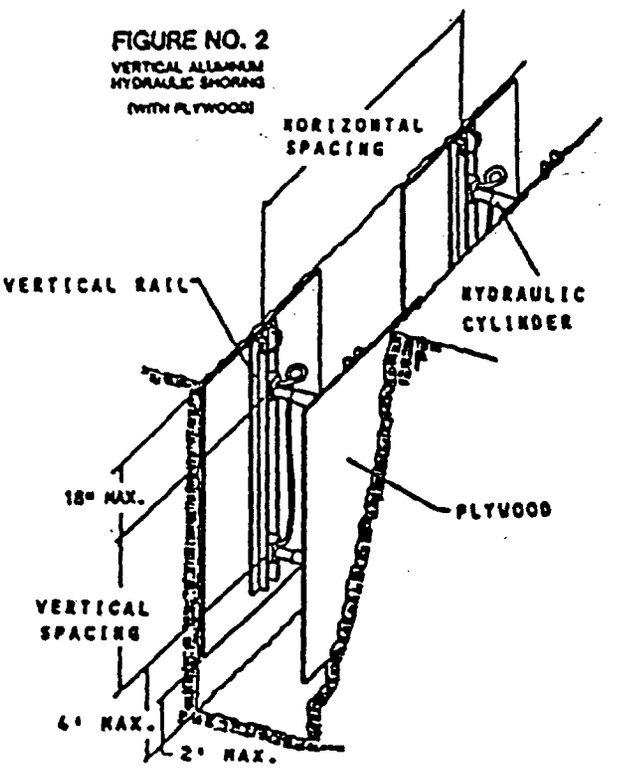


FIGURE NO. 3
VERTICAL ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING (STACKED)

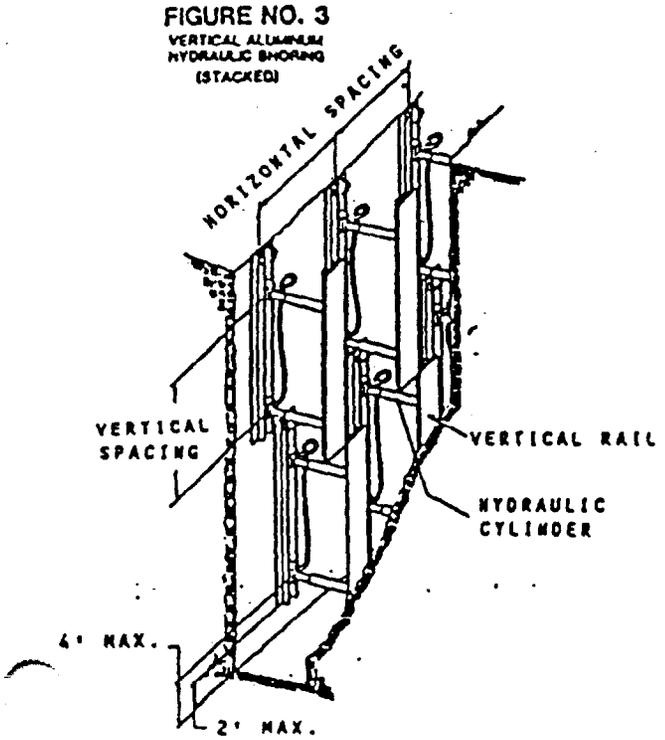


FIGURE NO. 4
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING WALER SYSTEM (TYPICAL)

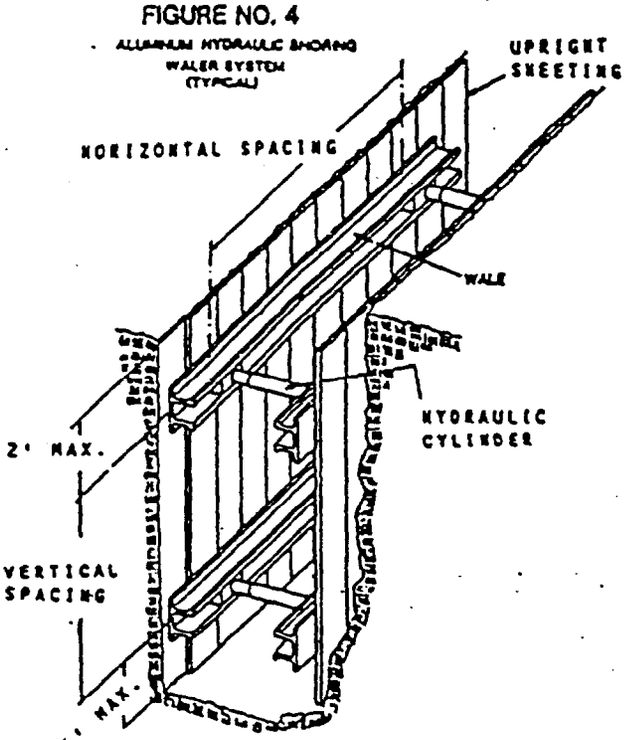


TABLE D - 1.1
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING
VERTICAL SHORES
FOR SOIL TYPE A

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS				
	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)		
			UP TO 8	OVER 8 UP TO 12	OVER 12 UP TO 15
OVER 5 UP TO 10	8	4	2 INCH DIAMETER	2 INCH DIAMETER NOTE (2)	3 INCH DIAMETER
OVER 10 UP TO 15	8				
OVER 15 UP TO 20	7				
OVER 20	NOTE (1)				

Footnotes to tables, and general notes on hydraulic shoring, are found in Appendix D, Item (g)
Note (1): See Appendix D, Item (g) (1)
Note (2): See Appendix D, Item (g) (2)

TABLE D - 1.2
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING
VERTICAL SHORES
FOR SOIL TYPE B

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS				
	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)	WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)		
			UP TO 8	OVER 8 UP TO 12	OVER 12 UP TO 15
OVER 5 UP TO 10	8	4	2 INCH DIAMETER	2 INCH DIAMETER NOTE (2)	3 INCH DIAMETER
OVER 10 UP TO 15	6.5				
OVER 15 UP TO 20	5.5				
OVER 20	NOTE (1)				

Footnotes to tables, and general notes on hydraulic shoring, are found in Appendix D, Item (g)
Note (1): See Appendix D, Item (g) (1)
Note (2): See Appendix D, Item (g) (2)

TABLE D - 1.3
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING
WALER SYSTEMS
FOR SOIL TYPE B

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	WALES		HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS						TIMBER UPRIGHTS		
			WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)						MAX.HORIZ.SPACING (ON CENTER)		
	VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)	* SECTION MODULUS (IN^3)	UP TO 8		OVER 8 UP TO 12		OVER 12 UP TO15		SOLID SHEET	2 FT.	3 FT.
			HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER			
OVER 5 UP TO 10	4	3.5	8.0	2 IN	8.0	2 IN NOTE(2)	8.0	3 IN	—	—	3x12
		7.0	9.0	2 IN	9.0	2 IN NOTE(2)	9.0	3 IN			
		14.0	12.0	3 IN	12.0	3 IN	12.0	3 IN			
OVER 10 UP TO 15	4	3.5	6.0	2 IN	6.0	2 IN NOTE(2)	6.0	3 IN	—	3x12	—
		7.0	8.0	3 IN	8.0	3 IN	8.0	3 IN			
		14.0	10.0	3 IN	10.0	3 IN	10.0	3 IN			
OVER 15 UP TO 20	4	3.5	5.5	2 IN	5.5	2 IN NOTE(2)	5.5	3 IN	3x12	—	—
		7.0	6.0	3 IN	6.0	3 IN	6.0	3 IN			
		14.0	9.0	3 IN	9.0	3 IN	9.0	3 IN			
OVER 20	NOTE (1)										

Footnotes to tables, and general notes on hydraulic shoring, are found in Appendix D, Item (g)
Notes (1): See Appendix D, item (g) (1)
Notes (2): See Appendix D, Item (g) (2)
* Consult product manufacturer and/or qualified engineer for Section Modulus of available wales.

TABLE D - 1.4
ALUMINUM HYDRAULIC SHORING
WALER SYSTEMS
FOR SOIL TYPE C

DEPTH OF TRENCH (FEET)	WALES		HYDRAULIC CYLINDERS						TIMBER UPRIGHTS		
			WIDTH OF TRENCH (FEET)						MAX.HORIZ SPACING (ON CENTER)		
	VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)	SECTION MODULUS* (IN³)	UP TO 8		OVER 8 UP TO 12		OVER 12 UP TO 15		SOLID SHEET	2 FT.	3 FT.
			HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER	HORIZ. SPACING	CYLINDER DIAMETER			
OVER 5 UP TO 10	4	3.5	6.0	2 IN	6.0	2 IN NOTE(2)	6.0	3 IN	3x12	—	—
		7.0	6.5	2 IN	6.5	2 IN NOTE(2)	6.5	3 IN			
		14.0	10.0	3 IN	10.0	3 IN	10.0	3 IN			
OVER 10 UP TO 15	4	3.5	4.0	2 IN	4.0	2 IN NOTE(2)	4.0	3 IN	3x12	—	—
		7.0	5.5	3 IN	5.5	3 IN	5.5	3 IN			
		14.0	8.0	3 IN	8.0	3 IN	8.0	3 IN			
OVER 15 UP TO 20	4	3.5	3.5	2 IN	3.5	2 IN NOTE(2)	3.5	3 IN	3x12	—	—
		7.0	5.0	3 IN	5.0	3 IN	5.0	3 IN			
		14.0	6.0	3 IN	6.0	3 IN	6.0	3 IN			
OVER 20	NOTE (1)										

Footnotes to tables, and general notes on hydraulic shoring, are found in Appendix D, Item (g)
Notes (1): See Appendix D, item (g) (1)
Notes (2): See Appendix D, Item (g) (2)
* Consult product manufacturer and/or qualified engineer for Section Modulus of available wales.

BILLING CODE 4510-26-C

Appendix E to Subpart P—Alternatives to Timber Shoring

Figure 1. Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring

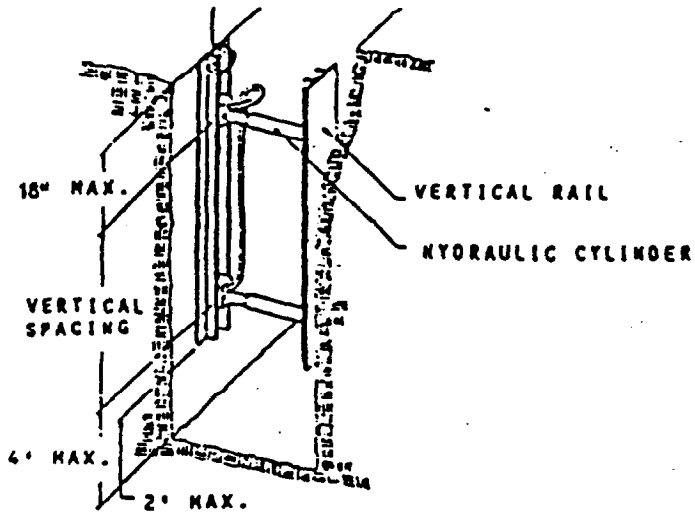
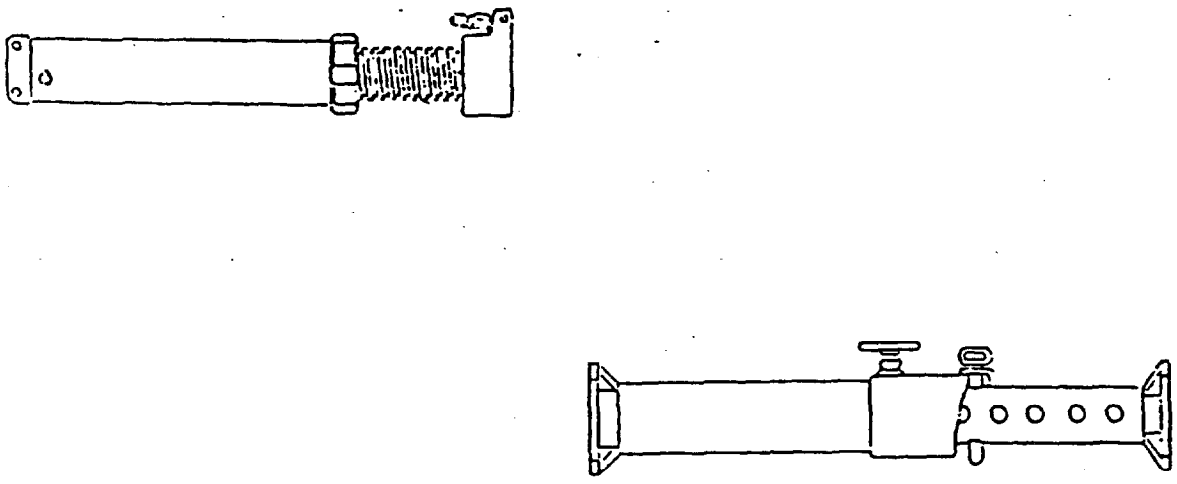


Figure 2. Pneumatic/hydraulic Shoring



BILLING CODE 4510-26-M

Figure 3. Trench Jacks (Screw Jacks)

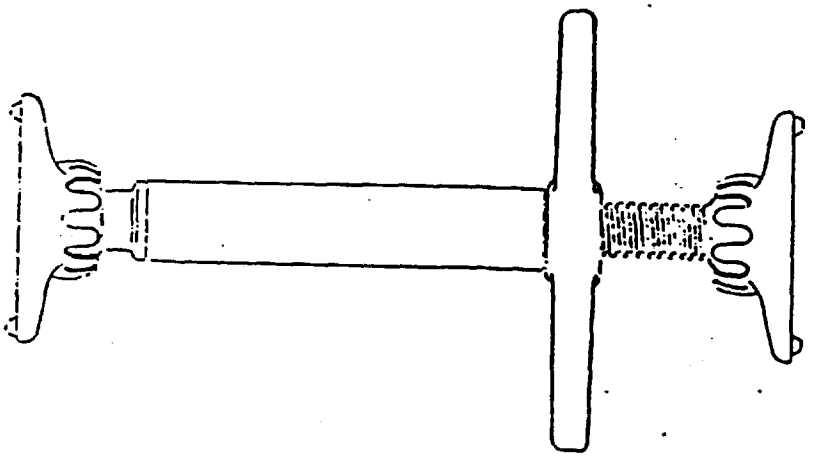
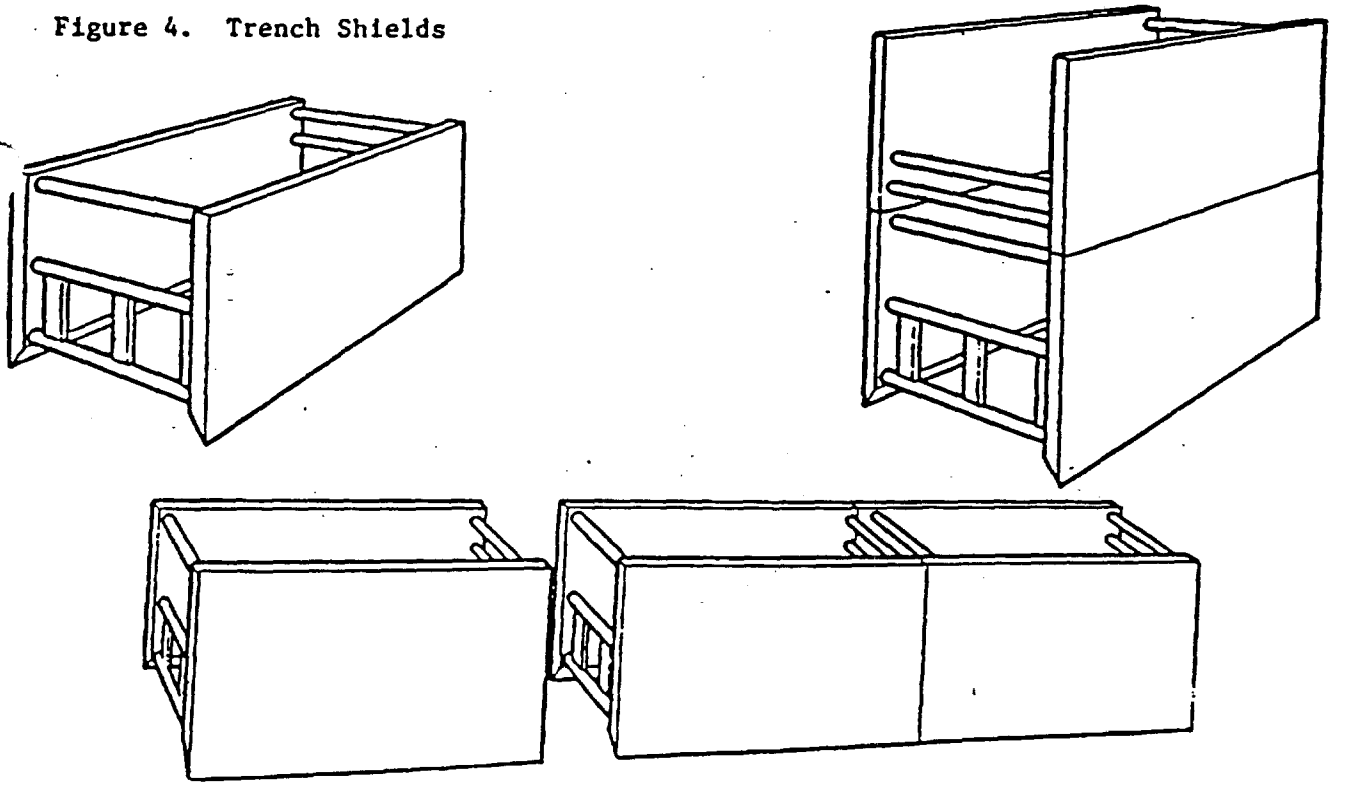


Figure 4. Trench Shields



BILLING CODE 4510-26-C

Appendix F to Subpart P—Selection of Protective Systems

The following figures are a graphic summary of the requirements contained in subpart P for excavations 20 feet or less in depth. Protective systems for use in excavations more than 20 feet in depth must be designed by a registered professional engineer in accordance with § 1926.652 (b) and (c).

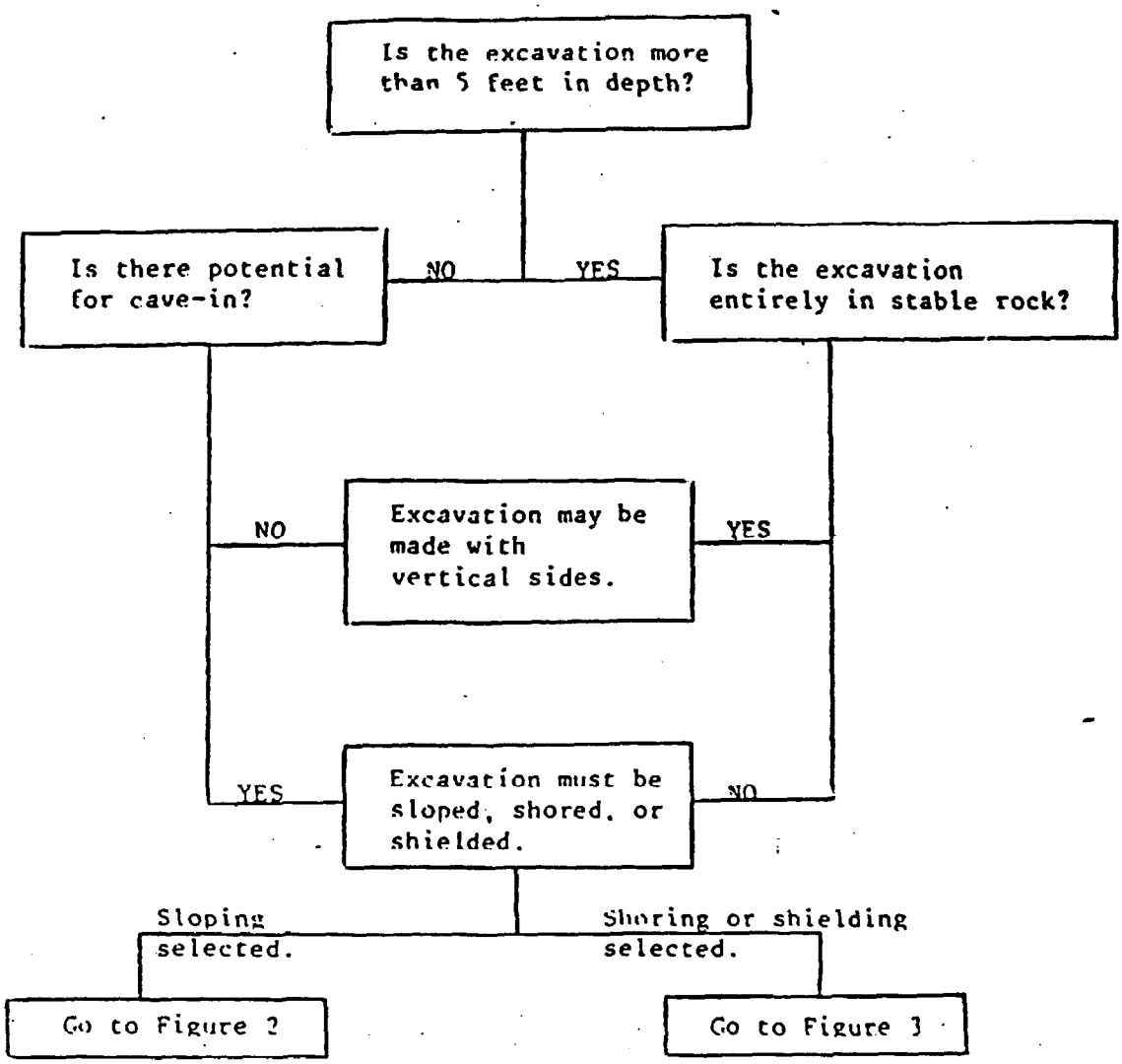


FIGURE 1 - PRELIMINARY DECISIONS

BILLING CODE 4510-26-M

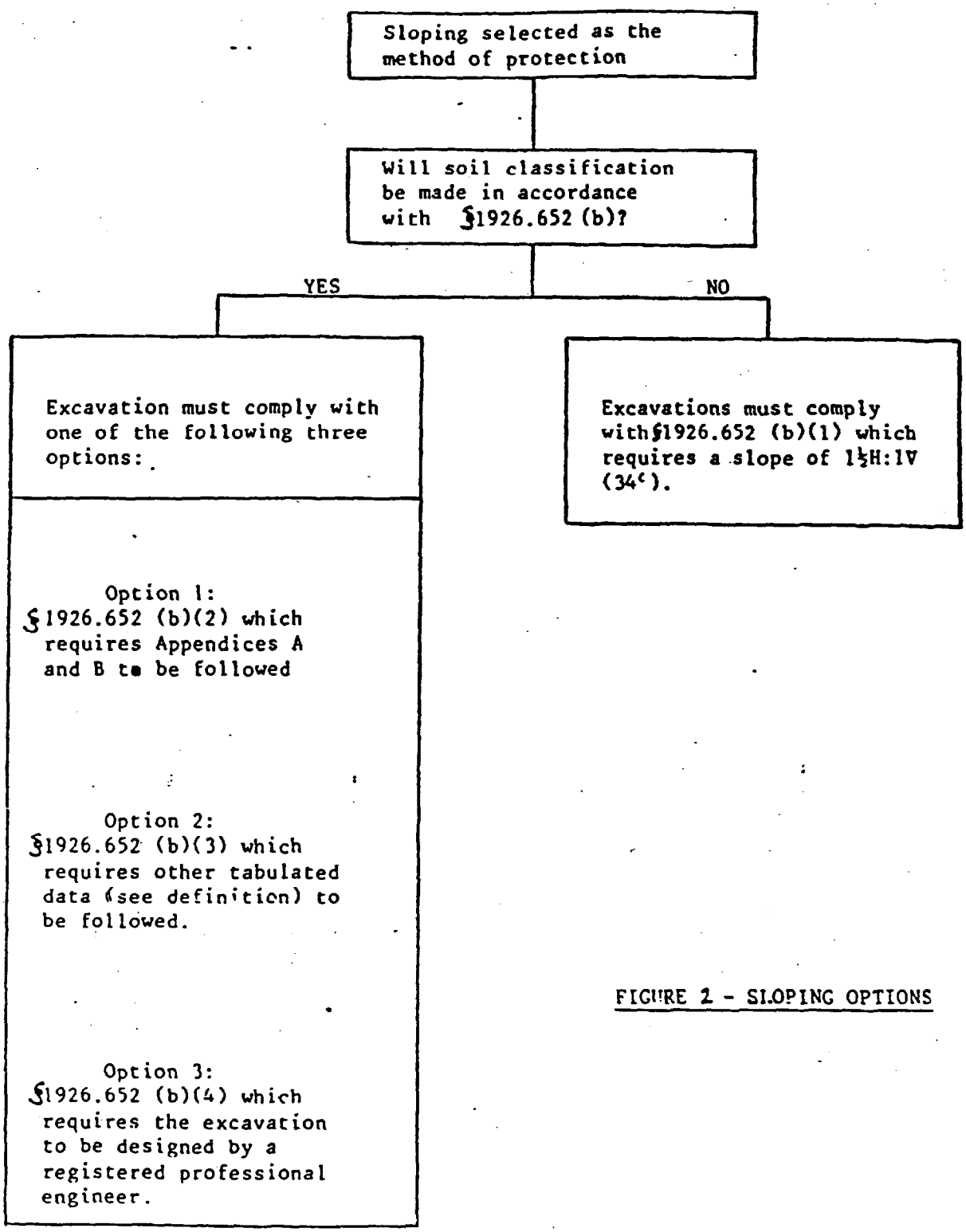


FIGURE 2 - SLOPING OPTIONS

Shoring or shielding selected as the method of protection.

Soil classification is required when shoring or shielding is used. The excavation must comply with one of the following four options:

Option 1
§1926.652 (c)(1) which requires Appendices A and C to be followed (e.g. timber shoring).

Option 2
§1926.652 (c)(2) which requires manufacturers data to be followed (e.g. hydraulic shoring, trench jacks, air shores, shields).

Option 3
§1926.652 (c)(3) which requires tabulated data (see definition) to be followed (e.g. any system as per the tabulated data).

Option 4
§1926.652 (c)(4) which requires the excavation to be designed by a registered professional engineer (e.g. any designed system).

FIGURE 3 - SHORING AND SHIELDING OPTIONS

[FR Doc. 89-25217 Filed 10-30-89; 8:45 am]
BILLING CODE 4510-26-C

SOP F202
Water Level, Water-Product Level, and Well Depth Measurements

WATER LEVEL, WATER-PRODUCT LEVEL MEASUREMENTS, AND WELL DEPTH MEASUREMENTS
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Water Level Measurement
- 5.2 Groundwater-Product Level Measurement
- 5.3 Well Depth Measurements
- 5.4 Decontamination of Measuring Devices

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

WATER LEVEL, WATER-PRODUCT LEVEL MEASUREMENTS, AND WELL DEPTH MEASUREMENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this procedure is to describe the method of determining groundwater levels and product levels, if present, in groundwater monitoring wells. This procedure also describes determining the depth of a well.

2.0 SCOPE

The methods described in this SOP generally are applicable to the measurement of water levels, product levels, and well depths in monitoring wells and piezometers.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

None.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - The Project Manager is responsible for ensuring that project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures, where applicable, or that other approved procedures are developed.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for ensuring that these procedures are implemented in the field, and for ensuring that personnel performing these activities have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures.

Sampling Personnel - It is the responsibility of the sampling personnel to follow these procedures or to follow documented, project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team Leader and/or the Project Manager. The sampling personnel are responsible for the proper acquisition of water level, water product level, and well depth measurements.

5.0 PROCEDURES

Calculations on water level and water-product level measurements collected from a monitoring well give an indication of:

- The horizontal hydraulic gradient (i.e., the direction of groundwater flow and the potential rate of movement [magnitude] in the horizontal plane).
- The vertical hydraulic gradient, if well nests are used (i.e., the direction of groundwater flow and the potential rate of movement in the vertical plane).
- Product thicknesses (either floating or sinking product).

This information, when combined with other site specific information such as hydraulic conductivity or transmissivity, extent of contamination, and product density, may be used to estimate contaminant movement or source areas, etc.

Well depth is one of the factors used to determine the zone that a well monitors. Well depth also is used in the calculation of purge volumes as discussed in SOP F104, Groundwater Sample Acquisition.

The following sections briefly discuss the procedures for measuring water levels, product levels, and well depth. For all of the procedures discussed, it is assumed that the measurement will be taken from the top of the steel protective casing, and that horizontal and vertical control is available for each well through a site survey, such that measurements may be converted to elevations above Mean Sea Level (MSL) or some other consistent datum.

5.1 Water Level Measurement

Water levels in groundwater monitoring wells shall be measured from the top of the protective steel casing, unless otherwise specified in the project plans, using an electronic water level measuring device (water level indicator). Water levels are measured by lowering the probe into the well until the device indicates that water has been encountered, usually with either a constant buzz, or a light, or both. The location on the electric cord against the measuring point surveyes on the top of the steel casing is marked. The water level is recorded to the nearest foot (rounding down) using the graduated markings on the water level indicator cord. The water level then is measured off the cord to the nearest 0.01 foot using an engineers scale. The

measurements are combined (feet plus hundreths of a foot) to yield a measurement of the depth to water below the top of the steel casing. This measurement, when subtracted from the measuring point elevation, yields the water level elevation.

Groundwater levels shall always be measured to the nearest 0.01 foot. However, reporting of water level elevations depends on the accuracy of the vertical control (typically either 0.1 or 0.01 foot).

5.2 Groundwater-Product Level Measurements

The procedure for groundwater product level measurement is nearly identical to that for water level measurements. The only differences are the use of an interface probe that detects both product and water, and the indication signal given by the measurement device. Typically, encountering product in a monitoring well is indicated by a constant sound. When water is encountered, the signal becomes an alternating on/off beeping sound. This allows for the collection of measurements for both the top of the product layer in a well and the water/product interface.

The apparent water table elevation below the product level will be determined by subtracting the "depth to water" from the measuring point elevation. The corrected water table elevation will then be calculated using the following equation:

$$WTE_c = WTE_a + (\text{Free Product Thickness} \times 0.80)$$

Where:

WTE_c = Corrected water table elevation
WTE_a = Apparent water table elevation
0.80 = Average value for the density of petroleum hydrocarbons. Site-specific data will be used where available.

5.3 Well Depth Measurements

Well depths typically are measured using a weighted measuring tape. The tape is lowered down the well until resistance is no longer felt, indicating that the weight has touched the bottom of the well. The weight should be moved in an up and down motion a few times so that obstructions, if present, may be bypassed. The slack in the tape then is collected until the tape

is taut. The well depth measurement is read directly off of the measuring tape, at the top of the steel casing, to the nearest 0.01-foot and recorded in the field logbook.

5.4 Decontamination of Measuring Devices

Water level indicators, interface probes and weighted measuring tapes that come in contact with groundwater must be decontaminated using the following steps after use in each well:

- Rinse with potable water
- Rinse with deionized water
- Rinse with:
  - Methanol or acetone (EPA Region I)
  - Methanol or acetone (EPA Region II)
  - Methanol (EPA Region III)
  - Isopropanol (EPA Region IV)
- Rinse with deionized water

Portions of the water level indicators or other similar equipment that do not come into contact with groundwater, but may encounter incidental contact during use, need only undergo potable water and deionized water rinses.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

The field logbook shall serve as the quality assurance record for water, product level or well depth measurements.

7.0 REFERENCE

U. S. EPA, 1991. Standard Operating Procedures and Quality Assurance Manual. Environmental Compliance Branch, U. S. EPA, Environmental Services Division, Athens, Georgia.

SOP F203
Photoionization Detector (PID)

PHOTOIONIZATION DETECTOR (PID)
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Calibration
- 5.2 Operation
- 5.3 Interferences and Potential Problems
- 5.4 Maintenance

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

PHOTOIONIZATION DETECTOR (PID)
HNu MODEL PI 101 and DL 101

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this SOP is to provide general reference information for using the HNu Model PI 101 or DL 101 photoionization detector (PID), or an equivalent or similar instrument, in the field. Calibration and operation, along with field maintenance will be included in this SOP.

2.0 SCOPE

This procedure provides information on the field operation and general maintenance of the HNu (PID). Application of the information contained herein will ensure that this type of field monitoring equipment will be used properly. Review of the manufacturer's instruction manual is necessary for more complete information.

These procedures refer only to monitoring for health and safety. The methods are not directly applicable to surveillance of air quality for analytical purposes.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Ionization Potential - In this case, a numeric equivalent that expresses the amount of energy needed to replace an electron with a photon. This energy is further defined in terms of electron volts (eV).

PID - Photoionization Detector

ppm - parts per million: parts of vapor or gas per million parts of air by volume.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - The Project Manager is responsible for ensuring that project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures, where applicable, or that other approved procedures are developed. The Project Manager is responsible for selecting qualified individuals for the monitoring activities.

Project Health and Safety Officer (PHSO) - The Project Health and Safety Officer is responsible for developing a site-specific Health and Safety Plan (HASP) which specifies air monitoring requirements.

Field Team Leader - It is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to implement these procedures in the field, and to ensure that the Field Investigation Personnel performing air monitoring activities, have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures before the start of site operations.

Site Health and Safety Officer (SHSO) - The SHSO is responsible for ensuring that the specified air monitoring equipment is on site, calibrated, and used correctly by the Field Personnel. The SHSO will coordinate these activities with the Field Team Leader.

Field Investigation Personnel - It is the responsibility of the Field Investigation Personnel to follow these procedures or to follow documented project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team Leader/Site Health and Safety Officer. The Field Investigation Personnel are responsible for documenting all air monitoring results in both the Field Logbook and the daily Realtime Air Monitoring Log during each field investigation.

5.0 PROCEDURES

The HNu utilizes the principle of photoionization whereby contaminant molecules enter the ion chamber and electrons are displaced by ultraviolet photons producing positive ions. These displaced positive ions are in turn collected on a special electrode. As the positive ions collect on the electrode, they create an electrical current which is amplified and displayed on the meter as a concentration in parts per million (ppm).

The HNu is only effective for contaminants that have ionization potentials (IP) of less than or equal to the electron volt (eV) capacity of the lamp (i.e., methane, having an IP of 12.98 eV, will not be detected at a lamp potential of 11.7 eV). The standard lamp is 10.2 eV with optional lamps of 9.5 eV and 11.7 eV, respectively. For the PI 101 the span settings should be as follows: 1.0 for 9.5 eV lamps; 9.8 for 10.2 eV lamps; and 5.0 for 11.7 eV lamps. During calibration, these span settings will be adjusted as necessary, using the span control knob.

The following subsections will discuss HNu calibration, operation, and maintenance. These sections, however, should not be used as a substitute for the manufacturer's instruction manual.

5.1 Calibration

For calibration purposes, the following items will be needed:

- *Gas cylinder containing 95 to 100 parts per million (ppm) of isobutylene, balance in air.
- A 0.30 liters per minute regulator.
- Connector tubing.
- Screwdriver set.
- Calibration Gas Humidifier (for high humidity environments).
- Photoionization Detector (PID) Calibration Form.

*Note: Do not rely on accuracy of rated concentration when cylinder content drops to <200 psi.

Prior to each use, make sure that the battery is fully charged, the ultraviolet lamp is working, and that the fan is operating and drawing air into the probe (fan operates at approximately 100 cc/minute). Procedures for completing these preliminary activities are given in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

PI 101

To calibrate the HNu PI 101, the steps provided below should be followed. For an itemized description of the calibration process, refer to Section 3-5 in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

- Turn the function control switch to the standby position and zero the instrument by turning the zero adjustment knob to align the indicator needle with zero on the readout meter.

- Set the range on the HNu and allow the instrument to warm up a few minutes before calibrating. Choices for range are 0-20, 0-200, and 0-2,000 ppm, respectively. Range choice must take into account the concentration of the calibration gas. If you have to zero the instrument in the desired range, record background if present.

- Calibrate the HNu PID to benzene equivalents using a concentration of 100 ppm isobutylene as the calibration gas. For example, if you are using the 10.2 eV probe, your range should be set on the 0-200 scale, and calibrated to 56 ppm (i.e., adjust span

so that the instrument reads 56 units with 100 ppm isobutylene connected). Using the 11.7 eV probe the PID should read 65 units with 100 ppm of isobutylene.

- Attach tubing to the regulator (use the Calibration Gas Humidifier in high humidity environments).

- Attach the free end of the tubing to the probe and turn on the calibration gas.

- If the reading on the meter is not ±5 percent of the concentration of the calibration gas, adjust the span setting knob until the meter reads accordingly. If after adjusting the span setting knob the readout meter is still not responding, refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual. Also, when the HNu is calibrated it should respond to a minimum of 90 percent of the concentration of the calibration gas within three seconds after introduction of that gas. If proper calibration cannot be obtained, internal calibration may be required. Note, only qualified personnel should perform internal calibrations.

- Record the calibration on the "Photoionization Detector (PID) Calibration Form".

<u>DL 101</u>

To calibrate the HNu DL 101, the steps provided below should be followed. For an itemized description of the calibration process, refer to Section 4.4 in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

- Press and release the POWER button on the keypad and wait for the screen to stabilize then press the CALIBRATE key until "Calibrate?" appears. At this point press the ENTER key until "Elec_Zero? Yes" appears on the screen in which case you will press the ENTER key, again, to confirm the electronic zero.

- The display will now read "CE/ENT/EXIT Conc = ____ ppm" which requires the concentration of the calibration gas (noted on the side of the calibration gas bottle) to be entered on the keypad. The display will prompt you to "Attach gas to probe and /ENTER/" so attach tubing to probe (use the calibration gas humidifier in high humidity environments), open valve, and press ENTER key. Press ENTER again when "Press ENTER when Ready: xxx ppm" appears on screen. This will cause "Calibrating...Please Wait" to appear on screen.

Note: This calibration is effective when the instrument is in the Survey Mode, which is the default mode. For calibrations other the one described, or if proper calibration cannot be obtained, refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual.

- For calibrations using an alternate gas or span values, refer to Section 4.5 of the manufacturer's instruction manual.

- Record the calibration on the "Photoionization Detector (PID) Calibration Form" which accompanies each HNu.

5.2 Operation

PI 101

Note: IMPORTANT - The HNu should be "zeroed" in a fresh air environment if at all possible. If there is a background concentration, it must be documented and then zeroed out.

- Prior to each use of the HNu, check that the battery is fully charged by turning the dial to BATT and making sure that it is within range. Also make sure that the ultraviolet lamp and the fan are working properly.
- Select your desired range. HNu ranges consists of a 0-20, 0-200, and 0-2,000 ppm, respectively. Consult with the Field Team Leader for more information when choosing the appropriate range, however, in most instances the range will be set initially at 0-20.
- When HNu is used intermittently, turn knob to STANDBY to help in extending the life of the UV lamp when operating in a low humidity environment. Otherwise, leave the knob set to the range desired so that the UV lamp will "burn off" any accumulated moisture.

Note: When using the PI 101 HNu, make sure that the probe does not contact water or soil during sampling. This will cause erroneous readings and will possibly damage the instrument.

DL 101

The DL 101 is designed to default to the survey mode when initially powered up, therefore once the calibration has been completed, the instrument is ready to go. Within the survey mode several options are available, briefly these options include:

(1) The Site Function

The Site function assigns a number to a site that is being analyzed. Press the Site Key on the keypad to enter a specific site number, or press the gray button on the rear of the probe to increment a site number.

(2) Logging Data

The Log function stores data in memory. To log data, press the Log key on the keypad or the Log button on the back of the probe. "Log" will appear in the upper right corner of the display when activated and disappears when not activated. To turn logging off, press either the Log key on the keypad or the red Log button on the rear of the probe.

- The DL 101 allows for the interchanging of different voltage lamps, however, refer to the manufacturer's instructions before attempting to change the lamp.

- The DL 101 also offers three other modes of operation, the Hazardous Waste Mode, the Industrial Hygiene Mode, and the Leak Detection Mode. Each of these modes increases the range of capabilities for this instrument which is covered in detail in the manufacturer's instruction manual.

Note: When using the DL 101 HNu, make sure that the probe does not contact water or soil during sampling. This will cause erroneous readings and will possibly damage the instrument.

5.3 Interferences and Potential Problems

A number of factors can affect the response of the PI 101 HNu and DL 101 HNu.

- High humidity can cause lamp fogging and decreased sensitivity. This can be significant when soil moisture levels are high, or when monitoring a soil gas well that is accessible to groundwater.

- High concentrations of methane can cause a downscale deflection of the meter.

- High and low temperature, electrical fields, FM radio transmission, and naturally occurring compounds, such as terpines in wooded areas, will also affect instrument response.

5.4 Maintenance

The best way to keep an HNu operating properly is to keep it as clean as possible. HNu's should be decontaminated and wiped down after each use.

Corrective Maintenance

- The ultraviolet lamp should be periodically cleaned using a special compound supplied by HNu Systems, Inc. for the 10.2 eV lamp, and a chlorinated solvent such as 1,1,1-trichloroethane for the 11.7eV lamp. Consult the manufacturer's instruction manual for specific cleaning instructions.

- The ionization chamber can be periodically cleaned with methyl alcohol and a swab.

Note: UV lamp and ion chamber cleaning is accomplished by following the procedures outlined in Section 5.2, however, this should only be performed by trained personnel.

- Documenting the HNu's observed symptoms and then referring to the manufacturer's instruction manual section on troubleshooting (Section 6.0) also can be employed. If this does not work, the Field Team Leader should be consulted for an appropriate course of action.

Repair and Warranty Repair - HNu's have different warranties for different parts, so documenting the problem and sending it into the manufacturer assists in expediting repair time and obtaining appropriate warranty service.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Quality assurance records will be maintained for each air monitoring event. The following information shall be recorded in the Field Logbook and the daily Realtime Air Monitoring Logs that accompany the HNu.

- Identification - Site name, location, CTO number, activity monitored, (surface water sampling, soil sampling, etc.) serial number, time, resulting concentration, comments and identity of air monitoring personnel.

- Field observations - Appearance of sampled media (if definable).

- Additional remarks (e.g., the HNu meter had wide range fluctuations during air monitoring activities).

7.0 REFERENCES

HNu Systems, Inc. Instruction Manual. Model PI 101, 1986.

HNu Systems, Inc. Operator's Manual. Model DL 101, 1991.

SOP F301
Sample Preservation and Handling

SAMPLE PRESERVATION AND HANDLING
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Sample Containers
- 5.2 Preservation Techniques
- 5.3 Sample Holding Times

6.0 SAMPLE HANDLING AND TRANSPORTATION

7.0 REFERENCES

SAMPLE PRESERVATION AND HANDLING

1.0 PURPOSE

This SOP describes the appropriate containers for samples of particular matrices, and the steps necessary to preserve those samples when shipped off site for chemical analysis.

2.0 SCOPE

Some chemicals react with sample containers made of certain materials; for example, trace metals adsorb more strongly to glass than to plastic, while many organic chemicals may dissolve various types of plastic containers. It is therefore critical to select the correct container in order to maintain the integrity of the sample prior to analysis.

Many water and soil samples are unstable and may change in chemical character during shipment. Therefore, preservation of the sample may be necessary when the time interval between field collection and laboratory analysis is long enough to produce changes in either the concentration or the physical condition of the constituent(s). While complete and irreversible preservation of samples is not possible, preservation does retard the chemical and biological changes that may occur after the sample is collected.

Preservation techniques are usually limited to pH control, chemical addition(s), and refrigeration/freezing. Their purposes are to (1) retard biological activity, (2) retard hydrolysis of chemical compounds/complexes, (3) reduce constituent volatility, and (4) reduce adsorption effects.

Sample container and preservation requirements for the CLEAN Program are referenced in NEESA 20.2-047B and are provided in Attachment A of this SOP. Note that sample container requirements (i.e., volumes) may vary by laboratory.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

HCl - Hydrochloric Acid
H_2SO_4- Sulfuric Acid
HNO_3 - Nitric Acid
NaOH - Sodium Hydroxide

Normality (N) - Concentration of a solution expressed as equivalents per liter, where an equivalent is the amount of a substance containing one mole of replaceable hydrogen or its equivalent. Thus, a one molar solution of HCl, containing one mole of H, is "one-normal," while a one molar solution of H_2SO_4 containing two moles of H, is "two-normal."

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - The Project Manager is responsible for ensuring that project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures, where applicable, or that other, approved procedures are developed. The Project Manager is responsible for development of documentation of procedures which deviate from those presented herein.

Field Team Leader - It is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to ensure that these procedures are implemented in the field and to ensure that personnel performing sampling activities have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures.

Sampling Personnel - It is the responsibility of the field sampling personnel to initiate sample preservation and handling.

5.0 PROCEDURES

The following procedures discuss sample containerization and preservation techniques that are to be followed when collecting environmental samples for laboratory analysis.

5.1 Sample Containers

For most samples and analytical parameters either glass or plastic containers are satisfactory. In general, if the analyte(s) to be measured is organic in nature, the container shall be made of glass. If the analyte(s) is inorganic, then the container shall be plastic. Containers shall be

kept out of direct sunlight (to minimize biological or photo-oxidation/photolysis of constituents) until they reach the analytical laboratory. The sample container shall have approximately five to ten percent air space ("ullage") to allow for expansion/vaporization if the sample is heated during transport (one liter of water at 4°C expands by 15 milliliters if heated to 130°F/55°C); however, head space for volatile organic analyses shall be omitted.

The analytical laboratory shall provide sample containers that have been certified clean according to USEPA procedures. Shipping containers for samples, consisting of sturdy ice chests, are to be provided by the laboratory.

Once opened, the sample container must be used at once for storage of a particular sample. Unused, but opened, containers are to be considered contaminated and must be discarded. Because of the potential for introduction of contamination, they cannot be reclosed and saved for later use. Likewise, any unused containers which appear contaminated upon receipt, or which are found to have loose caps or missing liners (if required for the container) shall be discarded.

General sample container, preservative, and holding time requirements are listed in Attachment A.

5.2 Preservation Tèchniques

The preservation techniques to be used for various analytes are listed in Attachment A. Reagents required for sample preservation will either be added to the sample containers by the laboratory prior to their shipment to the field or added in the field using laboratory supplied preservatives. In general, aqueous samples of low concentration organics (or soil samples of low or medium concentration organics) are cooled to 4°C. Medium concentration aqueous samples and high hazard organics samples are not preserved. Low concentration aqueous samples for metals are acidified with HNO_3, while medium concentration and high hazard aqueous metal samples are not preserved. Low or medium concentration soil samples for metals are cooled to 4°C, while high hazard samples are not preserved. Unless documented otherwise in the project plans, all samples shall be considered low concentration. All samples preserved with chemicals shall be clearly identified by indicating on the sample label that the sample is preserved.

5.3 Sample Holding Times

The elapsed time between sample collection and initiation of laboratory analyses must be within a prescribed time frame for each individual analysis to be performed. Sample holding times for routine sample collection are provided in Attachment A.

6.0 SAMPLE HANDLING AND TRANSPORTATION

After collection, the outside of all sample containers will be wiped clean with a damp paper towel; however sample handling should be minimized. Personnel should use extreme care to ensure that samples are not contaminated. If samples are placed in an ice chest, personnel should ensure that melted ice cannot cause sample containers to become submerged, as this may result in sample cross-contamination. Sealable plastic bags, (zipper-type bags), should be used when glass sample containers are placed in ice chests to prevent cross-contamination, if breakage should occur.

Samples may be hand delivered to the laboratory or they may be shipped by common carrier. Relevant regulations for the storage and shipping of samples are contained in 40 CFR 261.4(d). Parallel state regulations may also be relevant. Shipment of dangerous goods by air cargo is also regulated by the United Nations/International Civil Aviation Organization (UN/ICAO). The Dangerous Goods Regulations promulgated by the International Air Transport Association (IATA) meet or exceed DOT and UN/ICAO requirements and should be used for shipment of dangerous goods via air cargo. Standard procedure for shipping environmental samples are given in Attachment B.

7.0 REFERENCES

American Public Health Association, 1981. Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater. 15th Edition. APHA, Washington, D.C.

USEPA, 1984. "Guidelines Establishing Test Procedures for the Analysis of Pollutants under Clean Water Act." Federal Register, Volume 49 (209), October 26, 1984, p. 43234.

USEPA, 1979. Methods for Chemical Analysis of Water and Wastes. EPA-600/4-79-020. USEPA EMSL, Cincinnati, Ohio.

USEPA, Region IV, 1991. Environmental Compliance Branch Standard Operating Procedures and Quality Assurance Manual. Athens, Georgia.

ATTACHMENT A

REQUIRED CONTAINER, PRESERVATION TECHNIQUES AND HOLDING TIMES

ATTACHMENT A

REQUIRED CONTAINERS, PRESERVATIVE TECHNIQUES AND HOLDING TIMES

Parameter	EPA Document SW-846 (3rd Ed.)				Contract Laboratory Protocol			
	Container	Preservative	Holding Time[1]		Container	Preservative	Holding Time[2]	
			Soil	Water			Soil	Water
Volatiles by GC/MS and GC	Water - 40 mL glass vial with Teflon-lined septa Soil-glass with Teflon-lined septa	Cool to 4°C	14 days	14 days	Water - 40 mL glass vial with Teflon-lined septa Soil-glass with Teflon-lined septa	4 days conc. HCl Cool to 4°C	10 days	10 days
PCB/Pesticides	G, Teflon-lined lid	Cool to 4°C	Extract within 7 days, analyze 40 days	Extract within 7 days, analyze 40 days	G, Teflon-lined lid	Cool to 4°C	Extract within 10 days, analyze 40 days	Extract within 5 days, analyze 40 days
Extractable Organics	G, Teflon-lined lid	Cool to 4°C	Extract within 7 days, analyze 40 days	Extract within 7 days, analyze 40 days	G, Teflon-lined lid	Cool to 4°C	Extract within 10 days, analyze 40 days	Extract within 5 days, analyze 40 days
Metals[3]	P, G	HNO_3 to pH <2	6 months	6 months	P, G	HNO_3 to pH <2	180 days	180 days
Mercury	P, G	HNO_3 to pH <2	28 days	28 days	P, G	HNO_3 to pH <2	26 days	26 days
Cyanide	P, G	NaOH to pH >12 Cool to 4°C Add 0.6 g ascorbic acid if residual chlorine present	14 days	14 days	P, G	NaOH to pH >12 Cool to 4°C Add 0.6 g ascorbic acid if residual chlorine present	14 days	14 days
Chromium (Hexavalent)	P, G	HNO_3 to pH <2	24 hrs.	24 hrs.	P, G	HNO_3 to pH <2	24 hrs.	24 hrs.

(1) From date of sample collection in field.

(2) From date of sample receipt at laboratory.

(3) Dissolved metals (liquid) must be field filtered prior to preservation.

Note: Check with laboratory for specific volume requirements.

ATTACHMENT B

SAMPLE SHIPPING PROCEDURES

ATTACHMENT B

SAMPLE SHIPPING PROCEDURES

Introduction

Samples collected during field investigations or in response to a hazardous materials incident must be classified by the project leader, prior to shipping by air, as either environmental or hazardous materials samples. The guidance for complying with U.S. DOT regulations in shipping environmental laboratory samples is given in the "National Guidance Package for Compliance with Department of Transportation Regulations in the Shipment of Environmental Laboratory Samples."

Pertinent regulations for the shipping of samples is given in 40 CFR 261.4(d). Samples collected from process wastewater streams, drums, bulk storage tanks, soil, sediment, or water samples from areas suspected of being highly contaminated may require shipment as dangerous goods. Regulations for packing, marking, labeling, and shipping of dangerous goods by air transport are promulgated by the United Nations International Civil Aviation Organization (UN/ICAO),which is equivalent to IATA.

Environmental samples shall be packed prior to shipment by commercial air carrier using the following procedures:

1. Select a sturdy cooler in good repair. Secure and tape the drain plug (inside and outside) with fiber or duct tape. Line the cooler with a large heavy duty plastic bag. This practice keeps the inside of the cooler clean and minimizes cleanup at the laboratory after samples are removed.

2. Allow sufficient headspace (ullage) in all bottles (except VOAs) to compensate for any pressure and temperature changes (approximately 10 percent of the volume of the container).

3. Be sure the lids on all bottles are tight (will not leak). In many regions custody seals are also applied to sample container lids. The reason for this practice is two-fold: to maintain integrity of samples and keep lid on the container should the lid loosen during shipment. Check with the appropriate regional procedures prior to field work. In many cases, the laboratory manager of the analytical lot to be used on a particular project can also provide this information.

4. It is good practice to wrap all glass containers in bubblewrap prior to placing in plastic bags.

5. Place all bottles in separate and appropriately sized polyethylene bags and seal the bags with tape (preferably plastic electrical tape, unless the bag is a zipper-type bag). Up to three VOA bottles, separately wrapped in bubblewrap, may be packed in one plastic bag.

6. Optionally, place three to six VOA vials in a quart metal can and then fill the can with vermiculite.

7. Place two to four inches of vermiculite (ground corn cob, or other inert packing material) in the bottom of the cooler and then place the bottles and cans in the cooler with sufficient space to allow for the addition of more vermiculite between the bottles and cans.

8. Put frozen "blue ice" (or ice that has been placed in properly sealed, double-bagged, heavy duty polyethylene bags) on top of and between the samples. Fill all remaining space between the bottles or cans with packing material. Fold and securely fasten the top of the large garbage bag with tape (preferably electrical or duct).

9. Place the Chain-of-Custody Record and the Request for Analysis Form (if applicable) into a plastic bag, tape the bag to the inner side of the cooler lid, and then close the cooler and securely tape (preferably with fiber tape) the top of the cooler unit. Wrap the tape three to four times around each side of the cooler unit. Chain-of-custody seals should be affixed to the top and sides of the cooler within the securing tape so that the cooler cannot be opened without breaking the seal.

10. Each cooler (if multiple coolers) should have its own Chain-of-Custody Record reflecting the samples shipped in that cooler.

11. Label according to 40 CFR 261.4(d). The shipping containers should be marked "THIS END UP," and arrow labels which indicate the proper upward position of the container should be affixed to the container. A label containing the name and address of the shipper and laboratory shall be placed on the outside of the container. It is good practice to secure this label with clear plastic tape to prevent removal during shipment by blurring of important information should the label become wet. The commercial carrier is not required to sign the COC record as long as the custody seals remain intact and the COC record stays in the cooler. The only other documentation required is the completed airbill, which is secured to the top of the shipping container. Please note several coolers/shipping containers may be shipped under one airbill. However, each cooler must be labeled as "Cooler 1 of 3, Cooler 2 of 3, etc.", prior to shipping. Additionally it is good practice to label each COC form to correspond to each cooler (i.e., 1 of 3, 2 of 3, etc.).

A timely process for disposing of investigation wastes may be:

1. LANTDIV would assist the team management in obtaining the necessary EPA generator numbers.

2. Team personnel would not sign the required manifests as generators of site investigation wastes; this remains the responsibility of LANTDIV or the facility.

3. The team management and LANTDIV would jointly identify authorized, permitted facilities for proper treatment, storage and/or disposal of wastes. However, LANTDIV would make the final determination on disposition.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Quality Assurance Records shall consist of, at a minimum:

- Container logs recorded during the site investigation
- Weekly storage inspection reports, if applicable
- Analytical results from applicable environmental samples
- Mainfests and similarly regulated documents

7.0 REFERENCES

Federal Register. 40 CFR Parts 261, 263, and 761.

SOP F302
Chain-of-Custody

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Sample Identification
- 5.2 Chain-of-Custody Procedures

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this SOP is to provide information on chain-of-custody procedures to be used under the CLEAN Program.

2.0 SCOPE

This procedure describes the steps necessary for transferring samples through the use of Chain-of-Custody Records. A Chain-of-Custody Record is required, without exception, for the tracking and recording of samples collected for on-site or off-site analysis (chemical or geotechnical) during program activities (except wellhead samples taken for measurement of field parameters, SOP F101). Use of the Chain-of-Custody Record Form creates an accurate written record that can be used to trace the possession and handling of the sample from the moment of its collection through analysis. This procedure identifies the necessary custody records and describes their completion. This procedure does not take precedence over region-specific or site-specific requirements for chain-of-custody.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Chain-of-Custody Record Form - A Chain-of-Custody Record Form is a printed two-part form that accompanies a sample or group of samples as custody of the sample(s) is transferred from one custodian to another custodian. One copy of the form must be retained in the project file.

Custodian - The person responsible for the custody of samples at a particular time, until custody is transferred to another person (and so documented), who then becomes custodian. A sample is under one's custody if:

- It is in one's actual possession.
- It is in one's view, after being in one's physical possession.
- It was in one's physical possession and then he/she locked it up to prevent tampering.
- It is in a designated and identified secure area.

Sample - A sample is physical evidence collected from a facility or the environment, which is representative of conditions at the point and time that it was collected.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - The Project Manager is responsible for ensuring that project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures, where applicable, or that other, approved procedures are developed. The Project Manager is responsible for development of documentation of procedures which deviate from those presented herein. The Project Manager is responsible for ensuring that chain-of-custody procedures are implemented. The Project Manager also is responsible for determining that custody procedures have been met by the analytical laboratory.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for determining that chain-of-custody procedures are implemented up to and including release to the shipper or laboratory. It is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to ensure that these procedures are implemented in the field and to ensure that personnel performing sampling activities have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures.

Sampling Personnel - It is the responsibility of the field sampling personnel to initiate chain-of-custody procedures, and maintain custody of samples until they are relinquished to another custodian, the sample shipper, or to a common carrier.

5.0 PROCEDURES

The term "chain-of-custody" refers to procedures which ensure that evidence presented in a court of law is valid. The chain-of-custody procedures track the evidence from the time and place it is first obtained to the courtroom, as well as providing security for the evidence as it is moved and/or passed from the custody of one individual to another.

Chain-of-custody procedures, recordkeeping, and documentation are an important part of the management control of samples. Regulatory agencies must be able to provide the chain-of-possession and custody of any samples that are offered for evidence, or that form the basis of analytical test results introduced as evidence. Written procedures must be available and followed whenever evidence samples are collected, transferred, stored, analyzed, or destroyed.

5.1 Sample Identification

The method of identification of a sample depends on the type of measurement or analysis performed. When in-situ measurements are made, the data are recorded directly in bound logbooks or other field data records with identifying information.

Information which shall be recorded in the field logbook, when in-situ measurements or samples for laboratory analysis are collected, includes:

- Field Sampler(s);
- CTO Number;
- Project Sample Number;
- Sample location or sampling station number;
- Date and time of sample collection and/or measurement;
- Field observations;
- Equipment used to collect samples and measurements; and,
- Calibration data for equipment used.

Measurements and observations shall be recorded using waterproof ink.

5.1.1 Sample Label

Samples, other than in-situ measurements, are removed and transported from the sample location to a laboratory or other location for analysis. Before removal, however, a sample is often divided into portions, depending upon the analyses to be performed. Each portion is preserved in accordance with the Sampling and Analysis Plan. Each sample container is identified by a sample label (see Attachment A). Sample labels are provided, along with sample containers, by the analytical laboratory. The information recorded on the sample label includes:

- Project - Contract Task Order (CTO) Number.
- Station Location - The unique sample number identifying this sample.
- Date - A six-digit number indicating the day, month, and year of sample collection (e.g., 12/21/85).
- Time - A four-digit number indicating the 24-hour time of collection (for example: 0954 is 9:54 am., and 1629 is 4:29 p.m.).
- Medium - Water, soil, sediment, sludge, waste, etc.

- Sample Type - Grab or composite.
- Preservation - Type and quantity of preservation added.
- Analysis - VOA, BNAs, PCBs, pesticides, metals, cyanide, other.
- Sampled By - Printed name of the sampler.
- Remarks - Any pertinent additional information.

Using only the work assignment number of the sample label maintains the anonymity of sites. This may be necessary, even to the extent of preventing the laboratory performing the analysis from knowing the identity of the site (e.g., if the laboratory is part of an organization that has performed previous work on the site).

5.2 Chain-of-Custody Procedures

After collection, separation, identification, and preservation, the sample is maintained under chain-of-custody procedures until it is in the custody of the analytical laboratory and has been stored or disposed.

5.2.1 Field Custody Procedures

- Samples are collected as described in the site Sampling and Analysis Plan. Care must be taken to record precisely the sample location and to ensure that the sample number on the label matches the Chain-of-Custody Record exactly.
- The person undertaking the actual sampling in the field is responsible for the care and custody of the samples collected until they are properly transferred or dispatched.
- When photographs are taken of the sampling as part of the documentation procedure, the name of the photographer, date, time, site location, and site description are entered sequentially in the site logbook as photos are taken. Once developed, the photographic prints shall be serially numbered, corresponding to the logbook descriptions; photographs will be stored in the project files. It is good practice to identify sample locations in photographs by including an easily read sign with the appropriate sample/location number.
- Sample labels shall be completed for each sample, using waterproof ink unless prohibited by weather conditions, e.g., a logbook notation would explain that a pencil was used to fill out the sample label if the pen would not function in freezing weather.

5.2.2 Transfer of Custody and Shipment

Samples are accompanied by a Chain-of-Custody Record Form. A Chain-of-Custody Record Form example is shown in Attachment B. When transferring the possession of samples, the individual(s) relinquishing and receiving will sign, date, and note the time on the Record. This Record documents sample custody transfer from the sampler, often through another person, to the analyst in the laboratory. The Chain-of-Custody Record is filled out as given below.

- Enter header information (CTO number, samplers, and project name).
- Enter sample specific information (sample number, media, sample analysis required and analytical method grab or composite, number and type of sample containers, and date/time sample was collected).
- Sign, date, and enter the time under "Relinquished by" entry.
- Have the person receiving the sample sign the "Received by" entry. If shipping samples by a common carrier, print the carrier to be used in this space (i.e., Federal Express).
- If a carrier is used, enter the airbill number under "Remarks," in the bottom right corner;
- Place the original (top, signed copy) of the Chain-of-Custody Record Form in a plastic zipper-type bag or other appropriate sample shipping package. Retain the copy with field records.
- Sign and date the custody seal, a 1- by 3-inch white paper label with black lettering and an adhesive backing. Attachment C is an example of a custody seal. The custody seal is part of the chain-of-custody process and is used to prevent tampering with samples after they have been collected in the field. Custody seals shall be provided by the analytical laboratory.
- Place the seal across the shipping container opening so that it would be broken if the container was to be opened.
- Complete other carrier-required shipping papers.

The custody record is completed using waterproof ink. Any corrections are made by drawing a line through and initialing and dating the change, then entering the correct information. Erasures are not permitted.

Common carriers will usually not accept responsibility for handling Chain-of-Custody Record Forms; this necessitates packing the record in the sample container (enclosed with other

documentation in a plastic zipper-type bag). As long as custody forms are sealed inside the sample container and the custody seals are intact, commercial carriers are not required to sign the custody form.

The laboratory representative who accepts the incoming sample shipment signs and dates the Chain-of-Custody Record, completing the sample transfer process. It is then the laboratory's responsibility to maintain internal logbooks and custody records throughout sample preparation and analysis.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Once samples have been packaged and shipped, the COC copy and airbill receipt becomes part of the Quality Assurance Record.

7.0 REFERENCES

1. USEPA. User's Guide to the Contract Laboratory Program. Office of Emergency and Remedial Response, Washington, D.C. (EPA/540/P-91/002), January 1991.

ATTACHMENT A

EXAMPLE SAMPLE LABEL

ATTACHMENT A

EXAMPLE SAMPLE LABEL

Baker

Baker Environmental Inc.
Airport Office Park, Bldg. 3
420 Rouser Road
Coraopolis, PA 15108

Project: 19026-SRN CTO No.: 0026

Sample Description: Groundwater

Date: 09/17/92 Sampler: ABC

Time: 0944

Analysis: TAL Metals (CAP) Preservation: HNO_3

Project Sample No.: CAX-GW-04

Note: Typically, sample labels are provided by the analytical laboratory and may be used instead of the above. However, samplers should make sure all pertinent information can be affixed to the label used.

ATTACHMENT B

EXAMPLE CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY RECORD

Baker

Baker Environmental, Inc.
420 Rouser Road, AOP Building 3, Coraopolis, PA 15108

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY RECORD

PROJECT NO.:

SITE NAME:

SAMPLERS (SIGNATURE):

STATION NO.	DATE	TIME	COMP	GRAB	STATION LOCATION	NO. OF CON-TAINERS							REMARKS

RELINQUISHED BY (SIGNATURE):	DATE/TIME:	RECEIVED BY (SIGNATURE):	RELINQUISHED BY (SIGNATURE):	DATE/TIME:	RECEIVED BY (SIGNATURE):
RELINQUISHED BY (SIGNATURE):	DATE/TIME:	RECEIVED BY (SIGNATURE):	RELINQUISHED BY (SIGNATURE):	DATE/TIME:	RECEIVED BY (SIGNATURE):
RELINQUISHED BY (SIGNATURE):	DATE/TIME:	RECEIVED FOR LABORATORY BY (SIGNATURE):	DATE/TIME:	REMARKS:	

ATTACHMENT C

EXAMPLE CUSTODY SEAL

ATTACHMENT C

EXAMPLE CUSTODY SEAL

Baker ____/____/____ Date _____ Signature CUSTODY SEAL	Baker ____/____/____ Date _____ Signature CUSTODY SEAL

SOP F303
Field Logbook

FIELD LOGBOOK
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PURPOSE

2.0 SCOPE

3.0 DEFINITIONS

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

5.0 PROCEDURES
- 5.1 Cover
- 5.2 Daily Entries
- 5.3 Photographs

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

7.0 REFERENCES

FIELD LOGBOOK

1.0 PURPOSE

This SOP describes the process for maintaining a field logbook.

2.0 SCOPE

The field logbook is a document which records all major on site activities conducted during a field investigation. At a minimum, the following activities/events shall be recorded in the field logbook by each member of the field crew.

- Arrival/departure of site workers and visitors
- Arrival/departure of equipment
- Sample pickup (sample numbers, carrier, time)
- Sampling activities
- Start or completion of boreholes, monitoring wells, or sampling activities
- Health and safety issues

The field logbook is initiated upon arrival at the site for the start of the first on site activity. Entries are made every day that on site activities take place. At least one field logbook shall be maintained per site.

The field logbook becomes part of the permanent site file. Because information contained in the field logbook may be admitted as evidence in legal proceedings, it is critical that this document is properly maintained.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Field logbook - The field logbook is a bound notebook with consecutively numbered pages. Upon entry of data, the logbook requires the signature of the responsible data/information recorder.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

The Field Team Leader is responsible for maintaining a master field logbook for the duration of on site activities. Each member of the sampling crew is responsible for maintaining a complete and accurate record of site activities for the duration of the project.

5.0 PROCEDURES

The following sections discuss some of the information which must be recorded in the field logbook. In general, a record of all events and activities, as well as other potentially important information shall be recorded by each member of the field team.

5.1 Cover

The inside cover or title page of each field logbook shall contain the following information:

- Contract Task Order Number
- Project name and location
- Name of Field Team Leader
- Baker's address and telephone number
- Start date
- If several logbooks are required, a sequential field logbook number

It is good practice to list important phone numbers and points of contact here.

5.2 Daily Entries

Daily entries into the logbook may contain a variety of information. At the beginning of each day the following information must be recorded by each team member.

- Date
- Start time
- Weather
- All field personnel present
- All visitors present
- Other pertinent information (i.e., planned activities, schedule changes, expected visitors, and equipment changes)

During the day, an ongoing record of all site activities should be written in the logbook. The master logbook kept by the field team leader need not duplicate that recorded in other field logbooks, but should summarize the information in other books and, where appropriate, reference the page numbers of other logbooks where detailed information pertaining to a subject may be found.

Some specific information which must be recorded in the logbook includes:

- Equipment used, equipment numbers, calibration, field servicing
- Field measurements
- Sample numbers, media, bottle size, preservatives, collection methods, and time
- Test boring and monitoring well construction information, including boring/well number and location
- Sketches for each sample location including appropriate measurements if required.
- Photograph log
- Drum log
- Other pertinent information

All entries should be made in indelible ink; all pages numbered consecutively; and all pages must be signed or initiated and dated by the responsible field personnel completing the log. No erasures are permitted. If an incorrect entry is made, the entry shall be crossed out with a single line, initialed, and dated.

5.3 Photographs

If photographs are permitted at a site, the record shall be maintained in the field logbook. When movies, slides or photographs are taken of any site location, they are numbered or cross-referenced to correspond to logbook entries. The name of the photographer, date, time, site location, site description, direction of view and weather conditions are entered in the logbook as the photographs are taken. Special lenses, film, or other image-enhancement techniques also must be noted in the field logbook. Once processed, photographs shall be serially numbered and labeled corresponding to the field logbook entries. Note that it may not be permitted to take photographs at all Activities; permission must be obtained from the LANTDIV EIC and the Activity responsible individual.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Once on site activities have been completed, the field logbook shall be considered a quality assurance record.

7.0 REFERENCES

None.

SOP F501
Decontamination of Drilling Rigs and Monitoring Well Materials

DECONTAMINATION OF DRILLING RIGS AND MONITORING WELL MATERIALS

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this SOP is to provide a general reference regarding the proper decontamination of drilling rigs and monitoring well materials used in the performance of field investigations.

2.0 SCOPE

This procedure addresses drilling equipment, test pit equipment (i.e. backhoe) and monitoring well material decontamination and should be consulted during the preparation of project-specific plans. This procedure does not pertain to personnel decontamination, or to chemical sampling or field analytical equipment decontamination.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Decontamination - Decontamination is the process of removing or neutralizing contaminants which may have accumulated on field equipment. This process ensures protection of personnel from penetrating substances, reduces or eliminates transfer of contaminants to clean areas, prevents mixing of incompatible substances, and minimizes the likelihood of sample cross-contamination.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - It is the responsibility of the Project Manager to ensure that project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures. Documentation should be developed for areas where project plans deviate from these procedures.

Field Team Leader - It is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to ensure that these procedures are implemented in the field. The Field Team Leader is responsible for ensuring the field personnel overseeing decontamination activities, and personnel conducting the activities have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures.

Drilling Inspector (Site Geologist, Rig Geologist etc.) - It is the responsibility of the drilling inspector to ensure that the drilling subcontractor follows these, or other project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team Leader.

5.0 PROCEDURE

The various drilling equipment and materials involved with test boring, test pit excavation, subsurface soil sampling, and monitoring well construction must be properly decontaminated to ensure that chemical analysis results reflect actual concentrations present at sampling locations. These procedures will minimize the potential for cross contamination between sampling locations and the transfer of contamination off site.

5.1 Equipment

All drilling equipment involved in field sampling activities shall be decontaminated prior to drilling, excavation, or sampling activities. Such equipment includes drilling rigs, backhoes, augers, downhole tools, well casings, and screens. Split-spoon soil samplers and other similar soil sampling devices shall be decontaminated according to the procedures given in SOP F502.

5.2 Decontamination Procedures

Prior to drilling, or leaving the site, large equipment not directly utilized for sampling will be decontaminated by steam-cleaning in a designated area. The decontamination procedure consists of steam-cleaning the equipment, using potable water as the steam source, to remove visible signs of soils or wastes, and allowing the equipment to air dry. If necessary, the equipment may be cleaned with a scrub brush and alconox/liquinox-water solution prior to steam cleaning to remove visible signs of contamination.

The steam cleaning area will be designed to contain decontamination wastes and waste waters, and can be a lined, excavated pit or a bermed concrete or asphalt pad. For the latter, a floor-drain must be provided which is connected to a holding tank. A shallow, above-surface tank may be used or a pumping system with discharge to a waste tank may be installed.

At certain sites, due to the type of contaminants or proximity to residences, concerns may exist about air emissions from steam cleaning operations. These concerns can be alleviated by utilizing one or more of the following practices:

- Locate the steam cleaning area on site to minimize potential impacts.

- Enclose steam cleaning operations. For example, augers and drilling rods can be steam cleaned in drums. Tarpaulins also can be placed around the steam cleaning area to control emissions.

For a given project, the location of the steam cleaning area will be identified in the Sampling and Analysis Plan.

Decontamination wastes will be collected and contained unless otherwise directed by LANTDIV. The eventual disposition of these wastes will be determined on a project-specific basis, but may include on-site treatment and/or transport off site to an approved treatment/disposal facility.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Rinsate samples may be collected from steam-cleaned equipment as quality assurance records. The frequency of rinsate samples from either drilling tools or well casings/screens shall be specified in the Sampling and Analysis and Quality Assurance Project Plans for a given project, as appropriate. Documentation in the field logbook also shall serve as a quality assurance record of decontamination activities.

7.0 REFERENCES

None.

SOP F502
Decontamination of Chemical Sampling and Field Analytical

DECONTAMINATION OF CHEMICAL SAMPLING AND FIELD ANALYTICAL EQUIPMENT

1.0 PURPOSE

The purpose of this SOP is to provide a general methodology and protocol, and to reference information for the proper decontamination of field chemical sampling and analytical equipment.

2.0 SCOPE

This procedure applies to all field sampling equipment including, but not limited to, split-barrel soil samplers (split-spoons), bailers, beakers, trowels, filtering apparatus, and pumps. This procedure should be consulted when decontamination procedures are being developed as part of project-specific plans. Additionally, current USEPA regional procedures and decontamination guidance as well as state guidance should be reviewed.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Decontamination - Decontamination is the process of removing or neutralizing contaminants which may have accumulated on field equipment. This process ensures protection of personnel from penetrating substances, reduces or eliminates transfer of contaminants to clean areas, prevents mixing of incompatible substances, and minimizes the likelihood of sample cross-contamination.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

Project Manager - It is the responsibility of the Project Manager to ensure that project-specific plans are in accordance with these procedures. Documentation should be developed for areas where project plans deviate from these procedures.

Field Team Leader - It is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader to ensure that these procedures are implemented in the field. The Field Team Leader is responsible for ensuring field personnel performing decontamination activities have been briefed and trained to execute these procedures.

Sampling Personnel - It is the responsibility of field sampling personnel to follow these procedures, or to follow documented, project-specific procedures as directed by the Field Team Leader.

5.0 PROCEDURES

In order to ensure that chemical analysis results reflect actual concentrations present at sampling locations, sampling equipment must be properly decontaminated prior to the field effort, during the sampling program (i.e., between sampling locations) and at the conclusion of the sampling program. This will minimize the potential for cross-contamination between sampling locations and the transfer of contamination off site.

Preferably, sampling equipment should be dedicated to a given sampling location. If this is not possible, equipment must be decontaminated between sampling locations. Sampling personnel also must use disposable gloves and change them between sampling locations.

5.1 Sampling Equipment Decontamination Procedures

Soil and sediment sampling equipment including, but not limited to trowels, beakers, dredges, etc., shall be decontaminated using the following USEPA Region procedures.

The following sections summarize decontamination procedures for USEPA Regions I through IV for overall comparison. Each region should be contacted prior to initiation of sampling activities to assure that the most recent, accepted decontamination procedures are used.

USEPA Region I

Prior to use, all sampling equipment should be carefully cleaned using the following procedure:

1. A dilute hydrochloric acid rinse
2. Deionized water rinse
3. Methanol or acetone rinse; and,
4. Distilled, organic-free water rinse.

For badly contaminated equipment, a hot water detergent wash may be needed prior to the rinse procedure. Additionally, a hexane rinse also may be needed, prior to the final distilled water rinse, when sampling for low-level organic pollutants.

USEPA Region II

Prior to use, all sampling equipment will be decontaminated using the following procedure:

1. Low-phosphate detergent wash (i.e., Alconox or Liquinox)
2. Tap water rinse
3. 10 percent nitric acid solution rinse
4. Tap water rinse
5. Methanol followed by a hexane or an acetone rinse
6. Analyte-free deionized water rinse
7. Air dry
8. Wrap in aluminum foil, shiny side out, for storage or transport

If the samples will not be analyzed for metals, then steps 3 and 4 may be omitted; if samples will not be analyzed for organics, then step 5 may be omitted. All solvents must be pesticide-grade.

USEPA Region III

Prior to use, all sampling equipment will be decontaminated using the following procedure:

1. Potable water rinse
2. Alconox or Liquinox detergent wash
3. Scrubbing, as necessary
4. Potable water rinse
5. 10 percent nitric acid rinse
6. Distilled-deionized water rinse
7. Methanol or hexane rinse
8. Distilled-deionized water rinse
9. Air dry

USEPA Region IV

The general decontamination procedure for Region IV is similar to that for Regions II and III. However, there may be some specialized procedures applicable to certain types of field equipment such as equipment used for the collection of samples for analysis of trace organic compounds, automatic wastewater sampling equipment, sampling tubing, and miscellaneous

equipment (i.e., pumps, hand augers, etc.). The most current version is "Standard Operating Procedures and Quality Assurance Manual," USEPA Region IV, Environmental Services Division, Environmental Compliance Branch (see Appendix B in February 1, 1991 version).

5.2 Field Analytical Equipment Decontamination

Field analytical equipment which may come in direct contact with the sample or sample media, including, but not limited to water level meters, water/product level meters, pH or specific ion probes, specific conductivity probes, thermometers, and/or borehole geophysical probes must be decontaminated before and after use, according to the procedures outlined in Section 5.1, unless manufacturers instructions indicate otherwise. Probes that contact water samples not used for laboratory analyses may be rinsed with distilled water. Probes which make no direct contact (e.g. HNu or OVA probes) will be wiped clean with clean paper towels or an alcohol-saturated cloth.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Decontamination procedures are monitored through the collection of equipment rinsate samples and field blanks. Collection of these samples shall be specified in the project-specific Sampling and Analysis and Quality Assurance Plans following the requirements of NEESA 20.2-047B. Documentation recorded in the field logbook also shall serve as a quality assurance record.

7.0 REFERENCES

NEESA 20.2-047B. Sampling and Chemical Analysis Quality Assurance Requirements for the Navy Installation Restoration Program. Naval Energy and Environmental Support Activity. Port Hueneme, CA. June 1988.

U. S. EPA Office of Waste Program Enforcement. RCRA Ground Water Monitoring Technical Enforcement Guidance Document (TEGD). OSWER Directive 9950.1. 1986.

U. S. EPA. Standard Operating Procedures and Quality Assurance Manual. Environmental Compliance Branch, U. S. EPA Environmental Services Division, Athens, Georgia. 1991.

Micham, J. T., R. Bellandi, E. C. Tifft, Jr. "Equipment Decontamination Procedures for Ground Water and Vadose Zone Monitoring Programs: Status and Prospects." in Ground Water Monitoring Review. Spring 1989.

SOP F504
Handling of Site Investigation Wastes

HANDLING OF SITE INVESTIGATION GENERATED WASTES

1.0 PURPOSE

The objective of this SOP is to provide general reference information on the control and responsibilities of wastes typically generated during field investigations. The descriptions herein are general in nature and do not apply to a specific handling scheme. Prior to designing a handling scheme as part of a site investigation and during actual management of materials, the Project Manager, Site Manager and a disposal specialist must consult on the appropriate procedures; these procedures must then be recorded in the project documents.

2.0 SCOPE

The procedures described here apply to sites being investigated under both the Underground Storage Tank (UST) Program and the Installation Restoration (IR) Program of Navy CLEAN.

This SOP generally is applicable to all of the usual wastes generated during site investigations. Proper segregation and on-site storage of wastes are necessary until the identification and final disposition of those wastes is completed. The field investigation team will containerize or secure the waste appropriately during the site studies. After the laboratory analyses have been received (usually some weeks later), Baker will identify which wastes will require special disposal and assist LANTDIV in arranging and managing that disposal.

Since the final disposition of materials will usually not be known until after the field teams have been released from the site, the division of responsibilities for that disposition will be established by negotiation of the contingencies with LANTDIV. LANTDIV may expect, however, that facility personnel should be responsible for additional handling procedures such as labeling, storing, and transferring materials into proper containers, if necessary.

Time constraints and the final disposition (on site or off site) will be determined based upon the identification of the waste. Project and site conditions may require development of a Contaminated Materials Handling Plan that delineates the potential disposition of site investigation wastes, in the event off-site disposal is required.

3.0 DEFINITIONS

Health and Safety (HAS) Waste - HAS waste material is generated during a site investigation from discarded personal protective gear potentially contaminated during site activities. Typically, this includes protective suits, gloves, boots, spent respirator cartridges, and similar items.

By-products - Substances (for example, pumped water or excavated soil) generated during a sampling event or some other site activity in excess of analytical requirements. This includes soil cuttings, development and decontamination water, carcasses of field parameter samples, and so forth.

4.0 RESPONSIBILITIES

LANTDIV - LANTDIV or the facility must ultimately be responsible for the final disposition of site wastes. As such, a LANTDIV representative will usually prepare and sign waste disposal manifests as the generator of the material, in the event off-site disposal is required. However, it may be the responsibility of Baker, depending on the contingency discussions during execution of the investigation to provide assistance to LANTDIV in arranging for final disposition and preparing the manifests.

Project Manager - It is the responsibility of the Project Manager to work with the LANTDIV-EIC in determining the final disposition of site investigation wastes. The Project Manager will relay the results and implications of the chemical analysis of the waste or associated material, and advise on the regulatory requirements and prudent measures appropriate to the disposition of the material. The Project Manager also is responsible for ensuring that field personnel involved in site investigation waste handling are familiar with the procedures to be implemented in the field, and that all required field documentation has been completed.

Field Team Leader - The Field Team Leader is responsible for the on-site supervision of the waste handling procedures during the site investigations. The Field Team Leader also is responsible for ensuring that all other field personnel are familiar with these procedures.

5.0 PROCEDURES

Field investigation activities often result in the production or movement of potentially contaminated materials that must be properly managed to protect the public and the environment, as well as to meet legal requirements. For the purpose of this SOP, contaminated materials are any by-products or HAS materials from a field investigation that are known or suspected to be contaminated with hazardous substances.

The Sampling and Analysis Plan (SAP) shall, in most cases, include a description of control measures for contaminated materials. This portion of the SAP may consider types of contamination, estimates of the amount of waste materials generated by site activities, storage and, possibly, disposal methods. As a general rule, it is preferable to select investigation methods that minimize the generation of waste materials. All site investigation waste materials shall be containerized or secured in a manner appropriate to site conditions until sample analyses have been received.

5.1 Sources of Waste Materials

The sources of waste material depend on the site activities planned for a project. The following types of activities (or sources), typical of site investigations, may result in the generation of waste material which must be properly handled:

- Drilling and monitoring well construction
- Monitoring well development
- Groundwater sampling
- Aquifer pump tests
- Heavy equipment decontamination
- Sampling equipment decontamination
- Personal protective equipment

Prior to initiation of site activities, the expected sources, media, quantities and potential contaminants from the investigation should be estimated, as well as the probable method of containerizing or staging of these materials.

5.2 Initial Handling of Waste Materials

The initial handling of waste materials generated by on-site activities will include containerization, labeling and storage. Specific procedures for materials handling will be developed for each project and discussed in the Project Work Plan.

5.2.1 Containerization

Waste solids (for example, equipment and soil), liquids (for example, decontamination fluids, and development and purge water) and personal protective clothing may be placed in 55-gallon steel drums meeting U.S. Department of Transportation standards, or other approved containers. Waste materials should be segregated to minimize disposal quantities of hazardous materials. To this end, soils from a particular boring will be placed in a single set of containers for that boring. Development and purge water from a given well may be placed in the same set of containers; however, water from different wells should be placed in different containers.

Polyethylene or other suitably compatible liners will be used in containers for liquids, and may be used in containers for solids. The containers are to remain closed except when filling, emptying or sampling. The container lid shall be securely attached at the end of each work day and when the container is completely filled.

5.2.2 Labeling

Containers will be consecutively numbered and labeled by the field team during the site investigations. Container labels shall be legible and of an indelible medium (waterproof marker, paint stick, or similar means). Information shall be recorded both on the container lid and its side. Container labels shall include, as a minimum:

- LANTDIV CTO (number)
- Project name
- Drum number
- Date
- Source
- Contents

If samples representative of the containerized materials have been collected during the site investigation (for example, a groundwater collected for laboratory analysis upon completion of purging), the appropriate sample number shall be recorded on the Container Log (Section 5.2.3) to facilitate determination of the disposition of each container.

If laboratory analyses reveals that containerized materials are hazardous or contain PCBs, additional labeling of containers may be required. The project management will assist LANTDIV in additional labeling procedures if necessary after departure of the field team from the facility. These additional labeling procedures will be based upon the identification of material present; EPA regulations applicable to labeling hazardous and PCB wastes are contained in 40 CFR Parts 261, 262, and 761.

5.2.3 Container Log

A container log shall be maintained in the site logbook. The container log shall contain the same information as the container label, as discussed in Section 5.2.2, plus any additional remarks or information. Such additional information may include the identification number of a representative laboratory sample.

5.3 Container Storage

Containers of site investigation wastes shall be stored in a specially designated, secure area (usually, a small, fenced area on-site with a locking gate), or an area specified by LANTDIV or the facility, until disposition is determined. All containers shall be covered with plastic sheeting to provide protection from weather.

If the laboratory analyses reveal that the containers hold hazardous or PCB waste, additionally required storage security may be implemented; in the absence of the investigation team, these will be the responsibility of LANTDIV or the facility, as confirmed by the contingency discussions.

Baker will assist LANTDIV in devising the storage requirements, which may include the drums being staged on wooden pallets or other structures to prevent contact with the ground and being staged to provide easy access. Weekly inspections by facility personnel of the

temporary storage area may also be required. These inspections may assess the structural integrity of the containers and proper container labeling. Also, precipitation that may accumulate in the storage area may need to be removed. These weekly inspections and any necessary precipitation removal shall be recorded in the site logbook.

5.4 Container Disposition

The disposition of containers of site investigation generated wastes shall be determined by LANTDIV, with the assistance of Baker, as necessary. Container disposition shall be based on quantity of materials, types of materials, and analytical results. If necessary, specific samples of contained materials may be collected to identify further characteristics which may affect disposition. Typically, container disposition will not be addressed until after receipt of applicable analytical results; these results are usually not available until long after completion of the field investigation at the facility.

5.5 Disposal of Contaminated Materials

Actual disposal methods for contaminated materials disturbed during a site investigation are the same as for other PCB or hazardous substances: incineration, landfilling, treatment, and so forth. The responsibility for disposal must be determined and agreed upon by all involved parties during negotiations addressing this contingency.

The usual course will be a contractor specialist retained to conduct the disposal. However, regardless of the mechanism used, all applicable Federal, state and local regulations shall be observed. EPA regulations applicable to generating, storing and transporting PCB or hazardous wastes are contained in 40 CFR Parts 262, 263, and 761.

Another consideration in selecting the method of disposal of contaminated materials is whether the disposal can be incorporated into subsequent site cleanup activities. For example, if construction of a suitable on-site disposal or treatment structure is expected, contaminated materials generated during the site investigation may be stored at the site for treatment/disposal with other site materials. In this case, the initial containment (drums or other containers) shall be evaluated for use as long-term storage. Also, other site conditions, such as drainage control, security and soil types must be considered, in order to provide proper storage.

A timely process for disposing of investigation wastes may be:

1. LANTDIV would assist the team management in obtaining the necessary EPA generator numbers.

2. Team personnel would not sign the required manifests as generators of site investigation wastes; this remains the responsibility of LANTDIV or the facility.

3. The team management and LANTDIV would jointly identify authorized, permitted facilities for proper treatment, storage and/or disposal of wastes. However, LANTDIV would make the final determination on disposition.

6.0 QUALITY ASSURANCE RECORDS

Quality Assurance Records shall consist of, at a minimum:

- Container logs recorded during the site investigation
- Weekly storage inspection reports, if applicable
- Analytical results from applicable environmental samples
- Mainfests and similarly regulated documents

7.0 REFERENCES

Federal Register. 40 CFR Parts 261, 263, and 761.